

WORSHIP – VOL. VIII

GOD'S WORK

Part 1

By

ART MOKAROW

GOD'S WORK

OTHER BOOKS BY ART MOKAROW:

God's Puzzle Solved

Revelation Uncovered

Christ In You

The Great Apostasy

The White Throne Judgment

Discovering God

The Original Bible

Faith With Works

God's Story

God's Sabbath And Holy Days

Bible Study Made Easy

God's Will

God's Sabbath And Holy Days

God's Two Trees

God's Magical Ten Words

Evanow Publishers

P. O. Box 1197

Montgomery, TX 77356

Copyright TX 6 - 500 - 971 MMVI

All rights reserved. No part of the material protected by this copyright notice may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording or by any informational storage system without written permission from the copyright owner. Printed in the United States of America.

Written by Art Mokarow

GOD'S WORK

CONTENTS

PREFACE	v
WORD OF GOD	1
GOD'S GLORY	19
PURPOSE OF GOD'S TEMPLE	33
GOD'S JUDGMENT	45
WHAT IS THE CHURCH?	57
WHAT IS THE MINISTRY?	69
FINANCING GOD'S WORK	103
WHY THE PRIESTHOOD RECEIVES TITHES!	123
WHAT OR WHO WAS MELCHIZEDEK?	135
CAN CHRISTIANS LOSE THEIR SALVATION?	159
REAL REPENTANCE	177
WHY CHRISTIANITY CAN'T BE A RELIGION!	209
IS THE LAW DONE AWAY?	227
THE LAW IS SPIRITUAL	241
HOW FAITH SAVES	259
SABBATH IS A SIGN	273
HOLY DAYS — A SHADOW	291
RICHES OF GOD'S GRACE	317
EVERY MAN IN HIS ORDER	333
A SPIRITUAL RESURRECTION ONLY	359
GOD, "ALL IN ALL"	375
SATAN SHALL BRUISE HIS HEEL	395
THE GREAT FALLING AWAY	407
WHY THE BOOK OF REVELATION!	417

GOD'S WORK

PREFACE

Jesus said in John 6:29, "This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent." *God's Work* is to believe everything that Christ said and did. That is *God's Work*. In Matthew 18:11, Jesus also said He came to restore what was lost. What was lost was The Garden of Eden with The Tree of Life or salvation. This book covers that work of God as fulfilled by His Son Jesus, The Christ.

The Bible starts in The Garden and ends in The Garden or Paradise. May you be blessed by God's perfect work in building God's family in The Kingdom of God. Each chapter covers a specific spiritual lesson on how God, in Christ, makes you Holy like Him. Albert Einstein once said, "I want to know God's thoughts...the rest are details." This has been my ultimate goal in writing *God's Puzzle Solved* and in this second book *God's Work*.

No monies can ever be accepted, but feel free to offer any comments or criticisms. Ask for your free CD containing eleven books which you can read on your computer. Also, feel free to ask biblical questions by mail or e-mail.

Art Mokarow

Box 1197

Montgomery, TX 77356

E-mail: art@mokarow.com

Web site: www.godspuzzlesolved.com

Download all books free of charge

God's Puzzle Solved

God's Work

Revelation Uncovered

Christ In You

The Great Apostasy

The White Throne Judgment

Discovering God

The Original Bible

Faith With Works

God's Story

Bible Study Made Easy

God's Will

God's Sabbath And Holy Days

Children's Books

God's Two Trees

God's Magical Ten Words

God's Three Houses

CHAPTER 1

WORD OF GOD

The “kingdom” is really the effort of God completing His “work” (Mark 1:14), as Christ did. But, is the preaching about God’s “kingdom” the same as God’s “work?” Or, is the “kingdom” message, *The Good News*, about the goal of God’s “work?” The primary responsibility of ministers is to preach *The Gospel* about the “kingdom” of God. Could it be that God’s achievement is His “work?” Does *The Bible* tell you what “the work” of God is? What kind of “work” is God busy doing now, in this human age?

Jesus Gives You The Answer!

After Christ fed the five thousand people with five barley loaves and two fishes, there were twelve baskets of bread left over. Everyone had more than enough. Later that evening, Jesus departed on a boat with His Disciples. When Christ returned to The City of Capernaum, the people who had been fed, rushed up to Him and He said:.

John 6:27-28 ²⁷Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for the meat which endureth unto everlasting life, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for him hath God the Father sealed.
²⁸Then said they unto him, What shall we do, that we might “work” the “works” of God?

Christ had just said to them, “**27Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for the meat which endureth unto everlasting life**” (John 6:27). Then the people asked Jesus what must be done to do “**the work**” of God (John 6:27-28). This was a very simple, clear question they asked of Christ. Jesus, from His own lips, gives you **the biblical** answer defining “**the work**” of God. Biblically, no other answer is true, except what The Son of God tells you. Nothing else is “**the work**” of God.

John 6:29 Jesus answered and said unto them, This is “the work” of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.

Jesus answered them with these words, “**29the work**” of God, [is] **that ye believe on him whom he hath sent.**” Christ said that “**the work**” of God is to believe on Him (Christ). Only through Jesus can you receive everlasting life. Only Christ tells you the exact **path** you must follow – which is “the work” of God.

The entire reason He fed the five thousand with 12 loaves (with the fragments of the 5 barley loaves) and 2 fishes, was to show you that Christ is “**that bread.**” Christ performed this miracle to reveal God’s “**work**” to you.

I Timothy 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth?

I Timothy 2:4 states that it is God’s “**will**” that every human being would be saved and that His “will” was first performed, by His Son, Jesus (John 5:30-36). How does God, through His Son, **save everyone?** You can be **saved** by believing on His Son, Jesus Christ. How can this be God’s “**work**” if Christ is **the one** doing “**the work**?” That is the critical question.

Word Of God

Deuteronomy 21:17 concerns The Law that God gave to explain **the purpose** of the **firstborn**. In Romans 8:29, Paul said that **Christ is The Firstborn Son of God** and that all the rest of mankind are destined to become Sons of God.

Deuteronomy 21:17 But he shall acknowledge the son of the hated [wife] for the firstborn, by giving him a double portion of all that he hath: for he is the beginning of his strength; the right of the firstborn is his.

By God's Law of The Firstborn, Christ received a double portion from His Father (which was The Father's strength) to do God's "work" (John 5:17 and John 3:34). Jesus was the only One who spoke The Words of God by the power of The Holy Spirit "from God" which was given to Him without measure (actually a double portion). Jesus said that "**the work**" of God is to believe on Him whom God hath sent.

So, Jesus speaks only **The Words** of God which will give you **eternal life**. This simply means that you must believe in Christ because He speaks God's "**word**." God's "**word**" gives **everlasting life** which is "the work" that Christ does. Then, what is **The Word of God**?

Religion And The Word Of God

Many Christian religions believe The Word of God is another "being" besides God. In fact, some religions believe God's Holy Spirit is also another "being." Therefore, they present **The Word** of God as a "being" and The Holy Spirit as a "being." They have

three Gods. Is this **biblical**? Others believe that The Holy Spirit is not another God but **the power** of God. They think, in the beginning, only Christ was another being with God. Now you have two Gods which are God, The Father and **The Word** of God. Just how many Gods are there? *The Bible* tell you:

I Timothy 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

I Timothy 2:5 plainly states there is only “**one God.**” Christ, as **The Word** of God, is just a Mediator between God and humanity. That is what *The Bible* presents to you. Since Christ was given The Holy Spirit at birth (the same Holy Spirit made Mary pregnant), The Holy Spirit couldn't be another being because Jesus would then be The Son of The Holy Spirit and not The Son of God, The Father. In Luke 1:35, **the angel** answered Mary and presented The Holy Spirit as being a **power** and not a separate individual “being” who came from God, The Father.

John 14:17 Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.

The Bible states that Jesus is The Son of God; therefore, The Holy Spirit couldn't have been another **being**. The Holy Spirit is a **power** – **A Holy Spirit Power** – which comes from God. It leads everyone to **the truth**. John 14:17 states that God dwells in you and reveals His **truth**.

Therefore, God's Holy Spirit is a **power** from Him which reveals God's **truth** to you (John 17:17). The Holy Spirit cannot be an-

other **being**, but is the very **power** from God, Himself.

John 17:17 Sanctify them through thy truth: thy Word is truth.

What was **The Word of God** before Christ became The Word of God? Was Christ another **being** just like God? Only **the scriptures** can reveal **this truth** to you.

Before you study one of the critical scriptures, which describes The Word of God, it is pertinent that you approach these verses as a little child. Remember, Christ said that you will not enter into God's "kingdom" unless you become as a little child. You cannot have pre-set ideas, opinions or assumptions. No human interpretations are allowed – only biblical facts and proof.

John 1:1-15 ¹In the beginning was The Word, and The Word was with God, and The Word was God. ²The same was in the beginning with God. ³All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made. ⁴In him was life; and the life was the Light of men. ⁵And the light shineth in darkness; and the darkness comprehended it not. ⁶There was a man sent from God, whose name was John. ⁷The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all men through him might believe. ⁸He was not that Light, but was sent to bear witness of that Light. ⁹That was the true Light, which Lighteth every man that cometh into the world. ¹⁰He was in the world, and the world was made by him, and the world knew him not. ¹¹He came unto his own, and his own received him not. ¹²But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become

the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name: ¹³Which were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God. ¹⁴And The Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father) full of grace and truth. ¹⁵John bare witness of him, and cried, saying, This was he of whom I spoke, He that cometh after me is preferred before me: for he was before me.

The Apostle John states, “**¹In the beginning was The Word and The Word was with God, and The Word was God.**” What do you know about The Word at this point? This verse reveals The Word was from the beginning; and this “**word**” was also with God, but this “**word**” was also God. It does not say this “**word**” was another **being**. Since God is “One” (I Timothy 2:5), the best notion that anyone can state about this “**word**,” is that it is an **element** of God, Himself. This is what *The Bible* tells you. “**³All things were made by him ...**” All things were created by God, for that is what **the word** has performed. This element of God, **the word**, has the power to create. This “**word**” has within it the power to produce life. Consequently, The Word of God can be defined as the very “**words**” from God, The Father. This “**word**” was put into Christ at His birth (Deuteronomy 18:18).

John, The Baptist, states that he “**⁸was sent to bear witness of that Light.**” John tells you that he, himself, is not that Light, but rather, that **Light** was sent from God (**The Word**), which was the **Light**. So, **The Word** of God was in the beginning. “**The word**” also created everything, had **the power** to give Life and was the **Light** (truth) of the world. Above all, **The Word was God** – not another being. Up to this point, this is all that anyone knows

about **the word**. Not **two beings** – just “**One**” God. In summary, **The Word** of God:

- 1 Created all things.
- 2 Gives life.
- 3 Is The Light of The World revealing God’s truth?

This is all that *The Bible* states about **The Word** of God, with **no second being**. Also, realize that “**The Word**” is God’s “**word**.” Therefore, **The Word** of God has to be an **entity of God Himself** and not another **being**. Read Genesis 1:1-2. It is God, by His “**word**,” who created all things. God’s **very “words”** had the power to create the entire universe. Clearly, through His son Jesus, all things were created by God’s “**word**” The Almighty God Himself. God did it by His very “**word**.”

When Jesus, at His physical birth, had God’s very “**word**” put in Him, then Christ, as **The Word**, created all things. Once Jesus, at His birth, had God, our Father’s “**word**” in Him, Christ then became God’s “**word**” or the “logos.” By becoming God’s “**word**,” Jesus was, therefore, “**the one**” who created all things because He, now, at His birth, became the very “**Word**” of God which created everything.

This **Light** or **The Word** “...**Lighteth every man that cometh into the world**” [showing **salvation** for everyone]. Those who receive “**The Word**” will become The Sons of God. “**14And The Word** [Greek, “logos”] **was made flesh, and dwelt among us.**” This “**word**” which became flesh (a human being), had The Glory of God, The Father. Verse 14 defines what “**The Word of God**” is. **The Word** of God was God’s “**glory**” and **not** another being.

God's "**glory**" which was **The Word**, was of God, The Father. **The Word** of God was **not** Christ as another **being**, and **not** a God before that "**word**" was made flesh. *The Bible* plainly states that **The Word** of God was The Glory of God, Himself. When checking the original Greek word for "logos," in Strong's Concordance #3056, the meaning includes the notion of: "the thought," "reasoning," "the mental faculty" and "the divine expression." Therefore, God's "glory" as "**the logos**" complies God's "**thoughts**" and "**divine expression**" by **the power** of God's Holy Spirit

John 17:5-10 ⁵And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was. ⁶I have manifested thy name unto the men which thou gavest me out of the world: thine they were, and thou gavest them me; and they have kept thy Word. ⁷Now they have known that all things whatsoever thou hast given me are of thee. ⁸For I have given unto them The Words which thou gavest me; and they have received them, and have known surely that I came out from thee, and they have believed that thou didst send me. ⁹I pray for them: I pray not for the world, but for them which thou hast given me; for they are thine. ¹⁰And all mine are thine, and thine are mine; and I am glorified in them.

Jesus explains what this "**glory**" is in John 17:5-10. Christ asked God to give Him "**the glory**" He had with God "**in the beginning**." What was this "**glory**" (**The Word** of God)? Verse 5 states that this "**glory**" was from The Father, Himself, not from another being. This "**glory**" that Jesus had from **the beginning** was **The Word** of God that was given to Christ at His **birth** (John 3:34). Christ became "**The Word**" of God at His "**birth**" by The Holy

Spirit. In fact, this Glory (God's "**thoughts**" or God's "**message**") which is from God, The Father, will also, be "**in you**" through Christ (John 17:10). Christ was **the rock** that followed Israel because, before Jesus' **birth**, **The Word** of God, God's "**glory**" was **the rock** which was to become Christ (I Corinthians 10:4). In Hebrew, it is called "**the shekinah**" or "**God's very presence**" which includes God's "**word**" and His "**thoughts.**"

God's Glory

In John 6:29, Jesus was asked the question about what is God's "**work**?" Jesus answered and said unto them, "**29This is "the work" of God that ye believe on him whom he [God] hath sent.**" God had sent Christ to do The Father's "**work.**" Christ was not sent by another God "**being**" to do God's "**work.**" God, Himself sent Christ to do His "**work.**" This was God's "**glory**" which is **The Word** of God. How was this done?

Deuteronomy 21:17 But he shall acknowledge the son of the hated [Wife] for the firstborn, by giving him a double portion of all that he hath [God has]: for he is the beginning of his [God's] strength; the right of the firstborn is his.

Since Jesus is **the firstborn** Son of God, The Law of Moses states that The Firstborn is to inherit a double portion of God's **strength** or God's "**glory**" (which was The Word of God and which was God). God gave a double portion of all that He has to Christ, so He could do The Father's "**work.**" Christ, before He was human, was in God's "**thoughts**" or "**word,**" which became Jesus at His **birth**. God's "**word**" was in Christ at His **birth**, and Christ, became The Son of God. Since Jesus became, "**The Word**" the "logos" at birth, Christ created all things, since He, then, was God's

“**divine words**” and very “**thoughts.**” John, The Baptist explains what **The Word** of God is and how Christ received “the firstborn’s inheritance:”

**John 3:34 For he whom God hath sent speaketh
The Words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit
by measure unto him.**

Notice, Christ at His physical birth, received The Father’s “**words**” not His own “**words**” as pre-existing. John said that Christ **only** spoke God’s “**word**” and had received a double measure from God. That is how Christ inherited the double portion from His Father. God’s Holy Spirit was given to Christ at His “**inception.**” God’s Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant. God’s Holy Spirit gave The Word to Jesus; therefore, He could speak God’s “**words.**” **The Word** of God as defined by *The Scriptures* represents God’s “**personal words**” from The Father’s “**mind**” (**thoughts**) concerning what wonderful things God is doing through His Son – who now is **The Word** of God (Psalm 40:5).

Christ And The Father “Work”

Jesus answered The Pharisees and The Sadducees after they complained about Him “working” on The Sabbath day when He healed someone:

**John 5:17 But Jesus answered them, My Father
worketh hitherto, and I work.**

Christ said that He and His Father “**work.**” What type of work is performed? Christ answered that question in Matthew 18:11 when He said, “**For the Son of man is come to save that which was lost.**”

I Corinthians 15:21-26 ²¹For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead. ²²For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive. ²³But every man in his own order: Christ the first fruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming. ²⁴Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the "kingdom" to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power. ²⁵For he must reign, till he hath put all enemies under his feet. ²⁶The last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.

Jesus is doing "**the work**" by bringing every person to **salvation**. Christ is **restoring** The Tree of Life as it was in The Garden of Eden. Jesus will destroy death which will be the last enemy. No one will remain dead. Ultimately, everyone is **saved**. But every man must be **saved** "...**in his own order**..." (I Corinthians 15:23). This is "**the work**" that Jesus is doing through and by God, by means of His Father's Holy Spirit.

Jesus Qualified

The Apostle Paul said that Jesus was being made perfect and as a consequence, Jesus became **The Author of Eternal Salvation**. This means that Christ had to qualify first, as The Author of your **salvation** (Hebrews 5:9). Also read Revelation 5. Christ has to **restore life** to The Whole Human Race. How is this done? It begins by **Jesus, first, being made "perfect."**

Hebrews 10:5-10 ⁵Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:

⁶In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin thou hast had no pleasure. ⁷Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me), to do thy will, O God. ⁸Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin thou wouldest not, neither hadst pleasure therein; which are offered by the law; ⁹Then said he, Lo, I come to do thy will, O God. He taketh away the first, that he may establish the second. ¹⁰By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

Paul quotes these **scriptures** from Psalm 40. These texts prophesy The Christ is coming to do God's "**will**" by offering His Body as a sacrifice for everyone. How does Christ perform The Father's "**will**" to become that sacrifice?

The Test

Jesus came to **save** that which was lost in The Garden (The Tree of Life). He first had to destroy "**the works**" of Satan. Remember that Satan is the "**god of this world.**" So, by defeating Satan "**spiritually**" Christ proves that He is, indeed, your Savior and Redeemer. After Jesus was baptized by John, God, His Father declared that this man is His Beloved Firstborn Son (Matthew 3:17). Afterward, Christ went into the wilderness to be tested by the devil. In the wilderness, Christ fasted for forty days and forty nights. Then, Jesus became ravenously hungry (Matthew 4:1-2). After forty days, one can only try to imagine the state of total exhaustion that Jesus, in the human flesh, felt without food and water. But Jesus had to fast in this manner, to prepare Himself to qualify, humanly, in order to win His contest with Satan. *The Bible* states that Jesus was "**...an hungered**" (Matthew 4:2). This

“**an hungered**” really means “to pine away” or “to starve.”

The test was whether or not Christ **was The Word of God**. Since Jesus was given God’s Holy Spirit without measure and spoke **The Words** of God (John 3:34), Christ was tested by Satan. Christ proved that He was **truly The Word** of God (God’s Son). Indeed, this was a universal test for all of God’s **creation** (Romans 8:22). It is by **The Word** of God, literally God’s “**words**” that were put into Christ, beginning at His birth, which, will ultimately happen to everyone (I Corinthians 15:28). God is reproducing Himself by His “**words,**” **The Word of God** which will be “**in you,**” according to your growth, at your designated time-frame. Christ, therefore, will be “**in you.**”

Since God is reproducing Himself to procreate Sons and Daughters, all who are “**saved**” including Jesus Christ and the rest of mankind, must come from The Father, Almighty God. **The Word** or The Holy Spirit could not have been “**separate beings**” along with God, The Father. For God to reproduce Himself by having Sons and Daughters, all mankind must come from God, The Father, directly just as Christ did or you have nothing but confusion. That is what a family is.

How Christ Won Over Satan

What did Satan use as his weapon to attempt to defeat Christ? Satan used God’s “word,” which is more powerful than a two-edged sword (Hebrews 4:12). Christ’s first test was over food! In that ordeal, Jesus purposely allowed Himself to become desperately hungry by abstaining from food and water for forty days and nights. He was prepared for the test. What did Satan ask Christ?

Matthew 4:3 And when the tempter came to him,

he said, If thou be the Son of God, command that these stones be made bread.

What was Christ's answer? In Matthew 4:4, Jesus said, **"It is written, Man shall not live by bread alone, but by every Word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God."** Jesus proved that **The Word** of God was in Him from birth. He truly was **The Word** of God. He was The Son of God.

That was the test; and Jesus passed and qualified. Now with His ongoing **life**, He had to live **The Word** of God and fulfill every **scripture** written about Him (Mark 14:47-49). These are God's **"divine thoughts"** the **"logos"** in Christ which proves He is The First Begotten Son of God. In John 14:9-11, Philip, His Disciple, said, **"...shew us the Father, and it sufficeth us."** Then Jesus answered,

John 14:9-11 ⁹Jesus saith unto him, Have I been so long time with you, and yet hast thou not known me, Philip? He that hath seen me hath seen the Father; and how sayest thou then, Shew us the Father? ¹⁰Believest thou not that I am in the Father, and the Father in me? The Words that I speak unto you I speak not of myself: but the Father that dwelleth in me, he doeth **"the work's"**. ¹¹Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very works' sake.

Before Christ was taken to be crucified, He told Philip that he would know who The Father is by seeing Him (John 14:9-11). Why is this? Jesus said that **He did not speak His words**, but rather that He spoke The Father's **"words"** – or **The Word** of

God – which was in Christ from birth (John 3:34). This is how Jesus defeated Satan. It was by speaking **The Words** of God and by doing “**the works**” of God’s “**word.**” That is why Christ said that you must live by every **Word of God**. God’s Work is His “**word,**” which is in His Son. Jesus Christ is **The Word** of God.

Proof Christ Was The Word

Many believe that Jesus came to give His **life** for your sins. This is **true**. Jesus defeated Satan by proving that He was The Son of God. He was **living** every “**word**” which proceeded from the **mouth** of God. He was **The Word** of God in “**the flesh.**”

John 14:10 states that **God’s “work”** is the same as **God’s “word.”** Jesus said He did not speak His own “**words**” but He did speak everything that The Father told Him. Christ said in John 14:11, “**Believe me that I am in the Father, and the Father in me: or else believe me for the very “work’s sake.”** Watch how Christ “**lives**” – so that you can believe His “**works.**” What was Christ’s “**work?**” His “**work**” was to **live every Word of God**. Jesus said that the proof that The Father is in Him, is by watching Him **live every Word** of God.

To reveal Jesus was God’s Son, He had to live His **life** according to *The Scriptures*. But He also had to **live** and **experience** every *Scripture* that was written about Him. At the time of Christ, *The Old Testament* was the only *Scripture*. In Psalm 40:7, David prophesied about Christ. David quoted from God’s **book** written in God’s **thoughts**, “**Then said I, Lo, I come: in the volume of the book it is written of me.**” This refers to **Christ in the future as a human being**. Apollos was a mighty “**biblical preacher.**” He publicly showed by means of *The Scriptures* that Jesus was The Christ (Acts 18:28). Furthermore, Paul said when Christ was

hung on the tree and crucified – that everything that was written in *The Scriptures* about Him was fulfilled (Acts 13:29). In His **human life**, Christ fulfilled everything that was written about Him in The Word of God. Remember, Jesus said that if you didn't believe that He and The Father are “**one**” then believe “**the works**” that He does (John 14:11). What was His “**work**?” Jesus lived by **every “word”** of God and thereby proved He was The Son of God – because when He died, He had fulfilled every *Scripture* written about Him. Jesus is The Son of God!

Moses Witnesses The Word Of God

It is evident that *The Scriptures* prove **The Word** of God is equated with God's very “**words**.” In Psalm 40:5-7, David states that God's “**words**” are written in *The Bible* from God's **thoughts** (Verse 5). God's **thoughts** cover all of His **plans** and **purpose** about Christ and eventually – you.

Jesus said that Moses had accused The Pharisees and The Sadducees of his day (John 5:45-47). Why was this? It was because Moses wrote about Christ and said that Israel should believe The Coming Messiah, Jesus Christ.

John 5:45-47 ⁴⁵**Do not think that I will accuse you to the Father: there is one that accuseth you, even Moses, in whom ye trust.** ⁴⁶**For had ye believed Moses, ye would have believed me: for he wrote of me.** ⁴⁷**But if ye believe not his writings, how shall ye believe my Words?**

Read what Moses said about Christ:

Deuteronomy 18:15-18 ¹⁵**The Lord thy God will**

raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken; ¹⁶According to all that thou desiredst of the Lord thy God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of the Lord my God, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not. ¹⁷And the Lord said unto me, They have well spoken that which they have spoken. ¹⁸I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my Words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him.

God Is The Word Of God

Who is **The Word** of God? God is. That is exactly what John 1:1 states. Moses clearly states that Christ is **The Word** of God and only spoke God's "**words**" (Deuteronomy 18:18).

Genesis 1:1-2 also states God, The Father by His "**word**" created everything. For Jesus to be The Son of God, He had to defeat Satan by **living every Word of God** that was written about Him. He had to be sinless and finally offered His **body** as a **sacrifice** for your sins.

Jesus Christ is truly your Savior and Redeemer. But He is **The Author of Your Salvation** because He **lived every "word"** that came from God. He, as The "**word**" of God, is doing God's "**work**" as His Son. As the **firstborn**, He is the beginning of God's strength which is God's "**word**" through **the power** of The Holy Spirit. The pre-existence of Jesus was not in the form of another **God being**, but as The Word of God, which was God's "**glory**" (John 1:14). God's "**glory**" is The Word of God as administered by

God's Holy Spirit, which became Christ, the human man. This "**shekinah**" is God's **presence** in **thought** and is **the power** of The Holy Spirit of God, The Father. To deny The Word of God as God, **The Father's "words"** coming from God Himself, is to deny God is **The One** doing "**the work.**" God, by His "**word**" or "**glory**" is working in His Son, Jesus, just as He "works" with each Christian, and eventually, all mankind. Then, God will be **All and In All** (I Corinthians 15).

God gave to Christ, His Son, His Firstborn, His Holy Spirit along with His **word**. The Apostle John warns that anyone who doesn't believe Jesus came as a human being is an anti-Christ (I John 4:1-3). God's "**work**" is to reproduce Himself in everything (I Corinthians 15:28). God is reproducing Himself by His Son, Jesus. Jesus is God's Firstborn Son receiving God's very "**words**" in Him by the power of God's Holy Spirit. This is "**the work**" that God and His Son, Jesus are doing. They are fulfilling the very "**words**" of God for you to have **eternal life**.

CHAPTER 2

GOD'S GLORY

From the very beginning, Satan wanted you to believe there could be more than “One God.” Satan, being a deceiver, wanted to be like God and produce sons of his very own. He was never interested in the begotten sons who are actually procreated by God Almighty, Himself (Isaiah 14:12-14). Satan wants you to believe that God doesn't want you to eat of The Tree of Knowledge because, then, you would be wise. When you do eat, he says that you will be as a god knowing good “from evil” (Genesis 3:5). Satan told Eve that she should have the option to decide for herself. Then she would be “a god,” herself.

Why was Satan so intent for you to believe in **more than one God**? Satan, himself, wasn't satisfied to be just an “angel” or even a very high-ranking angel. He is the one who wanted to be **the begotten Son of God** – instead of Jesus. As a consequence, Satan was opposed to God's **plan of salvation** for all mankind. He was jealous.

From that time to the present, Satan has been busy deceiving humanity into making many gods. He instituted the worship of the **creation** itself, such as the sun, moon, trees, oceans and rivers – so that everyone would believe in more than “**one**” God. So, as time passed, people would believe in many, many gods by bowing down to animals or nature itself or to statues and idols. God

countered all this with basic instructions. God gave The Second Commandment, which told Israel not to make any likeness of their God. This is because humanity would then begin to worship that image **as if it represented** God. It is a major transgression to worship an image. It is idolatry. When anyone says that the graven image only makes a person think of God, it really **doesn't**, because "that image" is not God.

Satan, who is the greatest liar of all, has successfully duped the world into believing in many gods. Satan has even convinced the world that The Son of God, Jesus, was God before **His human birth**. Satan has many believing that The Holy Spirit is also another God – rather than God's **power** which leads you into **the truth**. Satan's **purpose** is to keep anyone from becoming the very begotten Sons of God. Satan wants as many people as possible to become "**his own sons**," not God's Sons who will be "...**all in all**" (I Corinthians 15:28).

The questions which should be asked, "Who was Christ before His human birth?" "What is God's Holy Spirit?" And then finally, "Is there more than "**one**" God?" If Christ were God before His human birth, then Jesus would be His own Son. If The Holy Spirit were another God, then Christ would be The Son of The Holy Spirit. Therefore, logically, humans would either be The Sons of Jesus (since He was presumed to be God) or else The Sons of The Holy Spirit (if, indeed, The Holy Spirit is God). That is the type of confusion Satan would want you to believe! The Apostle Paul said that God is not "the author of confusion." The word "confusion" in the Greek language means "tumult" (I Corinthians 14:33). If there were more than one God, then that notion would surely produce "confusion," just as it has already confused individuals throughout the ages in the realm of religion. On the other hand, God is extremely logical. In fact, the word "logos" comes from a

word in Greek meaning “to be logical.” *The Scriptures* alone will tell you who Christ was before He became a human being, called “The Son of Man,” through *Old Testament* prophecies.

Many claim that Jesus was the “**logos**” God or “**The Word**” of **God** before He was human. They quote John 1:1 as their proof, “**In the beginning was “the word” and “the word” was with God, and “the word” was God.**” But nothing proves that Christ was that “**word**” as indeed, being another God before He was human. That text declares that whatever **The Word** was – it was God and is with God. It plainly and clearly declares that **The Word** was God, Himself and nothing else.

You only need to know the Greek meaning for the word, “**logos**” to be certain of this point. In Strong’s Concordance #3056, the Greek tells you that “**the word**” or “**logos**” is nothing more than “**the thoughts,**” “the mental faculty” or “**the divine expression of God.**” So **The Word** is nothing more than **God’s “divine thoughts.”** It is not a separate deity or “being.” **The Word** is only God’s “**thoughts**” and nothing more than that. Then, in John 1:14, you are told that **The Word** which is God’s “**divine thoughts**” eventually became flesh or Jesus Christ. So Jesus became The Son of God when He became flesh, and received God’s “**word.**” How did this happen? “**For he whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God: for God giveth not the Spirit by measure unto him**” (John 3:34). THAT IS YOUR ANSWER.

Christ became **The Word** by God’s Holy Spirit. This was when He was born as a human. God’s “**word**” (**logos**), God’s “**divine thoughts**” or “**word**” was put into Christ by The Holy Spirit. Therefore, The Holy Spirit can’t be a separate god in Christ. The Holy Spirit put all of God’s “**divine thoughts**” into Christ, at birth. The Holy Spirit then, can only be a **power** from God (not

a separate god) that put God's **truth** or "**word**" into Christ. The Holy Spirit, therefore, is merely God's **power**, and **The Word** is only God's **divine thoughts** – nothing more. The same process occurs in Christians. When Christians receive God's Holy Spirit (although not the double portion that Christ received), then this Spirit leads you to understand God's "**word**," the "**logos**."

The important question is this, "Who was Jesus before He became human?" Jesus, Himself, tells you the answer in His last prayer to God before He was arrested, "**And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was**" (John 17:5).

Notice, Jesus did not ask God to give Him "**the glory**" that God gave to Him before the world was. Christ, then, would have been a separate deity or a second God with The Father. Christ plainly states that He, before the world was, was **not** another God, but that He was in The Father as **The Glory of God**. Ponder that carefully.

It is usually the simple, understandable *Scriptures* that people often do not generally read thoroughly but which tell you **the truth**. Your Savior tells you that He was not God before He was human. Before the universe was created, Jesus was still **in** The Father as God's "**glory**." Now, the question is posed, "What is God's "**glory**?" When you know God's "**glory**" then you will, also, know who Christ was before He became human.

The Greek word for "glory" is "doxa" (Strong's #1391). The definition comes from #1330, "dokeo," which means "to think," "good reputation" and then #1391 "doxa," is defined as "dignity," "honor" or "goodness." God's "**glory**" in Greek means God's "**thinking**" or "God's "**thoughts**" with all of its goodness and

morals.

Notice what Paul said, “**For all have sinned, and come short of the glory [doxa] of God**” (Romans 3:23). God’s “**glory**” is all The Goodness of God. It is the sum total of “**all that God is**.” Humans, who are sinners, fall short of that “**goodness**.” God’s “**glory**” is everything that God is – and does. This includes, God’s “**logos**” and **power** of His Holy Spirit, which is all of God’s procreative and creative **power**. In *The Epistle* of I Peter 5:4, The Apostle Peter said all will receive a “**crown of glory**” (“**doxa**”) when you become Spirit. Just as Christ, you will, also, have all of God’s **goodness** or **virtue**.

The Apostle Paul said that The Israelites who went through The Red Sea were baptized unto Moses. Moses was The Prophet for The Israelites to find God. Paul, also, said this baptism unto Moses was in **the cloud** and in **the sea**. What was this cloud? Israel drank the same **spiritual drink** and ate the same **spiritual meat** which was that “**spiritual rock**” that followed them and that “**rock**” was Christ (I Corinthians 10:1-4). This is another clear *Scripture* which tells you what Christ was before He was born. Notice how this “**rock**,” Christ, didn’t lead Israel but only followed them. Was the “**rock**” that followed them – Christ? That answer is given shortly.

History Of Israel

One of the most important **spiritual lessons** about God concerns the historical events that occurred between God (YHVH) and Israel when they came out of Egypt. Many who study *The Scriptures* have completely missed the real significance of why Israel was selected to become God’s **chosen people**. When God made *The Covenant* with Abraham to bless him and his children with

The Promised Seed (Christ), the result was that Israel totally misunderstood God's **promise** to Abraham. This calling was so The Nation of Israel could enter into God's **rest** (paradise).

This **promise** continued from the time of Abraham, down to Isaac and then to Jacob. Jacob's name was changed to Israel and with his twelve sons comprised the structural basis for the new nation of Israel. When Israel migrated to Egypt, they eventually became slaves in that land. This occurred because after Joseph died, the new pharaoh didn't know what Joseph had done to **save** all of Egypt from starvation.

In slavery, The Israelites pleaded for mercy and prayed to God for deliverance. Since Israel turned to God in this manner, God chose Moses as His Prophet to lead them to The Promised Land so they could enter God's **rest**. Since the time of Adam and Eve, God was always ready to dwell with His people. In this case, Israel declared that they wanted Him. But they would have to prove this by obeying Him.

This **covenant** or **agreement** which was made with Israel was totally different from what God had made with anyone else. To no other nation in the world had God made such a personal "**covenant**." Since the time of Adam and Eve, God had not been any other nation's God. This was only the second time, in history, that a people could have had God, as their own personal God, with His **presence** dwelling with them. Notice, in cementing His **covenant**, God gave, not just one of His titles, but His very personal name "YHVH" otherwise known as the "I am" or "The Existing One." God, Himself, was going to dwell with them, not in a tabernacle or **temple**, but with them personally. After Israel failed, by sinning, they had to wait for their **rest** much later in **the new heaven and new earth**. There will be no **temple** in **the new**

heaven and **new earth** because God, Himself will be **the temple**, along with Jesus Christ (Deuteronomy 5:2-7).

The Exodus

When God called Moses from out of the burning bush, Moses was actually talking to **an angel** (Acts 7:30). Angels are “elohim” just as God is “Elohim” (Psalm 8:5). The Hebrew word for “angels” in this Psalm is “elohim.” “Elohim” is God’s title of “universality” or “plurality” so that God is “...**all**” and will be “...**in all**” (I Corinthians 15:28). That is why God said in Genesis 1:26, “**Let us make man in our image...**”

As God’s “messengers” – **angels** (“elohim”) have the job to carry out **the plan** of God (“Elohim”) to make man become like God (Hebrews 1:14). The angel in the burning bush was God’s deputy who was talking in the first person in order to bring God’s people, Israel, out of bondage. Notice who brought Israel out of Egypt. Exodus 12:51 states that The Lord God brought Israel out of Egypt. How was this done? When God used Moses to lead the children of Israel across The Red Sea, Pharaoh pursued them.

The angel of The Lord (God’s angels) went before Israel. The “**cloud**” followed Israel. Then, this “**cloud**” stood between the pursuing Egyptians and Israel, so The Egyptians could not harm The Israelites. Who was in this “**cloud**?” It wasn’t “the angel” of The Lord because “**the angel**” was **the first to come between them**. (God’s “**glory**” in the **cloud**) still led Israel. The angel did not begin to lead Israel until Israel sinned at Mount Horeb. From then on, “**the cloud**” followed The Israelites and the angel. Besides the fact of Israel going through The Red Sea, Paul said that “**the cloud**” was also a baptism. This “**cloud**” led Israel to Mount Sinai. What or who was this “**cloud**?”

The Cloud

In Exodus 23:20, after Israel sinned at the mount, by breaking God's **commandments**, God said to Moses, "**Behold, I send an Angel before thee, to keep thee in the way, and to bring thee into the place which I have prepared**" (Verse 21). God instructed the nation to obey this angel's voice because **He will not pardon you**. God explained that this angel spoke in God's voice because "My Name" is in Him. This was brought about by the strict adherence to The Law of Moses in The Letter, which caused their death. There was no forgiveness. From this point on, God was **not** with them, to lead them. Instead, the angel was designated to lead Israel.

After God gave Moses The Law (Exodus 33), The Israelites built a **tabernacle** and God restated that "the angel" would lead Israel to their **rest** in The Promised Land (Exodus 23:1-7). This **tabernacle** was **not** in the camp of Israel, **but outside**. Why was this? **The cloud**, that led Israel out of Egypt, was by **the tabernacle** and there The Lord spoke to Moses (Exodus 33:7-9). Then in Verse 11, it states that God spoke to Moses as a friend, **face to face**. Who was in **the cloud**? God was in **the cloud** and spoke to Moses at **the tabernacle**. God, no longer would speak to, or be with Israel. The voice was "the angel" speaking in the first person. At this point, God had threatened to destroy Israel and only permitted The Tribe of Moses, The Levites, to live. God would no longer lead Israel, as His people. **The tabernacle** was built outside the camp of Israel since God would no longer be in their midst. If Israel had not sinned, proving they were stiff-necked and unrepentant, there would have been **no need** for a **tabernacle** or **temple**. In Deuteronomy 5:29, God said, "**O that there were such an heart in them, that they would fear me, and keep all my commandments always, that it might be well with them,**

and with their children for ever!” From here on, God would only allow The Levites to serve Him. Israel could only go into “The Court of Israel,” but not **the inner courts of the temple** where God was present in The Holy of Holies. The veil separated God from rebellious, unconverted Israelites – and the rest of the world – until Christ died, and the veil was **rent in two**. By this means, their access to God was **restored**.

This frightened Moses. God was going to kill the entire nation and only allow The Levitical Tribe to live (Exodus 33:12-13). So Moses asked God if He would be gracious and reconsider Israel to be His “**nation**.” At this point, Moses was Israel’s mediator to God. Moses wanted to know that God was going to be with him, as well as have Israel be His “**nation**.” Moses feared that God would not be with Israel. God was adamant. God would no longer allow Israel to deal with Him **personally**. God said to Moses that “from now on My ‘**angel**’ will lead Israel to His **rest** in The Promised Land.” God would no longer lead them in **the cloud** (Exodus 33:1-3). God said that because Israel was unrepentant and stiff-necked, He wanted to burn them up (Verse 5). God instructed Moses to pitch **the tabernacle** outside of the camp. God did not intend to be with Israel (Verse 7).

When Moses entered **the tabernacle**, **the cloud** stood at the door of **the tabernacle**. God spoke (through “an angel”) with Moses from **the cloud**. Speaking to Moses, face-to-face, as a friend (Verse 11). Then Moses besought God to give him grace or forgiveness which was a promise that God should keep Israel as His “**nation**.” This was an extremely serious stand that God took concerning Israel.

Then, God told Moses, that because of Moses’ kind act of interceding on Israel’s behalf, God declared that His “**presence**”

would go with them (Exodus 33:14). In the Hebrew language, “God’s **presence**” was not “God, The Deity, being with them,” but only “God’s **presence** would be with them.” In Strong’s, #6440, “paneh” means “face” or “countenance.” Later you will know what God was really saying to them.

In Exodus 33:17-18, God said that He would let His “**presence**” go with Israel because Moses found grace in His sight. Then Moses said, “**I beseech thee, shew me thy glory.**” Moses did not want to see God, but only His “**glory.**” Remember that Christ said, “**...glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was**” (John 17:5). This is the same “**glory**” that Moses wanted to see. God’s “**glory**” was not Christ as a separate deity, but a part of the very Glory of God, The Father, Himself. This was God, Almighty, The YHVH. This was The One God and The Only God. Christ was a vital part of that “**glory.**” In Exodus 33:19, God said, “**I will make all my goodness pass before thee...**” This is right out of *The Bible*. God, Himself states that His “**glory**” is **all of God’s “goodness!”** It is not Christ as a separate deity. In fact, God said that His “**glory**” is not God, the “**being**” but rather God’s “**glory**” in His “**total goodness!**”

Strong’s, #3519 (“kabow’d”), #3519 and #3513 for “**glory**” is defined as “**weight,**” “**copiousness,**” “**magnificence,**” “**wealth**” or “**all that God is.**” God’s “**glory**” is truly all of God’s “**goodness.**” All of God’s procreative and creative power as God, the “**logos**” or God’s “**thoughts**” – is God’s “**glory**” (I Corinthians 3:16-17, 6:19-20). This is by **the power** of God’s Holy Spirit.

In God’s “**glory**” the first prominent aspect is The Spirit of Christ. Through that Spirit, all of God’s creation, along with God’s whole **purpose** and **plan**, is prepared for God’s future Sons and Daugh-

ters. All of God's complete goodness and love for everything is being worked out in God's **plan** – and it **“is”** God's **“glory.”** All that **“is”** comes from God. God is to be **“All and In All.”** The Greek word **“doxa”** is **“God's glory”** in *The New Testament* and the word **“kabow'd”** in *The Old Testament* carries the same meaning.

Read Exodus 33:20-23 and you should see clearly that **no one** has seen God because they would not have lived. They would have been burned up. Hebrews 12:29 states that God is a **“consuming fire.”** Moses, when hiding in the cleft of the rock and looking at God's hind parts – really only saw God's **“glory”** – or **“the radiance”** from God's **“being”** which contains all of God's **“goodness.”** Moses' face would shine brightly after he talked to God. To look at God's **“glory”** gives one a sunburn. Moses, however, never saw God Himself – only His **“glory.”** Christ was in that **“glory,”** the same **“glory”** Jesus had before the world was. **Christ, The Firstborn, before the world existed, was with The Father, but only in God's “glory.”**

God's face shines as the sun. When one looks at the sun in its strength, you never see the sun directly. You only see the sun's radiance or light, but not the very surface of the sun itself. So it is with God. Moses spoke face-to-face with God, but he only saw God's **“glory”** or **“radiance”** which possesses all of God's **“goodness.”** Christ was in God's **“glory.”** That is what Jesus said in John 17:5. Before Christ was human and became **The Word** (“logos”) by God's Holy Spirit, He was part of God's **“glory.”**

In Exodus 34:5, you read that The Lord descended in **“the cloud”** – stood with Moses and He proclaimed The Name of The Lord. All that Moses saw through **the cloud** was God's **“glory”** or **“radiance”** which was all of God's **“goodness.”** Moses never saw

God directly.

This Glory of God would **follow** Israel as “**the angel**” of The Lord, leading them through the wilderness (as God had promised Moses). When the angel stopped and Israel made camp, **the tabernacle** was set up and **the cloud** with God’s “**glory**” would reside in **the tabernacle**. Only The Levites could go in and serve. Israel could only be in “**the court**” of Israel, but never in **the tabernacle**. Only The High Priest could go into The Holy of Holies on The Day of Atonement. God would not deal with Israel directly because they had been unrepentant and rebellious.

Christ was **the rock** who **followed** Israel in God’s “**glory**” as the angel led them to The Promised Land. The Jews called God’s “**glory**” “**the shekinah**.” The Hebrew word “**chakanh**,” means “where God dwells with them.” Jesus was never a separate deity or God. There is only One God and that is why The Commandment states, “**Thou shalt have no other gods before me**” (Exodus 20:3).

When you let *The Scriptures* plainly state who Christ was before He was human, the answer is so simple. The simplicity in Christ is exactly as *The Bible* states. You are told to watch, “**...lest your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ**” (II Corinthians 11:3). Jesus Christ, before He was born as a human, was God’s “**glory**.” God’s “**glory**” is defined as **all** of God’s “**goodness!**”

You have seen that God’s “**goodness**” is the totality of what God is. His “**logos**” or God’s “**divine thoughts**” are empowered by God’s own Holy Spirit. This “**glory**” is the totality of God’s riches of procreation and creative powers. This “**glory**” is the act of creating Sons of God who will be formed in the likeness and

character of God.

The Apostle Paul clearly stated that, God, in these last days, speaks to you by His Son (Hebrews 1:2). Then in Verse 3, the text states that Jesus is the brightness of His “**glory**.” Realize that “brightness” in the Greek language means “radiance” or “light.” Remember also, that God is **light** (I John 1:5). Therefore, Christ, before He was human, was within the radiance – or complete “**goodness**” of God. That “**glory**” which pre-existed in God, became flesh or Christ. Then, Jesus became “**The Living Word of God**” by the **power** of God’s Spirit (John 3:34).

John said that Jesus became the “**logos**” or **The Word** when The Glory of God begot Christ as The Only Begotten of The Father (John 1:14). The Greek for “only begotten” is “monogenes.” “Monogenes” translates into “the beginning one.” When you say that you have your father’s genes, it means you began from your father just as Christ did. God’s genes are His “**glory**” by the **power** of God’s Holy Spirit. This “**glory**” had the very “**Spirit of Christ**” within it. It was by God’s “**glory**” through Christ that God created all things by His Son.

There is only **One God** and Father of all and **One Lord Jesus Christ** (I Corinthians 8:6). There has never been two gods or three gods, or more. There is **only One God**, who is The Father with Jesus Christ, His Son. Be sure you believe The Commandment, “**Thou shalt have no other gods before me**” (Exodus 20:3). You must remember the **purpose** God required Israel to build a **tabernacle** and ultimately the **temple**.

The **tabernacle** and the **temple** are required, as is the **true temple** in heaven because God will not dwell with carnal or unconverted beings. Only a High Priest can directly come in God’s **presence**

whether of Levi or Melchizedek. God does not hear sinners (Isaiah 59:1-2). A mediator is always necessary.

CHAPTER 3

PURPOSE OF GOD'S TEMPLE

Once you comprehend the puzzle your *Bible* contains and it makes sense to you, then God opens a deeper Spiritual meaning for what you had previously thought you understood about His Word. This is what Spiritual Growth is all about. What is the process by which your Father and His Son, Jesus Christ, use to keep everyone growing Spiritually? To understand, you must start right at the beginning with how God will bring about the condition called "...all in all" (I Corinthians 15:28).

God has a **temple** in heaven (Hebrews 9:23-24). In *The Old Testament*, God told Moses to build an exact copy of **the tabernacle**. It was, also, the first action that would be followed later in Solomon's day when a **temple** was constructed on earth as a type of **the heavenly temple** (Hebrews 9:1). Consequently, everyone should ask some simple, but important questions.

Why does God have a **temple**? Is **the temple** in heaven, the place where God dwells? Did God dwell in **the temple**, which was on the earth? To understand the real **purpose** of God's **temple**, you must first comprehend the underlying foundation of how God wants humanity to grow **spiritually**.

God desires that all individuals become God's "**word**" through His Son, Jesus, The Christ.

God's Dwelling

Stephen gave a sermon to his accusers before they killed him. After he explained how God brought His people, Israel, out of Egypt to worship Him, God uttered (or gave) The Ten Commandments (Acts 7:36-38) and Deuteronomy 5:2-29). Keep in mind that God said He “**added no more**” immediately after The Ten Commandments were given (Deuteronomy 5:22). Initially, God's requirement for making Israel His people was for them to keep His Commandments in their hearts. At this point and under these conditions, the rest of The Law was not given by God. He gave **only** The Ten Commandments. Later, you will see the significance that the remainder of The Law (Torah) has in relationship to the **temple** of God.

After Israel heard God utter The Ten Commandments, they proceeded to sin by worshipping the golden calf they had built. God became angry – said that He would destroy Israel. Instead, He would build a nation from Levi because of Moses (Deuteronomy 9:12-14). In Exodus 33:1-4, God told Moses that He would no longer remain in the **midst** of these people or lead Israel to **the promised land**. Rather, He would send an angel to lead them. God would **not dwell in their midst** because Israel had sinned, therefore God would not hear or be with an unrepentant people (Isaiah 59:1-2).

After Moses pleaded with God over this matter, God instructed Moses to build **the tabernacle** where God agreed to have only His **presence** or **glory** appear. God, Himself, would not dwell in the camp. In Exodus 33:7, Moses pitched **the tabernacle** “**...without the camp, afar off from the camp** [of Israel].” In Exodus 33:14-23, God told Moses that only God's **presence** would be present with Israel at various times in **the tabernacle**. Every time God's

glory appeared over **the tabernacle**, Israel knew that God's **presence** was there. Years later, when Solomon built **the temple**, Solomon said, "**Will God indeed dwell on earth?**" Then Solomon acknowledged that even "**the heaven of heavens cannot contain thee [God]**" (I Kings 8:27). So **the temple** in heaven, as well as the copy **of the heavenly temple** on earth, does not contain God. God does not **dwell** or **have** His **rest** in a heavenly or an earthly **temple**. If God's **temple** in heaven or on the earth is not God's dwelling place, then there must be an entirely different **purpose** for God's **temple**.

Solomon said that he knew God dwelt in heaven and not in **the temple** on earth (I Kings 8:28-30). Then Solomon said that when Israel prayed in **the temple** and you hear the prayers of your people as if God were in **the temple**, then God will acknowledge their prayer.

The temple in heaven and earth is not where God dwells. Therefore, the **real heavenly temple** and **the earthly temple**, when it is rebuilt, must have a different **purpose** than being God's dwelling place. What is that **purpose**? It is vital to discern the answer to that question.

God And Sin

Isaiah clearly reveals why God would not dwell with Israel when they sinned by building the golden calf and then began worshipping it. Isaiah 59:1-2 declares, "**¹Behold, the Lord's hand is not shortened, that it cannot save; neither his ear heavy that it cannot hear: ²But your iniquities have separated between you and your God, and your sins have hid his face from you, that he will not hear.**" God will not have anything to do with sin. Sin is the reason that God no longer led Israel.

The tabernacle replaced God, personally, dwelling in the midst of Israel. God, Himself, would not even listen to them. In fact, for Israel to be **accepted** by God, irrespective of God listening to them, they had to seek and worship Him in **the tabernacle**. This **tabernacle** was placed afar off from the nation of Israel, and only occasionally God's "**presence**" or "**glory**" would appear in **the tabernacle** with **the cloud** (I Kings 8:10-13). But, this **tabernacle** was not God's dwelling place, because of Israel's sin (Acts 7:48).

God's **presence** would be, only, in **the tabernacle** (but not God, Himself). Israel called God's **presence**, "**the shekinah**." This Hebrew word, "shekinah," comes from the root "chakanh." "Chakanh" means "to dwell in the neighborhood for a long time – but **not** eternally." Every time God's "**glory**" (**presence**) was in **the tabernacle** and, later, in **the temple**, Israel would say that "**the shekinah**" was there. They knew God, Himself, **was not there**. Read all of Exodus 33 for further understanding and proof of these statements.

New Heaven And New Earth

A new heaven and earth appears at the conclusion of God's **purpose for man** (Revelation 21:1). Paul said this event would happen when Christ would put an end to all of God's enemies – including **death** (I Corinthians 15:24-26). Where there is no death, there is no sin. The wages of sin is death (Romans 6:23). There will be no death and no sin! Then, in I Corinthians 15:28, God can and will become "...**all in all**." Eventually, without sin, God can – and will – dwell personally with mankind. What does God do at the future time of **the new heaven and new earth**?

At this time, God Himself will dwell in the midst of all people and

everyone will be God's people (Revelation 21:3-5). God will be "...**all in all**." There will be no sin! God will sit on His throne and make everything new. God's "Spirit," or "The Water of Life" will flow freely – and be available to everyone – and they will be God's Sons (Revelation 21:6-7).

Then in Revelation 21:22, it is revealed that there will be **no temple** there. Why is this? It is because God Himself and His Son Jesus, are **the temple**. Since there is no more sin, **God does not need a physical or heavenly temple** for the people to seek Him. God, Himself and Christ, will be approachable in a very direct way. They will dwell in the midst of humanity. No longer is God **outside the camp**. **His presence** is there with the people. God, Himself will be with man personally and will be "**all in all**." Israel sinned, thereby making **the tabernacle** and "**the temple**" necessary as a place to seek God.

Since God dwells only where there is no sin, then what was the real **purpose of the tabernacle and the temple**? **The tabernacle** was built **first**. It was necessary as the portable arrangement, since the unrepentant sinful Israelites would die before they were allowed to enter God's **promised land** (Hebrews 4).

When the next generation entered **the promised land**, they could stay there as long as they kept *The Old Covenant*. In fact, the generation in the wilderness tempted God fully ten times and ten times, they didn't repent. Remember, God was going to kill them when they sinned, but spared them because of Moses. Eventually, all of these rebellious ones died in the wilderness. God would not allow them to receive **the blessings of the Abrahamic promise**. However, once Israel came into **The Promised Land**, they could build a permanent **temple**. They no longer needed a "**portable tabernacle**."

The Temple Purpose

Why was it necessary for **the tabernacle** and **the temple** to exist? Let God's "**word**" plainly reveal **the truth**. On the day of the dedication of **the temple**, Solomon prayed to God and revealed the reason God had approved the construction of that **temple**. First, in Solomon's prayer, he asked if God will dwell on earth (I Kings 8:27). Again, in I Kings 8:43, Solomon states that God dwells in heaven – and not on the earth. Then why build **the temple**? The **purpose** of **the temple** was to be God's **court**. He would "**justify**" or "**release**" the righteous (I Kings 8:28-32). There you have it. **The temple**, as **the tabernacle**, was **God's courthouse**. In fact, Israel had received a special section in this Court of Law. Later, The Gentiles were also given a specified area in **the temple court**, so they could approach God.

The temple was not God's dwelling place, but rather God's "**court of judgment**." Why is this? It is because Israel was **unconverted, unrepentant and rebellious**. This Letter of The Law "legal works" was The Law in **court** to judge carnal Israel. God had to give Israel **The Letter of The Law** which kills (II Corinthians 3:7). This was Moses' administration of death. It could put you to death, such as an **eye for an eye**. **The purpose** of **the temple** was to be **God's court to try Israel** for their **behavior**! God knew carnal Israel couldn't keep these Laws and The Law, therefore, condemned them. The Letter of The Law was to be kept in its **entirety**, or else you were found guilty of breaking it all (James 2:10).

Christ's Answer

Jesus knew **the temple** wasn't where God dwelt. Christ knew that His Father's **house** was God's place of "**judgment**" or "**court**."

God's **mercy seat** was located there. What God wanted from Israel was **repentance** – a **change of mind and heart**. The **mercy seat** was established as God's **throne of forgiveness**. As long as Israel had a heart of **stone** and were unrepentant, then God would not forgive their sins (II Corinthians 3:7). Without their sins being forgiven, God would not dwell with them and be their God. He, therefore, remained as their **judge**, without mercy. If they didn't keep the entire Law, He would not accept them, but rather had them put to death. That is, also, what Paul told Timothy (I Timothy 1:8-9).

The Law was needed only for the unrepentant, unrighteous and the unforgiven sinners. That is why The Law was put into the side of "the ark" – and not inside "**the mercy seat**." Mercy or forgiveness could only be given if one's heart was fleshly (**repentant**) and not made of stone. God wanted Israel to keep His Ten Commandments in their **hearts** (Deuteronomy 5:29). Then, and only then, would God give them mercy or forgiveness.

Read Christ's answer when He gave a parable about **the temple** (Luke 17:9-14). Christ said that those who think they are **righteous** because they have **the truth** – and look down on others – were compared to the two men who went up to **the temple** to pray (Prayer is talking to God to make your feelings and requests known). One man was a Pharisee who kept The Letter of The Law, but did not understand The Spirit of The Law. The Pharisee who did not know or understand The Letter of The Law, was bringing his request to Christ (Galatians 3:24). The Publican, who was a sinner and guilty according to The Letter of The Law, knew he was a sinner. What did The Pharisee pray? The Pharisee said, "**I fast twice in the week, I give tithes of all that I possess**" (Luke 18:12). He made sure that he kept The Letter of The Law. The Publican merely said, "**God be merciful to me a sinner**" (Luke

18:13). Christ said that The Publican went home receiving mercy (or was justified), whereas The Pharisee was still guilty because he did not understand that no one could ever keep the entire Law in The Letter.

Jesus knew God's **temple** was where God's **throne** and **judgment** were. God, being The Judge only wanted **repentance**. Israel did not realize that when one went into **the temple** to pray, he was literally on **trial**. **The purpose of the temple** was to serve as God's **court** where all were on trial. Since Israel did not know **the real purpose** of God for **the temple** as a **court**, then Israel thought they were safe still doing The Law of Moses. They just didn't perceive Christ as their Messiah.

Temple Court

The intent of the words "to judge" in Solomon's dedication prayer carries the complete judicial process within its Hebrew meaning. The word "shaphat" in the Hebrew language means "pronounces sentence," "gives vindication or punishment," "to litigate" (trial), "defend" and "plead." This word promotes the basis for the entire judicial system all the way from "indictment" to "vindication" or "punishment." **The tabernacle** (temple) was the place where Israel had to go because they were sinners. **The temple**, as God's **court**, either overlooked or else forgave the sinner's guilt. Otherwise, the guilty would be condemned and then put to death.

The basis of judgment in The Letter of The Law spelled out what was legal or illegal in God's eyes. It is the same today in nations judged by human law. On The Day of Atonement, all Israel came to **the temple** for an expiation of their sins for another year. The Festival of Trumpets began the "new year." This meant that God accepted Israel for another year, but they were not forgiven their

sins. **The purpose** of all of these Holy Days was only **a shadow** of things to come through Christ, The Messiah. But their hearts were still like stone and they never did repent. Therefore, they never received mercy and had to pay the full penalty as The Law dictated.

If their sins required the sacrifices of animals or meal offerings, etc, it was their penalty for that “partial” transgression. Murder, as well as adultery, required capital punishment. Different transgressions had varied penalties, but forgiveness of their sins was not possible unless they came to Christ. **The temple was truly a courthouse for criminals and sinners against The Law. The heavenly temple had the same purpose. The temple in heaven** was also God's **court**. Satan and one-third of the angels sinned against God and so God would not dwell with them – just as He would not dwell with Israel on earth. Satan and one-third of the angels were thrown to the earth. The heavenly or earthly temples were the place where God **judged** (held court) and where God's **throne** was located. In heaven, the twenty-four elders sat with God – and on earth, The Sanhedrin of Israel (Elders) judged with Moses.

Christ's Throne

Once Jesus was resurrected and went to **God's temple in heaven**, He received “**a throne of Judgment**” situated on the right hand of God. This throne, however, was different. Since Christ was, also, a High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek, He offered the **forgiveness of sins** – because only those who truly repented were accepted by God (Hebrews 4:14-16).

Jesus died for your sins and when you repent, God will hear you and give you grace because of His Son, Jesus Christ. No longer

do you need to be reminded of your sins, because you now have God's Holy Spirit which reveals "**right**" from "**wrong**" in your heart. You have a change of nature or heart (Romans 2:12-15). The **Letter** of The Law no longer has any hold on Christians as it did with Israel (Israel's time of grace will come during The Millennium).

Christian Trials

Does this grace (or mercy), which you received, mean Christians are not tried or tested? No, it does not. But your trial and testing does not require a **physical temple**, because you believed Christ and you repented. No Letter of The Law is required. God's Law is "**in you**," **spiritually**, through Christ. Also, there is no court and no Law that is needed to tell you "right" from "wrong." Christians, as followers of Christ, have God's Law written in their hearts by God's Holy Spirit.

Since God's house (Hebrews 3:6) is Christ "**in you**" (Colossians 1:27), then your testing and trial is by God dwelling directly in you. It is God's Holy Spirit, which leads you to God's **truth** (John 17:17). Peter said that judgment must begin at The House of God (I Peter 4:17). However, judging in *The New Covenant* is a totally different process than in *The Old Covenant*. In *The New Covenant*, because God has **forgiven** your sins through Christ (with no penalty, as under The Law and its curse), therefore, you now, as God's Begotten Sons, are "**heirs**" (Galatians 3:6-7). God now dwells "in you" by His Spirit.

New Testament Judgment

There are three different "judgments" found in *The New Testament*. *The Old Covenant* judgment system was different. It in-

cluded the entire judicial process from indictment to punishment. This is what “shaphat” means in English.

The three Greek types of judgment are:

- 1 **Krima**, accused of a crime or indictment,
- 2 **Krino**, go to The Law or trial, and
- 3 **Krisis**, the condemnation.

Once one repents and accepts Christ as Savior, only one type of judgment is legislated. In I Peter 4:17, “judgment” upon Christians is “**krima**” or “**indictment**.” Since Christians have already repented, there is no need for a trial. Once Christians see their sins, they plead guilty and are forgiven by the blood and grace of Christ. No trial period is needed to determine that guilt is necessary or condemnation required. No Letter of The Law is necessary. In The Final Judgment, all will be resurrected – both the repentant and the unrepentant. They will be indicted, tried and set free; or else face The Final Judgment of “**krisis**,” their crisis of punishment. **The temple's purpose** is clearly **The Courthouse of God**, where worshippers should repent and come to Christ. The Law's **purpose** (Romans 5:20) was to do just that! Until one repents, one must come before God's **temple** and be tried by The Letter of The Law and will come under the curse of that Law. There will be no **temple** in the distant future because God will dwell, not in a **temple**, but will be “**in all**” and everyone will be in His family as His Sons.

CHAPTER 4

GOD'S JUDGMENT

In John 7:24, Jesus warned you not to judge according to the appearance, but to judge “righteous judgment.” What is God’s “righteous judgment?” Christ warned that you should not condemn, accuse or put people on trial by how one’s perceived guilt might appear. The Law of God demands that two or three “witnesses” give “testimony” before anyone can be judged (Matthew 18:16 and Deuteronomy 19:15).

Jesus reinforced the statement above, when He said, **“Judge not, that ye be not judged. For with what judgment ye judge, ye shall be judged...”** (Matthew 7:1). That text means that if you go about accusing people about how they seem to appear, without having two or three **witnesses**, you, yourself, will be judged more severely.

In The Day of Judgment, you will be judged in the same way that you judged others. The implications are that your Judgment Day would mean that everyone who thought you did wrong will line up and accuse you of evil doing – in just the same manner that your circumstances and your conduct, appeared to them on the surface. These are frightening prospects, are they not? Christ said that if you don’t judge righteously, then it will be more tolerable for The Land of Sodom in The Day of Judgment than for those who didn’t know The Law (Matthew 11:24). Christians must know how God **judges righteously**. You need to understand and dis-

cern this dreadful penalty. The prospects of being thrown into The Lake of Fire demand that you learn **righteous judgment** now – while there is still time. **Biblically**, you can prove that God's **judgment** demands a trial system, which most **western countries** operate upon today. (God's trial system will be covered later in this chapter).

First, comes the **accusation** or **indictment**. Then, adequate **proof** by at least **two witnesses** must be given. This is very much like the manner in which a grand jury is conducted, in order to decide if the indictment should go to **trial**. Following the trial, an individual is found to be either innocent or guilty – and then the punishment is specified.

Two Systems Of Punishment

The question arises, “**Does God believe in capital punishment?**” Does God put someone to death if they commit a heinous crime or sin? The answer has to be **both** “**yes**” and “**no**.”

This is because The Law of God demands death for any serious crimes such as murder or adultery. Romans 6:23 states, “**For the wages of sin is death.**” God absolutely demands capital punishment for enormous sins. If you keep all of God's Law and yet break one point, you are guilty of breaking God's entire Law and, therefore, you are condemned to death (James 2:10). Since Romans 3:23 states that everyone has sinned, it stands to reason that all will **die**. Sin demands it. So every human being is destined to die (Hebrews 9:27). Consequently, all humans who are born through the genealogy of Adam will die, but, in Christ, shall “**all**” be made alive (I Corinthians 15:22). These are two different outcomes for sinners. All die – and yet “**all**” will live. How can this be?

Carnal And Repentant

Peter told the assembled crowds to, “...**Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sin** [crimes]” (Acts 2:38). You are guilty of the crime or sin, but because you repented, by Christ’s authority, your sins have been forgiven.

These are two types of judgment. If you are **unrepentant, you remain guilty** of your crimes and die. When you **repent** “in Christ,” you are released from your sins and live. Read what Paul is telling you in I Corinthians 15:22. This text is one of the most inspiring on this subject. God conducts two types of judgments with two different outcomes. If you remain carnal and unrepentant, you will die. If you repent, you are forgiven and released. The amazing fact is that all have sinned and yet all will be forgiven in the ultimate “end-game” sense.

Carnal Israel

Previously, you have learned that **the purpose** of God’s **temple** (besides a place of worship) was a **courthouse** where judgment was rendered from God’s throne (**the mercy seat**). One comes before God in **the temple** to worship God and to receive **mercy**. However, Christ reveals that as long as one stays unrepentant, he/she are judged strictly by The Letter of The Law (Law’s legalism) and receive no mercy – only death.

In Exodus 32:35, God states that Israel sinned when they built the golden calf. Therefore, God condemned Israel to death, except for The Tribe of Levi (because of Moses). That was a definite conclusion and so that generation died and did not obtain the right to enter **the promised land** to receive **the rest**. Exodus 23:21

reveals that God's angel would be their judge, since God would not be in their midst and **"the angel"** of The Lord could not give any mercy. It is said, **"Eye for eye, tooth for tooth"** (Exodus 21:24). The Israelites had to keep the entire Letter of The Law (works, legalism) with no mercy given – only death. Why was this? The Letter of The Law was given as judgment for carnal, unrighteous people (I Timothy 1:9). The legalism of The Letter of The Law was to be their judge – without mercy. They were unrepentant. This **legalistic Letter of The Law** was **added** because they wouldn't repent (Galatians 3:19).

Carnal Judgment

When unrepentant people are put on trial and condemned, their judgment has an entirely different system – as opposed to the system that is employed for repentant people. When King Solomon dedicated the first **temple** and prayed to God, he said, **"³¹If any man trespass against his neighbour, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and the oath come before thine altar in this house: ³²Then hear thou in heaven, and do, and judge thy servants, condemning the wicked, to bring his way upon his head; and justifying the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness"** (I Kings 8:31-32).

Shaphat

The word "judge" in the Hebrew language is "shaphat." This Hebrew word defines the entire judicial system. To "shaphat" is "to accuse," then "indict someone of a crime, then put them on trial to find this person guilty or innocent." If that individual is condemned (guilty), then there is **no mercy**, but rather the full penalty is exacted for the crime or sin. This was **God's righteous judgment** for unrepentant criminals who were found guilty! Un-

repentant criminals are the repeat offenders. They cannot control themselves.

Job was a righteous man, but he was self-righteous and finally had to repent like everyone else (Job 42:5-6). But, all along, Job had an accuser who judged by appearance. It was Satan. **Satan** became Job's **unrighteous judge**. He was like a prosecuting attorney. But Satan always judges by outward appearance (Job 1:8-11). Satan saw Job was exceedingly blessed by God. This could not be denied. On the surface it looked like Job was righteous, because he was blessed. So this was a lesson in judgment, not only for Job, but for Satan, as well. So it is with Christians today. Jesus is sitting at God's right hand and sharing God's throne. He intercedes for your sins by means of His shed blood (Hebrews 8:1-2). This is the positive side of the equation.

Death Is Total Destruction

The Apostle Paul declares that, "**...all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God...**" (Romans 3:23). Remember that, "**...the wages of sin is death...**" (Romans 6:23). Everyone dies. All have received the death penalty to pay for their sins. But what is death? To the many who do not understand, they believe you are only **partially dead when physical "life" terminates**. Somehow, they believe you really do not **completely die**. Some hold to the notion that there is an immortal soul which goes to heaven at death. Hence, you are not really dead. Others believe that a part of you, as a "**spirit**," survives and goes back to God until **the resurrection**. In both cases, a part of you exists and you really didn't completely die.

If you don't completely die and a part of you still exists, then you have not really died as Hebrews 9:27 states, "**...it is appointed**

unto men once to die, but after this the judgment.” If only the flesh dies (your body), then theoretically, the part of you which is still alive, whether with God or in heaven, remains as a sinner. In Romans 7:6, you read that Christians who repented and believed in Christ are considered totally dead to The Law. Paul said that since you are dead, then Christians should serve in the newness of “The Spirit.” That is why *The Bible* regards deceased Christians as being asleep when they die (I Thessalonians 4:14). This is opposed to the unrighteous and unrepentant who have **not** been given **the gift of eternal life**.

The word “death” in the Greek language is “thanatos.” This word “thanatos” conveys “total destruction.” When one dies, they do not exist anymore **in any form**. They are dead “all over” (**body and spirit**). When Christ died on the stake, He said to God, His Father, “**My God, My God, why hast thou forsaken me**” (Matthew 27:46)? Jesus knew that He was going to “**totally die**.” In Verse 50, Jesus gave up His last breath (or **spirit energy**) and was **completely dead**. For three days and three nights, **Jesus, The Christ**, did not exist. Only His fleshly body lay in the tomb. Jesus did not exist until three days later, when, with the input of “**The Spirit of Life**” from God, The Father. This is how Christ was **resurrected**.

Obviously, if Christ didn't completely die, but was only partially dead, He would not have paid for your sins. The wages of sin is death – complete death! Christ was totally dead – did not exist, and, therefore, He qualified to pay for your sins.

The Great Gulf

In the example of Lazarus and the rich man, Jesus said that when the rich man was resurrected in The Judgment, he looked up from

hell (the Greek word is “hades” or “the grave”) and was in torment from the heat of The Lake of Fire. The rich man, also, saw Lazarus in God’s “**kingdom**” with Abraham. The rich man said, “Abraham, send Lazarus to warn my brothers.” Abraham replied that there is a **great gulf** between those in “**the kingdom**” and those in The Lake of Fire (Luke 16:19-31).

What is this great gulf? Jesus gives you the answer. In John 5:24-30, the subject is **the resurrection of the dead** – as contrasted to those who couldn’t receive “**life**,” and instead, were condemned to The Lake of Fire. In this text, Jesus said, “**Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him [God] that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation [Lake of Fire]; but is passed from death unto life.**” The great gulf represented **the rich man** who had to **totally die** – since he had not repented. But on the other hand, Lazarus had **passed** that gulf of death and therefore, had received **the gift of life**.

John, The Baptist said, “**And now also the ax is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree [human] which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire**” (Matthew 3:10). Those who do not repent and do not produce fruit, must completely die; even the root itself must die. They must become totally dead. Nothing of that person can be alive. They are completely destroyed, so that nothing remains of that person (Ecclesiastes 12:7). So, The Lake of Fire is **God’s righteous judgment**. It is **capital punishment** for all those who are assigned to go into The Lake of Fire.

The Gift Of Life

How does one escape this Lake of Fire? Acts 2:38 proves that one

must believe in Jesus by having **faith** and then **repent**. As long as one is still carnal, one must be completely destroyed (die). The carnal nature must go.

The Resurrection

Some do not understand the meaning of a “**resurrection**.” They believe that God resurrects only to give **life** to some – and **death** to others. They believe that those who die receive no **salvation**. But, **this is not biblical**. Jesus said that God does not destroy people forever, “**For he is not a God of the dead, but of the living: for all live unto him**” (Luke 20:38). It was never God’s **purpose** to put people to death. People’s own sins caused their death (I Corinthians 15:56). When God resurrects individuals, **it is to give them “life.”** This is the main subject that is expounded in detail in I Corinthians 15.

The full content and subject in I Corinthians 15:12 concerns **the resurrection of the dead**. Is there a “**resurrection?**” I Corinthians 15:19-20 declares that this is so. What is **the purpose of the resurrection?** You read that, “**For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive**” (I Corinthians 15:22). Read the whole chapter and you will see **the purpose** of God is to have a **final resurrection** to get rid of death (I Corinthians 15:54). The word “all” in the case of Adam cannot be different from the word “all” in the second case relating to Jesus. If “**all**” died under Adam’s sin, then by logical deduction, “**all**” will live under Christ. The first “**all**” means the same thing as the second “**ALL**.” This process will be discussed later in more detail.

God **resurrects** people to give them **life**. That is why Christ came into the world. I John 4:14 states that, “**the Father sent The Son to be The Savior of The World.**” It is by means of **redemption**

that you find Christ serves as Savior. Otherwise, Christ serves as a Judge in The Great White Throne Judgment. It will be shown it is Christ who was sent to be The Savior of The Whole World. I Corinthians 15 will thoroughly prove the full state concerning The Salvation of The Whole World. This should be the most wonderful news anyone has ever heard.

The Repentant

How does God judge Christians? When one repents and believes Christ in **faith**, they have passed from **death** to **life** (John 5:24). But does God judge **Christians**? Yes, He does! I Peter 4:17 states that **judgment** must begin with The Household of God. Christians are constantly being judged, now, in this life. But, you might ask “how?” You discovered that **the temple** in Israel was a place of worship, as well as, being a **courthouse** for God. There was only one type of “**judgment**” in the Hebrew language which is identified by the Hebrew word “shaphat.” This word represents “the complete judicial process.” In other words, The Israelites were judged by The Letter of The Law. If they broke one point, they were guilty of breaking The Whole Law. They went from the indictment of a crime, to trial and, then, proceeded to condemnation. That is “shaphat.” But this is not the way it is when a Christian is “**judged**.”

The error comes from the way *The New Testament* was written in the English language. The specific problem is found in the word “judgment.” It has been assumed that there is only “one meaning” for “judgment,” when in actuality there are three meanings. *The New Testament*, by using the words “**judgment**,” “**condemnation**,” “**damned**” and even, at times, “**salvation**” conveys the thought that **there is only one meaning** for the English word “judgment.” Now you see the problem. But what is the solution?

Since there are really three different words in the Greek language for this word “judgment,” you need to discern the full meaning of each word in order to fully understand how God judges Christians righteously:

- 1 **Krima:** This Greek word for “judgment” is used to mean “accusing or indicting someone of a crime or sin.”
- 2 **Krino:** In Greek, this word conveys “the process of going to trial,” or “proving one is innocent or guilty.”
- 3 **Krisis:** The definition here denotes “a time of crisis.” One is pronounced guilty or innocent as a “turning point.” As in all trials, punishment has to be decided. The Law can (a) release, (b) impose probation, or (c) require payment of the full penalty, etc. It is the critical time of judgment and it is time when one can ask for the court to have mercy.

All three of these judgments, as stated in *The New Testament*, must be addressed for the purpose of determining which meaning of the word “judgment” God intends when he uses the word.

When referring to “judgment” for Christians the Greek word for “judgment” in I Peter 4:17 is “**krima**.” Christians can be accused or indicted for a crime or sin. However, their judgment goes no further. Why is this? Since they are Christians, they immediately repent, by admitting that they sinned and then Christ, their Judge, forgives them. Christians settle out of court. Christians have their sins paid for by Christ’s blood and, therefore, have no penalty. **That is what God explains as “righteous judgment”**

for the repentant. Just think about it for a moment. Forgiveness is complete. **It covers all of the repentant individuals.** This is incredible information for you to know.

CHAPTER 5

WHAT IS THE CHURCH?

What is The Church? This is a simple enough question. There are multiple thousands of churches around the world – with different creeds and doctrinal requirements for anyone who wants to join their group membership. Members, who do not agree with those creeds and doctrines or faithfully follow them, are automatically excommunicated. Yet, all these denominations, sects and corporations truly believe they are Christians – and feel they are the “true” followers of Christ. What does your *Bible* claim regarding the identity of The True Church?

What Is God’s Work?

Many believe that **preaching *The Gospel*** is God’s “**work.**” But that is not what *The Bible* reveals. Christ said, “**This is the work of God, that ye believe on him whom he hath sent**” (John 6:29). Jesus said that **He is the one** doing God’s “**work**” – and you need to believe Him and His **Words**, so you can actually know The Work of God.

Christ came to preach *The Gospel*, which was His Father’s **message**. This *Gospel* was God’s **message** about His “**kingdom.**” The **message** comes from His “**kingdom**” by Jesus Christ, “The Chosen Representative” of that “**kingdom.**” Christ came to do His Father’s “will,” which is to **save humanity**, causing everyone

to **believe in Jesus “as their path” to be saved** (Verses 38-40). That is The Work of God, which in turn, becomes The Kingdom of God. John, The Apostle said that Christ came to **save the world** (I John 4:14). How was this to take place?

The Church

Paul went to Jerusalem to discuss their established form of teaching on a particular point of doctrine (Acts 15:1-15). Up until this time, mostly Jews were Christians, and, as a consequence, they believed that in order to be **saved**, a Christian had to be circumcised – and **must keep** The Law of Moses (Verse 5). Just before Jesus went to His Father in **heaven**, He told The Disciples how they would be receiving God's Holy Spirit – so they could be **witnesses** of Christ to the rest of the world (Acts 1:8).

Therefore, The Church literally becomes **Christ's witness**, which, in turn, is God's “**work.**” Christians are to be as Christ was. Once Jesus went back to The Father after His **resurrection**, “**the church**” was responsible for being a “**witness**” of **Christ** – or God's “**work.**”

Since mostly Jews were Christians (believing in Christ), they thought Christians only had to be circumcised and keep The Law of Moses in order to be a part of **the church** (Acts 15). At this point, “**the church**” leaders felt that doctrine was a necessary requirement for being part of “**the church.**” Yet, Paul and Barnabas did not agree. Once Gentiles were accepted into **the church**, most of **the church** believed that circumcision (a new church doctrine) and the keeping of The Law were **mandatory** for **The Gentiles**, as well.

The temple was still functioning in Jerusalem, and God's **pres-**

ence was there, so Christians had to follow The Law, even if they were Gentiles. Therefore, **circumcision was required** for a male to come into **the temple to worship God**. As long as **the temple** was there, **circumcision and the keeping of The Law was required**. At that time, they didn't understand that a **doctrine** or a **creed** was **not** required to be in **the church**. **The church** was never based upon any "doctrines" and "creeds." It was predicated upon something entirely different. What was that?

The Ecclesia

In Greek, the word "ecclesia" has been translated as "church." But this does not give a correct meaning for the word. The English word "church" comes from "circes" or "circle." A circle represented the sun and so the word "church" compares with "the circle." But here is the catch. The circle was an image of the sun.

Therefore, the English word "church," actually meant "**sun worshippers**" of God. This occurred when The Roman Church accepted the pagan holidays and gave pagan names to **all aspects** of Christianity. This was nothing more than so-called "baptized paganism" which only appeared as "Christian" or "Christianity."

The original Greek word "ecclesia" is what has been called "**the church**" in English, but it has an entirely different meaning. The word "ecclesia" by definition refers to the "**called-out ones**" or a "general assembly." It, also, means a "congregation coming together for a common **purpose**." For Christians, this meant anyone calling upon The Name of God through His Son, Jesus Christ, who was the vital central component of "**the church**."

The true interpretation of the word "ecclesia" in this Christian

sense meant **anyone** who seeks to **call upon God** by **believing in His Son, Jesus**. Anyone who believes in Jesus (God's "work") will have **everlasting life** (John 6:40). **There was no doctrine and no creed that was originally a part of this process**. In short, **the church** consists of those people who are **called by God** to **believe** in His Son. That is "**the true identification**" of "**the church**."

Doctrine Not Required

Acts 15 defines **the church** by stating that The Pharisees were a **sect in the church** – even though The Pharisees, themselves, held to a "**different doctrine**." These Pharisees believed Jesus was their Savior. That was **all** that was **necessary** to be a Christian, or a part of The Body of Christ. No doctrines and no creed were necessary. You could even become a **sect** within **the church**, just as long as you believed that Jesus was your Savior. Then, you are designated as the "**called-out ones**" and are part of **the church**.

What is a "sect?" The Greek word for "sect" is "**heretic**" (Acts 15:5). A "heretic" is "one who holds to a **contrary** belief than what is espoused by **the church**." As long as the heretic believed in Christ and wanted to be **saved**, he was allowed to be in "**the body**." However, when the heretic became "schismatic" in the Greek or "**caused a split**" by starting his own group, then he automatically departed from **the church**. Paul said there should be no schism (schismatic) in "**the body**" (I Corinthians 12:25-26).

As long as the heretic held to a different belief, but caused no split in **the church**, this heretic could remain as a part of "**the body**" – **the church**. John said, they who are the anti-Christians, were not of you (**the church**) because they didn't remain in **the church** (I John 2:18-19).

The Apostle Paul said that “**the unlearned**” (those not knowing **the truth**) and “**the unbelieving**” (those who didn’t know God or Christ) were allowed into **the church** (I Corinthians 14:23). Scripturally, *The Bible* proves that the “ecclesia” could include anyone who was called by God even though they were heretical, unlearned or even unbelieving. When The Apostle Paul was called by God on the road to Damascus, He, himself, had hated and imprisoned those very Christians. But once Paul **believed** in Christ, then he became part of **the church**.

Church Story

Since the “ecclesia” (**called-out ones**) was composed of anyone who was called by God to seek Him through Christ, you could ask, “When did **the church** actually begin?” When Israel was called out of Egypt to worship God and to hear His “**word**” at Mount Sinai, the nation was called the “**ecclesia**” or “The Church in The Wilderness” (Acts 7:38). Why did Stephen identify The Nation of Israel as being God’s “**church**?”

It is because Israel, as a nation under Moses, met the definition of what God’s **church**, “always was” and “always will be.” Israel was called by God to seek and worship Him and to hear His “**word**” (Jesus). The “ecclesia” (**called-out ones**) formed **the church**. This designation applies even though The Israelites were not even converted or had repented at that time (Deuteronomy 5:29). Israel was given The Law of Moses to bring them to Christ and they, also, were in **the church** (Galatians 3:24 and I Timothy 1:9). Israel could be compared to the unbelieving people in I Corinthians 14.

When did **the church** actually start? Notice what happened at the beginning in *The Book of Genesis*. Did **the church** start in Gen-

esis? Seth was born to Adam and Eve to replace Abel who had pleased God (Genesis 4:25). From the time of Seth and his son, Enos, **men had begun** to call upon The Name of The Lord. This was the beginning of **the church** and the beginning of church history (Genesis 4:26). Cain and his children were cast out of Eden (The Land of Pleasantness) to be wanderers who were forced to seek God on their own. All pagan ideas about God came about through Cain's lineage. They were seeking God by means of their own human reasoning (Romans 1:2). On the other hand, the children of Seth sought God and God was with them. All those who called upon **the name of God** were "**the ecclesia**" – "**the church.**"

The Beginning

Paul said God finished His "**work**" on The Seventh Day of Creation (Hebrews 4:2-4). He, also, said *The Gospel* was preached directly by God's **angel** right from the beginning in The Garden of Eden. **The church** started in **the garden**. God gave Adam and Eve a choice to eat from The Tree of Life or to follow their own ideas of "**right**" and "**wrong**" (The Tree of Good and Evil).

From the very beginning, Adam and Eve could have called upon His **name**. They chose not to, therefore, God would not let them stay in God's **rest** (Sabbath). God continued to call people to enter that **rest** (His Church). Except for those like Abraham, everyone refused – until Christ came (Hebrews 4). At this time, through Jesus "in you," you can enter that **rest**, which is God's "**church**" or "**called-out ones**" – "**the ecclesia.**"

Church Prophecy

Jesus said, "**Many shall be called** [to His church], **but few**

chosen.” In fact, throughout church history, Jesus said that many of those who were called first, would be last (The Jews); and those called last (The Gentiles) would be first to come into **the kingdom** (Matthew 20:16). Jesus said many would preach in His name and deceive **many**, including some of the “**called-out ones**” (Matthew 24:5). Even **the elect** had better beware (Matthew 24:24).

Christ gave a prophetic parable about the future of **the church**. Jesus gave the parable of **the sower** of **the seed** (Matthew 13:18-23). When Christ explained the meaning of the parable, He said that some were called to hear **the truth** and they listened – but Satan cast doubt into their minds. Another was called and compared to one receiving God’s “**word**” in a stony place. At first, the person came to Christ joyfully, but just as soon as the process of being a Christian caused a personal hardship or some other minor trouble, **he/she decided to quit**. Still others hear God’s “**word**,” understand the call, but quit because of being too absorbed in their own “worldly” **life**.

Finally, some seeds of God’s “**word**” fall upon those who are sincerely dedicated to God. They heed God’s call (to His **church**) and continue to **grow spiritually**. Throughout their lives they grow fruit, some a hundred fold, some sixty and some thirty-fold (Matthew 13:23). These are **the called-out ones**, who became **the chosen ones**. Who are **the chosen** in God’s **church**?

Called And Chosen

Paul said Jesus presides over His own House of God – The Church (Hebrews 3:6). Paul continued and said **the church** is God’s **house**. It is called “**...the household of faith...**” (Galatians 6:10) and “**...the household of God...**” (Ephesians 2:19). So, **the called-out ones**, “The Church” or “God’s House,” has been

built by Christ (God's **work**). Christ is The Head of The Church. Christ is **the church's husband** and loves her unto His **death** (Ephesians 5:24-28).

Jesus tells you about His Bride, The Church and likens the members to ten virgins, of which five are foolish and five are wise (Matthew 25:1-13). When Christ **returns**, the five wise virgins have prepared themselves for The Wedding Feast (God's **rest**) and will become **The Chosen Bride of Christ**. The five unwise virgins are left out. But who are these five wise chosen virgins?

The Chosen

Paul, in each salutation, disclosed exactly to whom he was writing. In each case, Paul defines where the brethren were placed — **spiritually**. When he wrote to **the church** in Corinth, he was explaining to them about being carnal and unrepentant (I Corinthians 3:3). Notice his salutation. Paul addressed The Corinthians as The Church of God in Corinth. Then, Paul said they were called to be "**saints**" (I Corinthians 1:2). Because they were carnal, he addressed them as **the called-out ones (church)** — but in fact, they should have been "**saints**." But they were not, because The Corinthians were **carnal**.

The Book of Romans is different. Since Paul hadn't been to Rome, he didn't even call this group The Church of God in Rome. He mentions "The Romans, which were called to be **saints**." Now, consider *The Epistle to Ephesus*. This **church** was well established. Paul personally spent much time there. Notice his salutation. Paul writes to **the saints at Ephesus** and to **the faithful** (Ephesians 1:1). Paul personally knew The Ephesians were growing **spiritually** and diligently following Christ. He felt that others were merely faithful — or "**the called ones**." The **chosen** are **the**

saints who are growing continually. The **called** are the rest of **the church**, who are **faithful**, but **not growing** “**continually**.” So, why is one called a “**saint**?”

The Saints

Clearly, you can be in God’s **church** as a “**called Christian**” and yet not be a “**chosen saint**.” Over and over, Paul states that **the church** – **the called ones**, are called to become **saints** or are **the chosen**. In the Greek language, “**hagios**” means “**blameless**” or “**consecrated**” (Holy). Contrary to the world’s idea, a **saint** has nothing to do with miracles. Rather, this is a condition of an individual who is continually **growing spiritually**. A **true Christian** in **the church** is one who is becoming more like Christ every day (which is God’s “**work**”). This person is **sanctified** and **chosen** of God because God is **spiritually, reproducing Himself in this saint**, so that God can be, “**...all in all**” (I Corinthians 15:28). God calls many, but always keep in mind, that only **a few** will be **chosen**. God, who is calling you to His **church**, is giving you a **great gift**, which is a wondrous **invitation** to be a **saint**, who will, one day, comprise The Bride of Christ. Make sure you dedicate yourself to be one of His **chosen saints**. Now, the question comes up, “How are you called?”

The Process

When God calls you to His “**ecclesia**” or “**body**” you could be an unbeliever (atheist), unlearned (without knowledge of The True God and Christ) or perhaps a heretic (as some of The Pharisees). You might even be a terrible sinner. When Christ called The Apostle Peter to follow Him, Peter explained that he was a “**sinner**.” In the Greek language, this word is an intensified form, which means he was a “**heinous sinner**.” Peter had no regard to obey The Law

or The Commandments, but did believe that The Messiah was to come soon. This belief stemmed from his brothers who were Disciples of John, The Baptist (Luke 5:8).

After Peter was called, Jesus called Levi, a publican – a tax collector – to be His Disciple. Disciples are students or learners who want to change their ways. You can see how they might have been grievous sinners, atheists, agnostics or heretics (false teachings). Christ called them **all** to His “ecclesia” or “church.” The Disciples in God’s **church** are all being taught **the truth**. As soon as they **repent** and accept Christ, as their Savior who paid for their sins, they can be baptized. **No doctrinal belief or creed is necessary**. Once they have hands “laid on them” and receive God’s Holy Spirit, they are a part of The Body of Christ – or **the church**. The remainder of the people, even though they are ignorant of **the truth**, are still being called to God’s “**church**” (I Corinthians 14:38). As long as **no one causes a split** (schisma) in **the church**, they should always be welcomed in **the church’s “fellowship.”**

When a baptized member refuses to repent of willfully sinning (breaking The Ten Commandments), then **the church** is instructed to disfellowship that person, unless or until they repent. Once they repent, they are joyfully accepted back into “**the church’s fellowship.**” Doctrinal beliefs and creeds are not a requirement for being in God’s **church**. **Everyone is at a different level of spiritual understanding**. If **the church** requires all members to be at the same level of **spiritual knowledge**, there will never be **any spiritual growth**. Conformity hinders **spiritual advancement**. It is important to understand that **willful sinning** is the only reason someone can be put out of **the church**. There are no other reasons for excommunication from The Body – The Church.

From this point on, a Christian is continually **growing spiritu-**

ally through The Grace and Knowledge of Christ to becoming a **saint**; who is God's **chosen** and can become a part of The Bride of Christ.

CHAPTER 6

WHAT IS THE MINISTRY?

Many sincere Christians believe the ministry is a special group of individuals within The Church, who hold an office as a rank. Consequently, this ministry is viewed as that part of The Church designated to do The Work of God. The rest of the membership need only attend services, pray, fast – and give their money to the ministry. They somehow feel this ministry has “authority” over the church membership, because people assume this “ministry” is composed of “superior individuals” who “appear” to be exclusive, ordained, “higher-level types” within The Church. Is this what *The Bible* teaches? You need to know the answer!

Christ Defines The Ministry

The mother of Zebedee’s children asked Christ if her two sons could share His throne, with one son on His right hand, the other son on His left (Matthew 20:20-21). Jesus answered her by saying that only His Father could make that choice. When the other ten Disciples heard this request, they were angry. Matthew records the following:

Matthew 20:25-26 ²⁵But Jesus called them unto him, and said, Ye know that the princes of the Gentiles exercise dominion over them, and they that are great exercise authority upon them. ²⁶But

it shall not be so among you: but whosoever will be great among you, let him be your minister.

First and foremost, notice that Jesus said the minister should have **no authority** to rule over The Church. The minister must serve the people he is helping, rather than feel as though he occupies a position of “higher rank” or is a “master” of some sort. Jesus said, **“Neither be ye called masters...”** (Matthew 23:10).

The minister must be an example of how the brethren should conduct their own lives. That is one reason Paul would not receive money unless, or until, he was **in need**. Therefore, Christ said that if one occupies the position of a minister in God’s House, then that person must serve **the church** membership by benefiting **the church** and not himself. In short, a minister should, “...**not** [be] **greedy of filthy lucre** [money]...” (I Timothy 3:3,8). Going further, Jesus said that if any individual wanted to be **chief** (more than others), let him be your servant. The word “servant” is exactly the same as “diakonos” or “minister.” Christ said that if any man wanted to be **more** than any other minister, then he must dedicate himself to serving **the church** more than anyone else.

Then Jesus gave the **prime example** to show how Christ Himself served everyone by giving His **life** for all, “...**the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many**” (Matthew 20:28). Very plainly, Jesus defines the ministry in these vital texts. He said that a minister must carry **no rank or authority over anyone in the church**. He must be a servant, who serves others. Therefore, to be a minister, one must attend to all the needs of **the church** and do God’s “**work**.” He must do this more than anyone else in **the church**. In other words, his **degree of dedication** to these things is the major point of qualification for being a minister.

But it goes beyond that. In fact, a minister should be willing to give his very **life** for **the church congregation**. That is total dedication, in the most complete sense. In the early New Testament Church, many of the leading ministers gave their lives as outright martyrs. The example of being a sacrifice is very difficult to follow.

Administration By Gifts

The Apostle Paul said that you should be willing to present your body as a “...**living sacrifice**...” (Romans 12:1). Verses 2-6 further explains how that is done. Now this refers to **everyone – the entire church**. As Christ’s servants, you must be willing to participate at this level of dedication. In those texts, Paul explained how this is a **reasonable** service, or **duty**, which a Christian must perform. Hence, Paul is warning the entire congregation not to think of themselves more than they should. The brethren should concentrate on the needs of others.

What this means is that God gives to each church member, including the ministry, certain abilities to fulfill their individual role. This is all based on “**faith**” (Verse 3). In Christ, you are all **one body**, though composed of many members (Verse 5). Not only does this concern the ministry, but also “**the church membership**” because they have differing gifts or abilities, to serve **the church** (Verse 6). What do these **gifts** mean to those who manifest them in **the church**? Paul said these diversities of gifts provide the membership with different administrations (I Corinthians 12:4-11). So “**the gift**” given by God to each **church member** produces a variety of responsibilities within **the church**. Now, please consider that the English word, “administrations,” is actually the same Greek word used by Christ in Matthew 20:25-26 for “**minister**” or “**diakonos**.” The administration in **the church**

means that one would be a servant and minister for the benefit of others. So the ministry or **God's servants** includes **the complete church membership**. Therefore, **the entire** church becomes the ministry – depending on **the gifts**, which God gives to each individual member.

What is the ministry? The ministry consists of **the entire body** of Christ, with many members who form this **one body**. Therefore, **the gifts** that God gives to each person, means that all those “**gifted ones**” in **the church** comprise the ministry. It is not enough to merely go into a church building and learn information, even if it is *Bible* teaching. Each and every church member has a **job** and a responsibility within **the church** configuration. Since everyone is in the ministry, then what is your own responsibility?

Do you know? First of all, consider “**the gifts of the spirit.**” What are some of **the gifts**? Paul said that some may have a “**gift**,” such as wisdom, knowledge, faith, healing, miracles, prophecy, different tongues, languages or hospitality, etc. These **gifts** from God are given to certain members within the overall group. They are different administrations or ministries, in **the church** (I Corinthians 12:8-11). Paul states how these **gifts** produce responsibilities or offices, within **the church** (I Corinthians 12:27-29).

There are no ranks or levels, but only **an order of services**, for those who work as servants in **the church**. Then, as Christ instructed, His servants (ministry) should be:

- 1 The Apostle (**greatest servant**),
- 2 Then Prophets,
- 3 Then Teachers,

- 4 Then miracles,
- 5 Then healings,
- 6 Then helps, etc.

This is **not** an **order of hierarchy** or rank, but definitions of who will serve the most (“diakonos”) and in what capacity. Isn’t that amazing? It is, also, surprising how some have totally departed from **the truth** about this overall concept. One point of evidence illustrating the stark **truth** of this claim is how wisdom, miracles and healings can help in the most meaningful ways to serve **the church** to the greatest capacity. But they are never a rank or authority or “pecking order” that is placed over others, as when some individuals may presume himself to be “an apostle.”

When Does God Call You?

Since these **gifts** are for the benefit of everyone, when does God begin to provide them for use by **The Body of Christ**? This is a most important question. Paul does not want you to be ignorant about **the spiritual gifts**, which God gives to everyone in **the church**. He relates the history of these gifts. Paul said, “...**no man speaking by the Spirit of God calleth Jesus accursed: and that no man can say that Jesus is the Lord, but by the Holy Ghost**” (I Corinthians 12:1-3).

Paul tells **The Corinthian Gentiles**, that as soon as God calls them to believe in Jesus Christ, this begins a transformation by means of God’s Holy Spirit working in them. They, on their own, without God calling them, did not come to believe Jesus was The Savior. His Holy Spirit caused them to come to Christ. This is the way it is with everyone. Every **gift** comes from God, as long

as God's Holy Spirit is working with you within God's "**plan**" or God's "**work**" (I Corinthians 15:23). Some receive a **gift** at birth, while others may receive theirs later in **life**, upon conversion into **the truth** by God's Holy Spirit. Many, who come to Christ, do so long before they **repent** and are baptized into **the church**. They are functioning within a **life-long process** that brings them to this maximum event – often called "conversion." In short, humans cannot believe in Jesus **unless** God's "**Spirit**" reveals it to them. This is what Paul was teaching.

God starts to deal with you **from birth** even though you may not come into **the church** for many years. In some cases, God will allow you to be deceived by Satan to the point that some essentially live the life of a pagan and keep pagan holidays. In one case, Paul expelled a fornicator from **the church** and turned him over to Satan, so the fornicator's "**spirit**" could eventually be **saved** (I Corinthians 5:5). That man came to deep **repentance** and was accepted back into **the church** (II Corinthians 2:7-9). God works with every person from the time of their birth and allows each and every one to experience their **life** in the best possible way, so that it will ultimately bring each person to Christ. Once a person starts to understand Jesus Christ is their Savior and Redeemer, they are being **called** to **the church**. Paul identified the only way one can come to Jesus. It is by means of God's Holy Spirit revealing Him to them. Once God's Spirit opens your mind to Christ, then God grants you various **gifts** to serve in His **church**.

Paul declares that God gives to those in His **church**, a multitude of different "**gifts**" by the same "**spirit**" (I Corinthians 12:4). He goes on to explain how church members have different **administrations** (I Corinthians 12:5). This English translation of "administrations" is a poor one. Remember, the Greek word for "administrations" is the same Greek word that was translated into

the English as “minister.” The Greek is “diakonos,” “a minister” or “a servant” who **waits** on tables. So, who is in the ministry? It is **the entire body of Christ or the church**. Do not forget what Christ tells you. Going to a **church meeting hall or building** every week and merely giving money doesn’t illustrate **spiritual growth**.

Every church member has a **job to do in the ministry**, which is based upon the gifts that God’s Holy Spirit has given to each individual. If everyone in the ministry carries out his responsibilities in the true “**spirit**” of being a **servant**, then the entire church profits and continues to grow **spiritually** (Verse 7).

Jesus Christ is The Head of The Body and all of you are His **servants** (Ephesians 5:23). The big difference, is that Christ, as **head**, is your only Master, and everyone else becomes **His slaves or His servants**. Each and every church member is a **slave** of Christ, because He is their Master and the future Husband of **the entire church**. The Greek meaning for “servant” in this case, is “doulos” or “a slave.” This means that you will virtually become a part of Christ’s Body.

You will become Jesus’ slave in reference to **His “will.”** Christ’s “**will**” is to do The Father’s “**will**” (Matthew 5:19). Jesus only does what The Father tells Him to do. Jesus said, “**My doctrine is not mine, but his that sent me**” (John 7:16).

You must do as Christ did. When you become part of **the church**, His **will** is to have everyone serve in His “diakonos” ministry. In other words, you cannot be a church member and merely sit on the sidelines. Besides being joyful for knowing God’s **truth**, you have much more to do. You will either minister to others which will profit Christ’s “**body**” or else you will not be growing and

will instead be dying **spiritually**.

What Is The Ministry To Do?

The Bible tells you who is to be a minister. According to their **gifts**, the ministry and **the church** have a calling with a variety of responsibilities. Some should **help the poor in the church**, while others should be **hospitable, visiting the sick, helping the widows and orphans and assisting the elderly**. Still others offer **wisdom and knowledge**. The key is in the word “diakonos,” which means “a servant who benefits others” and **not themselves**. You must all offer your lives as a living sacrifice. Your only example is Christ.

Ministry Of The World

Now to those servants or ministers of Christ, who are responsible for **The Word** of God. You will find **the ministry in the church is selected exclusively by God**, just as God personally calls each church member. **No human is involved in this decision** and not any graduate from a theological school, seminary or religious college. God directly chooses the ministry of **The Word**. No one is **trained** to be a minister of **the “word,”** nor can he be one who can decide for himself to go into the true ministry of Christ, as an occupation or profession. Rather, it is **a calling**. But, from time to time, a person will state that he knows, in his heart, that God wants him to give himself to the ministry. Biblically, this is not God's **“way.”** Everyone in **the church** is a minister by the gifts God gives. It is a matter of which gifts God gives and not your heart.

Paul shows there are Elders (leaders) in **the church** who are **older men** (I Timothy 5:1). These older men (Elders) who have lived

longer and have, also, labored long in **The Word** doctrine or teaching (I Timothy 5:17). Biblically, **all elders or older leaders** (even the ones who preach and teach **The Word**) are **directly** chosen by God and are **not decided** by themselves or any other man, group of men or any organization. **Only God** chooses those servants who are responsible to be an example and to lead, to teach and to preach **The Word**.

Administrations Of The Ministry

Those servants or ministers, who teach and preach God's "**word**," fall into two basic categories. One is selected by God to help The Body of Christ, **the church**, grow to **perfection**. Biblically, **the church** is referred to as The House of God. The second group of the ministry of **The Word** helps to oversee **God's House**. But their real service is more extensive, as it, also, reaches out to other nations.

Those who oversee The House of God are known as teachers or matured Elders. As such, there are:

- 1 **Pastors** who oversee the entire local church.
- 2 **Bishops.** Then outside of this ministerial grouping.
- 3 **Evangelists** who go out into the world to serve other nations.
- 4 **Prophets** who foretell the future to all, and
- 5 **Apostles** who not only preach to the world, but can also feed the local church.

These five groups cover the entire ministry of **The Word**. God calls them in different ways and appoints each one of the ministry **personally**, at His own discretion. It is based on how each individual person has received their various “**gifts**.”

God's House

Moses was placed over God's House (Israel), in **the tabernacle**, where God (His Glory) dwelt (Hebrews 3:2-6). This was The Church in The Wilderness (Acts 7:38). Moses, along with The Elders, was faithful in God's House (Hebrews 3:5). He was the prime example upon which the following perspective is based. Paul explained that Jesus was building His Father's House.

It is a **spiritual** building. This took place after Israel had rejected God. Therefore, you must consider, “**Whose house are we?**” It is The House of Christ, just as you read, “**...whose house are we, if we hold fast...**” (Hebrews 3:6).

The temple was destroyed in 70 A.D. as a consequence of **the first** Jewish “**revolt**.” As a result, **the church** has now become The House of God. This occurred when **the church** became the dwelling place of **God** (by His Holy Spirit or God's “**glory**”).

Matthew 18:20 says, “**For where two or three are gathered together in my name...**” The meaning of the words “in my name” literally means “Christ is there.” Each and every local church (where two or three are gathered in His name) is God's House. This is **the local church**, which is also ruled by Jesus as The Head, along with The Elders (older men as leaders). This compares with The Church in The Wilderness (Israel), only now God's House is a Spiritual House (John 4:23-24). Since *The New Testament Church* is a **Spiritual House** of God, the members in it must worship God

spiritually and not by the human Works of The Law, or adopted paganism. Now, examine these **two houses** of God.

Church In The Wilderness

Moses was placed over The Church in The Wilderness (Acts 7:38). He was accompanied in this assignment by The Elders. Who are these Elders and how were they chosen? The Law required that every male who opened the womb should be **called Holy to The Lord** (Luke 2:23).

God Himself, by God's Law, designated each firstborn male to be Holy unto God. Hebrews 11:28 tells you that Moses had to sprinkle the blood (a type of Christ's sacrifice), lest he (the death angel) who destroyed Egypt's firstborn should touch them (Israel, The Church in The Wilderness). Why are **the firstborn males** so important to God?

The Law declares that the firstborn should receive a **double inheritance** from the father. This is because the firstborn is **the beginning** of the father's strength. The importance of **the firstborn** (Christ) relates to teaching about **the firstborn** with **the inheritance**. Since this person represents the father's strength, he must be responsible for the family. When the father dies, **the firstborn male** is the one designated to take care of the family, just as Christ does with God's House, The Church (Deuteronomy 21:16-17).

God said that all the firstborn of Israel (Church in The Wilderness) are **mine** – both man and beast (Numbers 8:17). When God smote the firstborn of Egypt, He Saved the firstborn of Israel to be **sanctified** for His exclusive use. When the father dies, the firstborn male becomes responsible for the family because he received the double **inheritance** of the father's strength.

So when the father dies, the firstborn male becomes an elder, which is the older one over the father's house. As such, this firstborn becomes the leader of the family.

God told Moses to pick seventy men from among the elders (older firstborn) who would be the leaders of the people with Moses (Numbers 11:16). God **directly** picked the firstborn males, so that when they had aged sufficiently, these same men took control of the family. In this way they became Israel's leaders. Those **seventy elders** were to become Moses' helpers. The New Testament Church is supposed to do the very same thing in regard to those "**ministers**" of **The Word**, who became the leaders of God's House.

College Of The Prophets

Many who claim to be ministers of **The Word** have attended schools of theology, religious colleges or seminaries and were ordained to the ministry. Is this God's system for fashioning a **minister** of **The Word**? Does God call His ministers to preach *The Gospel* by training them in an established school?

Some religious groups point to II Chronicles 34:22 as a basis for this practice. This text refers to The College of The Prophets. Hence, various people believe this is the **biblical authority** for organizing religious schools for teaching **the ministry** of **The Word**. What is **the truth**?

The word for "college" in the English language can be very misleading. The word, "college" (Strong's #4932) had many meanings besides being "a place of learning." To understand its true interpretation, you would need to examine the original Hebrew language and see how the word "college" is translated into English.

The Hebrew word is “mishna” meaning “a copy” or “a duplicate” which has nothing to do with learning or instructing future ministers. This “College of The Prophets” was referring to the fact that The Prophets of God all dwelt together in the same place. Since all of them were Prophets, they were essentially duplicates or copies of each other.

A good example would be when Elijah, The Prophet, was being replaced by Elisha, who was another Prophet. Fifty of the total number of **prophets** came from their dwelling place and said, “... **Knowest thou that the Lord will take away thy master from thy head to day**” (II Kings 2:5)? He was replaced by Elisha. All the prophets were duplicates of the total number of prophets who had been called and selected by God. They were all copies – or True Prophets of God. In like manner, God has chosen all **The Firstborn Sons** as His Own.

They are sanctified, or set apart, for a Holy Purpose by God. When the fathers died, all the firstborn males in Israel represented their families as elders, or leaders, of The Church in The Wilderness. God directly selected the firstborn male in a family to be an elder or a leader in Israel. All are copies or duplicates, just as **the prophets**. God, Himself has picked His Prophets and has done exactly the same thing with the elders who are the firstborn males.

For example, Elijah and Elisha were picked out from the rest of The Prophets. Likewise, there were seventy-two men which were destined to become elders or leaders over Israel with Moses.

The New Testament Church Ministry

When The Jews rejected Christ as The Messiah, Jesus told His

Apostles to go into all the world as a **witness** and preach *The Gospel* (Acts 1:8). However, since **the temple** remained in Jerusalem and God's **glory** was still there (until 70 A.D.), The Apostles and other circumcised Christians went to **the temple** to worship (Acts 3:1). Since The Apostle Paul was to preach *The Gospel*, first to The Jews and then to The Gentiles, as his custom was (being a Jew), he attended the local **synagogue** on The Sabbath (Acts 12:14). God's local house, the **synagogue**, was built by Moses and was ruled by The Elders, the **older firstborn** (Hebrews 3:4-5). This was exactly how God had directed Moses.

After the conference in Acts 15:5 (which discussed circumcision and the keeping of The Law by Gentiles), Paul went and revisited the local churches that he had established on his first visit (Acts 15:36). Paul told all **the churches** about the decision which had been made in Jerusalem that The Gentiles did not have to keep The Law, nor were they required to be circumcised (Acts 16:4-5). Notice who made the decision. Acts 16:4 reveals that the decision was made in Jerusalem by The Apostles and **The Elders** in **the church**. The New Testament Church had the same essential system for the care of **the churches** — just like the synagogues. The Apostles and **The Elders** (older men, firstborn) issued the Acts 15 decree (Acts 16:4).

Peter said that he was an Elder. This is not speaking about an ordained person, but all of those who were firstborn, older males in their households (I Peter 5:1). Then, Peter in Verse 5 states how the younger men, not elders, should submit themselves to the older men as their elders (who were firstborn males). The Elders led and guided The New Testament Church, just as they did with The Church in The Wilderness (Israel, Acts 7:38). God, Himself chose the firstborn males whose fathers had died and made them to be Elders (leaders) over **the church**. No one can be **ordained**

by mere men as an Elder. God, Himself, directly selects who will become a minister of The Word.

Ordination

Many Christian groups **misunderstand** the meaning of ordination. Paul told Titus to **ordain** Elders in every city in Crete (Titus 1:5). Paul wasn't telling him to ordain them **to be Elders**, but **only to ordain Elders** for the specific **positions** needed. Only elders or firstborn older male men, could be ordained to the ministry of The Word. God, by His "**word**," had already chosen those who were to be His Elders (Numbers 8:17). Ordination (laying on of the hands) is **the churches' awareness of what God decided**. Ordination does not give anyone authority over God's **church**. Only God and Christ decide who will preach **The Word** of God as a true minister or a servant. Paul and Peter said the same thing. Paul declared that a bishop or overseer must be a **married man** (I Timothy 3:1-7). **No unmarried, single person can be an Elder or a Bishop; they must be married**. Also, he must be a firstborn son whose father has died; therefore he would be an older man – probably between fifty and sixty-five (I Timothy 5:9). In Titus 1:5-9, Paul said the same thing.

These individuals must be the husband of one wife, and are the **firstborn elders** picked by God! The word "elder," "presbeuo" or "presbuteros" (Strong's # 4243 and 4245) in the Greek language means "senior" or "older person." No young, married or unmarried men should be considered for this vital responsibility. That is why Paul told Timothy, "**Let no man despise thy youth**" (I Timothy 4:12). Timothy was **not an Elder** like Peter, nor was he a teacher or bishop, but he was an **Evangelist** (Explained later). Elders, teachers or bishops are to be examples to the local churches, which is God's local "**house**." To be a leader in **the ministry**

of **The Word**, one had to be an Elder if they were to guide local churches such as Ephesus, Antioch, Smyrna, etc.

Deacons or Deaconesses, on the other hand, even though they were “diakonos,” “servants,” did not have to be an elder in the same sense. Why was this? It was because they did not have the responsibility of **teaching** or **preaching The Word**. The Apostles were very clear about this (Acts 6:2). Ministers who teach or preach **The Word** of God should have nothing else to do in The Church, but **pray** and **preach The Word**. Ministers who preach, such as Apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Pastors (Bishops), Teachers or Elders, should **not have any** responsibility for handling or being in charge over the money. Furthermore, one of their requirements is to not desire **filthy lucre**.

Who picks the deacons? It was not done by The Apostles or ministers of **The Word**. The **entire local church** selected the deacon or deaconess (Acts 6:3). Once **the whole church** appointed those who were to be responsible for the money and other physical things, The Apostles and Elders laid their hands upon them. This act showed God approved the choice, according to the standards, which The Apostles gave (Acts 6:3).

To recapitulate, every one of the leaders, or guides, over a **local church** who preached God's Word had to be selected by God directly. These were only **the firstborn males** whose fathers had died. They were The Elders over their own house and family. This meant they were Overseers (Bishops) of their own houses. They were responsible to take care of their own family (Acts 20:17, 28). If these firstborn elders had **the gift** to teach, they were chosen as the teachers who preached in **the church**. Then, according to the standards laid down by Paul and The Apostles (I Timothy 3:1-7), out of all these Elders, a pastor (Head bishop) was selected over

that **local church**.

God personally chooses The Evangelists, Prophets and Apostles, who are to go to the rest of the world. How does God personally select these who are to preach *The Gospel* (God's "**word**") outside of **the local churches**? Does going to a seminary, a school of theology or a religious Christian school prepare you for **The Ministry of The Word**? Can a **Minister of The Word** be trained? **The biblical answer** is "**no**" and it can be proved **scripturally**. In fact, an **institutionally-trained minister of The Word** usually **denies** God is The One (through His Son, Jesus), who actually chooses each and every one who teaches *The Gospel*.

One does not become trained to be an Elder in **the church**, but rather they are chosen at birth and sanctified by God for a holy **purpose**, which is to become "ministers" of The Word in their local **church**. God, by His Son Jesus, directly chooses these Elders at birth. No training or preparation is required. How are The Evangelists, Prophets and Apostles trained for **the ministry of The Word**? Do they, also, go to school for preparation? **Absolutely not! Scripturally**, they can **only be chosen by God** even more meticulously than **the local church Elders**.

How does God choose **The Apostles, Prophets, Evangelists, Pastors** (Bishop-overseer), **Teachers and Elders**? There are **specific** conditions for the selection of each office of responsibility, with **God-given gifts** (talents) for their exact duties. Without these gifts, one cannot be in **the ministry of The Word**.

Gifts Of God

Let's begin by laying the groundwork. You have already seen that **everyone** in The Body of Christ (**the church**) is a part of

the ministry. The ministry, being a “diakonos” or “servant,” has a specific duty in **the church** to give some form of benefit to The Entire Body of Christ (**the church**). On the other hand, The Evangelists go to the unbelievers and to all the other nations of the world. The Prophets and Apostles may or may not go outside their immediate areas.

Each and every administration or ministry is directly given specific **gifts** or **talents** that will help fulfill their respective responsibilities in **the church**. **No official training** is required! God, through His Son, chooses the ministry and then, each and every member performs according to **the gifts** God has given them. No training or preparation is needed. God's Holy Spirit is granted to each minister to know what to do. The **gifts** that God gives to each ministry guarantees its success. God never fails.

If a Christian is blessed with wealth and is prosperous, that **gift** of **prosperity** places the obligation on that person to help more than other members, by giving to the poor in **the church**. That is the reason why the wealthy were selling their goods when **the church** started (Acts 3 to 6). The primary reason was to help the poor. Consequently, *The Book of Acts* declares how there was no one who had immediate needs in **the early church**. Everyone had sufficient provisions. If one family had any lack, another member saw that they had sufficient.

There should be no one in God's **house** or **church**, without the basic necessities like food, shelter or clothing. This is the primary **spiritual lesson** taught during **the early church period** (Acts 4:34). Today, those with **the gift** of **prosperity** from God are in the ministry to help God's people who are poor and have needs. Those who are given **the gift of hospitality** bear the responsibility of providing **the church** membership with a sense of belonging,

as with a large family. That is their ministry. Those who are given **wisdom** can encourage others to follow **the right paths of living**. Those who are possessed with **knowledge** can teach in various departments of information or perhaps write “**how-to**” books. Everyone has a ministry as servants (“*diakonos*”) which specifically benefit others in The Entire Body of Christ. Then there are others who have gifts of **Prayer, Healing, Miracles, Tongues, Prophecy**, etc. Each **gift** is given to each member to perform their particular service in their own ministry, which requires no official training. God personally gave these **gifts** to each member to benefit all the others in The House of God. Now, examine the difference between **the local church** ministries which are led by **The Firstborn Elders** and those preachers who proclaim *The Gospel* to the rest of the world as Evangelists, Prophets and Apostles.

The Two Gospel Ministries

The local church ministers of *The Gospels* who are Pastors (Bishops), Teachers (scribes) and Elders only perform **the gifts** that God has given them in their **local church area**. They are **not assigned** and/or **transferred** at the whim of a hierarchy, as can occur with some Christian churches. A minister does not have a rank over other ministers. Each ministry must be ready to help anyone in **the church** whenever there is a need.

Paul said “**Obey them that have the rule over you, and submit yourselves...**” (Hebrews 13:17). Why is this? **It is not because they have authority over anyone**, but because “**...they watch for your souls [lives], as they that must give account...**” (Hebrews 13:17). It is a matter of love and concern and **not a rank**. The English word for “rule” is a poor translation. The Greek word “*peinao*” means “to have confidence in” or “trust.” You obey by listening to them, **not because they have authority over you, but**

because you have confidence and trust them to know they will teach you how to grow spiritually.

The Apostle Peter **clearly** said that no one should be lords (masters) over God's heritage, but are to be an **(EXAMPLE)** to **the flock** (I Peter 5:3). Every ministry (**every church member**) should be an example to all the others in **the church**, according to **the gifts** that God has given. This is what God intends. Whether this concerns a newly baptized church member or an Apostle, **all are to minister as servants** and then by example, they are to help each and every other **church member**.

Apostles

Who is **The Head Apostle**? Is it Peter or James? To understand who **the head apostle** might be, one must understand the definition of an Apostle. The Greek word "apostolos" (Strong's #652) merely means "he that is sent," "a delegate" or an "ambassador." An ambassador represents **the one** who has sent him. Wherever the ambassador goes, he acts in the place of **the one** who sent him. He is a **witness** of **the one** who sent him. The ambassador is to be like **the one** the ambassador represents.

The only True Apostle must be sent by God Himself or His Son Jesus. Only these individuals have the proper authority. A group of humans gathered together and voting to make a choice in picking an Apostle is not **biblical**. Sometimes the founder of an established religious group is viewed as an Apostle. But this type of thinking is **not biblical**. What this does is to impose human convention upon a **biblical** concept. **Humans cannot** determine or be involved in, the selection of an Apostle, no matter how sincere the participating individuals may be. The Apostle Peter knew the original Apostles couldn't decide upon a replacement for Judas

Iscariot. When the eleven gathered together to replace Judas, it came down to two men who could **witness** Christ's **life** and **resurrection**. But they **refused** to **make** a **human-based decision** between Joseph and Matthias. Both men were **perfect witnesses** of all that occurred in Christ's human existence, including seeing The Resurrected Jesus. But The Apostles knew that only God, The Father or The Glorified Jesus, could make that decision.

Therefore, The Apostles prayed to God, and asked Him to make the choice between these two. They asked God to select the one who had "**the right**" **heart**. Then, they cast lots. This was **not a vote**! Casting lots may have been done by putting the two names in a jar, and then shaking the jar. The **first** name to come out of the jar was **the chosen apostle**, whichever way this casting of lots was done. Matthias was the one who was chosen by God directly through this means. No humans made that decision – only God, Himself (Acts 1:24-26). Paul was an Apostle out of season. Why? Because he was not present to **witness** Christ's **life** as a human. However, to be an Apostle, Jesus still had to personally select Paul, with no human involvement. Read all of Acts 9 to see Paul was personally chosen by Christ by means of a vision from Jesus Christ, Himself.

The Head Apostle

This may come as a surprise to some, but there was no **head apostle** among The Twelve Apostles. No one was in charge over the others. That was forbidden by Christ, as reported during His **earthly ministry** (Matthew 20:25-26). On many occasions, Peter would rise first to speak. This has caused some to believe that Peter was **the head apostle**. **Not so**. Jesus said to Peter that He, Christ, The Rock, would build His **church** upon Peter. But Peter (Greek: "Petros") was only the "pebble" or "small rock" and not the great

“crag” or “cliff” of the ROCK (Greek: Petra) that is specified in Matthew 16:18 (Christ is The Rock). Furthermore, Peter was the one who had the **keys** to God’s **kingdom** (Matthew 16:18-19). But Jesus never said that Peter would be **the head apostle**. Remember, it is forbidden by Christ, Himself. No one can be **the head** except Jesus (Ephesians 5:23 and Colossians 1:18, 2:10). Peter, as **the doorman**, could only open the door with **the keys** to **the kingdom**.

Some believed that James, Christ’s brother, was **the head apostle** when he spoke in Jerusalem (Acts 15). Not so. James spoke in Jerusalem because, after Christ’s death he received **the firstborn inheritance** and became The Overseer or Bishop of Jerusalem. He spoke out and gave **The Apostles** and **Elders** his agreement that The Gentiles did not need to be circumcised or keep The Law. He was now The Bishop of The Church in Jerusalem. So who is **the head apostle**? Only Jesus can serve in that role **as the one sent** directly from God. He is The Head Apostle. That is exactly what The Apostle Paul said, “...**consider the Apostle and High Priest of our profession, Christ Jesus...**” (Hebrews 3:1). So Jesus is The First and only Head Apostle or First One (Firstborn Son) to be sent directly from God. Notice John 3:34, where John, The Baptist said, “**For whom God hath sent speaketh the words of God...**” The words “hath sent” are translated from the Greek word “apostolos.” Jesus was an Apostle sent directly from The Father. These words are specifically designated by God to point to The Head Apostle, Jesus, as a **witness** of God’s **kingdom**.

“Works” Explained

Just before Jesus was taken to be crucified, Philip asked Him a question. Christ responded, “How long have you known me, Philip?” (John 14:9 [paraphrased]). In John 14:8-9, Jesus con-

tinued to say to Philip, “**He that hath seen me hath seen The Father.**” He said, “**Look at my life, Philip. I have lived every scripture prophesied about Me in *The Bible*.**” Then Jesus said, “**The Father is in Me and I am in My Father. The Words I speak come from The Father and My Father does The Works**” (John 14:9-10 [paraphrased]).

Then, in Verse 11, Christ essentially said, “You can know I am sent (An Apostle) by My Father by “**the works**” that I do” (paraphrased). **The works** that Jesus performed give proof that Christ was sent from God. What are “**the works**?” You must consider, **the fulfilled prophecies, miracles, healings, resurrections, feedings, promises, true teachings**, etc. Then Jesus told The Apostles in Verse 12, “that they, The Apostles, would do even **greater “works**” than He, Himself.” Jesus very plainly states the qualifications for being an Apostle. This includes Christ, Himself as Head Apostle. To be an Apostle, one has to be sent directly from God by His Son in person or today it would be through a vision from Christ – as well as doing “**the works**” that Jesus did.

Notice that Paul stated the same thing. The Apostle Paul said, “**Truly the signs of an apostle were wrought among you in all patience, in signs, and wonders, and mighty deeds [works]**” (II Corinthians 12:12). Christ also said that The Apostles would do even **greater works** than He did. *The Book of Acts* reports that merely the passing of the **shadow of Peter** over the sick was responsible for their healing (Acts 5:15). With Paul being an Apostle, he sent out **aprons** or **handkerchiefs** from his body and the sick were healed miraculously (Acts 19:12).

Your *Bible* tells you that **no human** can be an **Apostle** unless **Christ Himself**, in vision, tells someone they are to be an Apostle (One sent by God). Also, your *Bible* reveals that an Apostle must

perform miracles, healings and wonders, just like Christ. This would be a sign (proof) that he is an Apostle from God. In **no other way** can one claim to be a True Apostle of God.

Prophets

A Prophet's "office" (commissioned by God) is to preach **The Word** (Ephesians 4:11). Who can be a Prophet? Immediately, you might think this is a person who can foretell the future. However, there are actually **two** types of Prophets. One category would be someone who holds an **office**, like The Prophet, Agabus. Agabus was from The Jerusalem Church and was a Prophet of God.

When he was visiting in Antioch, he stood up and foretold how there would be a great **dearth** (drought) in the world during the reign of Claudius Caesar (Acts 11:28 and Acts 21:10). Agabus occupied **The Office of a Prophet** because he **foretold the future**.

How would "**one**" know if he is a True Prophet of God? *The Scripture* clearly states in Deuteronomy 18:15-22, that if a Prophet foretells the future **accurately and in all stated detail** as he prophesied, **then that person is a True Prophet of God**. If only a tiny part of what The Prophet stated is not true, that prophet is **not** a Prophet of God – he is a **false prophet**. Consequently, there should be no problem in discerning a True Prophet of God. **This is one type of Prophet**. What is the second type of Prophet?

Gift Of Prophecy

The Gift of Prophecy is different from **The Office of a Prophet**. One who occupies **The Office of a Prophet foretells the future**. In fact, a woman can hold **The Office of a Prophetess** just like **Anna** in Luke 2:36. But a woman cannot be a Pastor (Bishop) of

a local church. Also, she cannot be a **teacher** (scribe) or an **Elder**. All those responsibilities belong to a firstborn male (whose father died) who is an Elder over The Household of God. The Law of God (*Torah*) states that a woman cannot be an overseer over a man (Genesis 3:15 and Ephesians 5:23). That is why Paul said the women should keep silence in **the church** (I Corinthians 14:34). Women cannot be preachers or ministers of **The Word**.

In addition to a woman being a **Prophetess**, she can, also, be a **Deaconess**. The office of a Deacon has the responsibility for the **physical duties** in The House of God (**local church**). As long as a woman is not rendering **judgment** over a man, she can be a servant with the designation of Deaconess (“diakonos”) – or she could minister as a Prophetess (I Corinthians 14:34). All other ministerial offices must be held by a **male**.

Why? The Law of Inheritance is passed on as overseer of the house only to firstborn males. It has nothing to do with intelligence or superiority of a male over a female. Did you know that every **church member** has the potential to prophesy? In reference to **spiritual gifts**, Paul said that he wished every **church member** could prophesy (I Corinthians 14:1). In Verses 23-24, Paul declared when the entire **church** came together and every **member prophesied** – this would be good for the entire **church**. But, just what did Paul mean?

The word “prophecy” in the Greek is “propheteuo” (Strong’s #4395) which has two meanings. One particular **office** of a Prophet “**is one who can foretell events or the future.**” The second meaning “**is to speak under divine inspiration, or to discern God’s “will” or “word” (“logos”).** The **office** of a Prophet **foretells the future, but having God reveal His Divine “word” is a “gift” and not an office.**

One who studies God's "**word**" and understands its mysteries, has the potential for The Gift of Prophecy. Those who have an understanding that is revealed from God about His "**word**" should speak in **the church** and then **the church** should make a judgment like The Bereans did in Acts 17:11 to see if it was, indeed, **the truth** of *The Bible*. If it is **biblically true**, then that man is an **inspired Preacher of God** and has The Gift of Prophecy.

Evangelist

What is an Evangelist? To understand how God chooses an Evangelist, you need to check what the word means. The Greek word for "evangelist" is "evangelistes" which means "A Preacher of *The Gospel*" (Strong's #2099). What is *The Gospel*? In Strong's Concordance, the Greek word "**gospel**" is "**the word**" (#2098) meaning "an announcement of Good News." An Evangelist does this very thing.

Who Is Responsible?

Who has **God made responsible for preaching The Good News or Gospel**? Amazingly, God states clearly in Genesis 1:26, "**And God said, Let us make man in our image...**" The image means to be like God. But, to whom is God speaking? This is an age-old question. Many believe that God, The Father, is talking to Jesus as **The Word** ("**logos**") who is a second deity with God. Is this concept true or do *The Scriptures* clearly reveal **the real truth** about this verse? Notice that Hebrews 2:6-7 reveals humanity was made a little **lower** than the angels. How can this be? Angels are **spirit**, while all mankind is subject to death. What job does an angel have? Hebrews 1:14 plainly tells you the job of an angel. It is to be "a minister" ("**diakonos**") who helps you and the rest of humanity to become Sons of God.

Now, **the biblical** evidence is presented. Paul quoted Psalm 8:4-5 where angels are made a little higher than man. The Hebrew for “angel” in Strong’s Concordance is “elohim” (#430). This is the exact same word translated as “God” (“Elohim”) in Genesis 1:26. Clearly, God, in Genesis 1:26, is talking to **the angels (created Sons of God, but not begotten)**. The **twenty-four elders** in *The Book of Revelation*, who are positioned before God’s **throne**, are the first created angelic beings and therefore, are Elders, just as The Elders in a local church are The Firstborn Sons. All are “mishna” (duplicates or copies) presented in the earlier explanation about “The College of The Prophets.”

In the text of Genesis 1:26, God was sitting on His **throne** and speaking to the created Sons of God and The Elders (first-created), who look like God (**male spirit beings**). Consequently, God stated that they would help make man **in their image**. This is very logical (logos). It is clear and simple. There are not two Gods or three Gods, but only The One True God. **The angels are responsible for preaching *The Gospel* to the world**. The angels are God’s ministers (“diakonos”) and are messengers who preach God’s Good News (*Gospel*). That is why an angel is the one responsible to complete the job of preaching *The Gospel* to **the world** (Revelation 14:6). Angels are responsible as ministers (“diakonos”) to make man into Elohim’s (universal) image. What does all this have to do with the ministerial office of an Evangelist? It has everything to do with the work of an Evangelist. *The Scriptures* will prove how God appoints an Evangelist.

In Acts 6:5, Philip was one of the seven deacons chosen by The Church. Then in Acts 21:8, all of a sudden Philip goes from being a Deacon in **the church** to an Evangelist. How did this happen? In Acts 8:26-40, Philip, The Deacon, is approached by an **angel** and is told to go and preach to The Ethiopian Eunuch, Queen

Candice's treasurer. The Ethiopian was reading in Isaiah about Christ. Philip asked, "Do you know what you are reading?" The Ethiopian replied, "How can I understand unless a man teach me." From this point on, Philip became an Evangelist. He was taking on the ministerial ("diakonos") **duty of an angel to preach *The Gospel* to **the world****. How plain! But how did Philip know he was now an Evangelist?

The "**angel**" told him. A person becomes an Evangelist when an angel tells him. That is why **the office** is called an Evangelist. No human group, ministry or any individual can decide or ordain an Evangelist. An angel must reveal it and there is no human involvement! Notice the instance of The Apostle Paul and Timothy. In I Timothy 4:14, Paul said to Timothy, "**Neglect not the gift that is in thee, which was given thee by prophecy, with the laying on of the hands of the presbytery [elders].**"

A prophecy stated that Timothy would be an Evangelist (led by **an angel**). It was not Paul, but The Elders who laid their hands on Timothy (ordained him), just as God had revealed it by prophecy. Paul told Timothy not to let **the church** despise his youth. Timothy was not an Elder like Peter. That is why Paul had to tell Timothy to do **the work** of an Evangelist (II Timothy 4:5). No person in God's ministry is ever picked, chosen, ordained or trained to be a minister. Only God chooses. Simple and clear.

Summary

Head of The Church:

- 1 Head Apostle is Jesus Christ (sent from God to do "**works**").

- 2 Apostles (chosen by Christ and “**works**” follow).
- 3 Prophets (foretold the future and inspired preachers of **The Word**).
- 4 Evangelists (directly led by angels and prophecy).
- 5 Pastors (Bishops) are picked by the presbytery (Elders) according to **biblical qualifications**.
- 6 Teachers (Elders, scribes) who are **mighty** in *The Scriptures*.
- 7 Elders (firstborn sons who oversee not only their own family but **the church**).

The listing above forms **the group** who make up **the ministry of the word** (“logos”). All are directly picked by God and trained by **the gifts** given to each by God’s Holy Spirit. Remember, the entire “ecclesia,” or “House of God,” is in “**the ministry**” (diokonos) as God’s servants according to the “**gifts**” God gives by His Holy Spirit. No human involvement can take place, because all have partaken of The Tree of The Knowledge of Good and Evil. Looking to a ministry that is chosen by humans always leaves much doubt. When God reveals His ministry, there is no doubt how everyone is chosen!

CHAPTER 7

FINANCING GOD'S WORK

How does God intend to finance His “work?” How can you be sure you are giving money for God’s very “work?” You will be amazed to learn that sending money to organizations for radio, T.V. and publishing – doesn’t do The Work of God. Providing salaries, cars, houses, etc, doesn’t fulfill the financing of God’s “work” nor is it the way Christians should carry out The Work of God.

Tithing

Some people believe a Christian should give one-tenth or a tithe of their income to **the church ministry** to do God’s “work.” Is this a correct practice?

To understand tithing, one has to know its very **purpose**. You need to begin to learn the story from the **very beginning**. Giving one tenth of one’s income, has a very clear and direct purpose. As a Law, tithing did not begin as one of God’s requirements – it literally began about 430 years **after** Abraham (Galatians 3:17).

Abraham’s Tithes

The practice of tithing begins with *The Bible* account of Abraham giving tithes to Melchizedek (Genesis 14:20). It was never required by God for Abraham to tithe. Rather, Abraham on his own volition, decided to give a tithe to Melchizedek. Why did Abra-

ham do this? He gave this 10% to Melchizedek **as a witness** that Abraham was looking to God alone, for any prosperity that would accrue to him. Remember, Abraham took nothing for himself from the spoils that were obtained from the battle with the five kings (Genesis 14:18-24). The tithes were given to Melchizedek after Abraham's military force had defeated the combined armies of the enemy. This tithe given by Abraham was not from any of Abraham's labor but spoils of war. This initial account of paying tithes set a standard that was followed later by Abraham's grandson, Jacob.

The Tithe Of Jacob

Examine the story about Jacob's tithe. In this second *Bible* account featuring tithing, you find that, just like with his grandfather Abraham – Jacob **offered** a tithe to God. He did this in the same perspective as his grandfather before him had done. Jacob may have even learned this practice from his grandfather Abraham or his father Isaac. However, these details are not given.

Jacob was asking God for protection from his enemies, in addition to looking to God for his **prosperity**. Therefore, it is only logical to perceive how each of these two great patriarchs felt inspired to perform this act of giving to God.

It was **not** an act of **indebtedness** – but rather one of **gratitude**. Doesn't that seem clear to your understanding? Both were an act of **faith**. Neither Abraham nor Jacob had, as yet, received their **inheritance**. At this point, it is absolutely essential to focus sharply upon a major issue concerning this **precedent** or this **act of tithing**.

It should be stated in no uncertain terms, that **in neither case, did**

either action have anything to do with **tithing as a Law** (Genesis 28:20-22). It is time to be dogmatic on that point.

Voluntary Action

If these two representative acts of tithing were not done because of a specific Law, then it was only done as a favor and in **the spirit** of service – toward The Most High God. In the situation posed here by Abraham with Melchizedek, this mystical figure was none other than, **“the priest of the most high God”** (Genesis 14:18). Both Abraham and Jacob **initiated this action by their own free will**. It shows how **they looked to God for protection and prosperity** until they will be in God’s **rest or inheritance**. It was an act of **faith**.

To be absolutely sure you are getting the straight scoop, be sure to read carefully the context of both Genesis 14 and Genesis 28. This is a very important matter. It concerns you and your own finances. Therefore, when you examine these two stories about Abraham and Jacob, you will see that in each case, the act of giving tithes was done on a **free-will basis** to show their **faith**. It was done **voluntarily**. This is because, in both cases, these ancient patriarchs only looked to God for their needs. The kindness was performed as part of a larger concept that involved prosperity along with protection from one’s enemies. A Law was not required. In their hearts, these two patriarchs trusted God to provide for everything in their lives. In short, this act of generosity of giving 10% was prompted by each man’s faith in God. It was not a Law – period!

Preaching Ministry

Some people believe they should tithe to **The Preaching Minis-**

try because Abraham tithed to Melchizedek. They take this from *The Old Testament* and try to put it into *The New Testament* by adding a bit of coercion and then **mix** both of them together. **This is a recipe for disaster.** You may think that is a stretch. But it is part of a line of reasoning that has been used to bring about a belief in a hypothetical so-called *New Testament* “**tithing system.**” What else would it be called? No matter what anyone might wish to call it, it is in complete **error.** Yet, some seem to believe in such a notion. But it is only an illusion as subsequent facts will soon show. Various elements of this overall problem will be covered in more detail throughout this book.

The Levites

There is another aspect that must be considered. Connected with this overall belief that tithing is a Law for you today is the notion that tithing is **based on the tithes given to The Priesthood of Israel.** But the matter of Abraham and Jacob’s tithing **was long before** any tithes were paid to God’s Priesthood serving in **the temple**, i.e., The Levites. When you read the context of the two accounts about: (1) Abraham and Jacob and (2) The Levites, you see that each situation has **nothing to do with tithing** – as a system or a requirement (Hebrews 7:5-12). In Chapter 7 of *Hebrews*, the subject concerns **the spiritual development** of an individual to the point of becoming **perfect.**

It is not about tithing. The tithing system for **the temple** was only used as a point of illustration – and was not laid down as a doctrinal requirement. But often, these texts are not explained in this way. Hence a false meaning has been derived from these statements in Hebrews 7. Tithing was mentioned in Hebrews 7 to illustrate that the story about Melchizedek came well in advance of the much later history concerning The Aaronic Priesthood. There

is absolutely **no other** reference to support the notion of giving tithes to **the preaching ministry** in *The New Testament*.

Law Of Tithing

Once God gave The Law to Moses, He also gave the conditions for tithing. Without these overall conditions having been established for ancient Israel, no tithes were given – or received. Also, one must realize that in *The New Testament period*, no one was required to give tithes to anyone in the ministry. Why? Because no tithing system had been set into place – as in *Old Testament* times. In short, *The New Testament* never introduced a tithing system to replace the tithes given to The Temple Priesthood.

There is another aspect that must be considered. James declared that if anyone were to offend by breaking just one part of The Law, then they would become guilty of breaking all of The Law (James 2:10). This instruction is significant. In other words, if you decide to tithe, then you must tithe by keeping all the required conditions for tithing. This is *The Old Testament* system. There is no system revealed in *The New Testament*.

In Matthew 23:2-3, Christ said, the scribes and Pharisees sit in **Moses' seat**: All therefore, they bid you to do and observe, do; but not as they (the scribes and Pharisees) do. That is what James said. You had to keep the whole law and not miss one point. Christ said in Matthew 23:23, one must only tithe to The Levites. Remember, The Pharisees sat in Moses' seat.

The Pharisees would tithe and fast, but they didn't keep the weightier matters – **faith, mercy and justice**. If you keep part of The Law, you must keep every single bit. Jesus said you must tithe to **The Levites only**, not to ministers, believe it or not!

What James means by his statement in James 2:10 is that a person would only be keeping **part** of The Law by tithing today. He would not be able to keep **The Whole Law**. Therefore, by breaking just **one point** of The Law (that is required by tithing) makes a person a **sinner**, a transgressor of The Law.

When considering this important aspect, you would think that everyone would want to know the full story. Consequently, for those who decide they want to tithe, you must ask this critical question, “What are the **conditions in The Law** that you must fulfill – so that you can tithe?” The answer follows:

Five Absolute Conditions – For Giving Tithes

- 1 Only Levites are to be given tithes (Numbers 18:24). That is why Jesus said in Matthew 23 that The Pharisees sat in Moses seat or “**administration**” and The Jews were to do all they said, even tithe. Christ said, “**tithes were to be paid only to The Levites.**” That is what Moses “**seat**” or “**administration**” demands. Jesus knew only Levites could take tithes.
- 2 To receive tithes, Levites cannot have any “**inheritance**” in the land (Numbers 18:24).
- 3 The tithe is given to Levi as a reward for service in “**the tabernacle**” (Numbers 18:31).
- 4 Tithes had to be brought to the location where God’s name was placed. The tithes had to be eaten there. God was only present in “**the tabernacle,**” and later at “**the temple**” in Jerusalem (Deuteronomy 12:17-18).

- 5 Tithes had to be from “**the promised land**” only, as it all belongs to God (Leviticus 27:30).

This is no small matter. These are the demands of The Law for a person who wishes to tithe. Do you believe God’s Law? If a person believes they are to tithe to the ministry, then all of the above conditions must be met.

But don’t you find it a bit curious that *The New Testament* has absolutely nothing to say about these conditions? Why is this? It is because tithing was not required in *New Testament* times. Tithes can only be given when **a temple** exists and given only to The Levites. The Apostles, as Jews, with **the temple** there, gave tithes to The Levites. The Apostles, as Jews, with **the temple**, kept The Law (Acts 21:24). Shocking, isn’t it? Yet, whole church-funding programs today are based on tithing. People are urged to tithe. But, on what basis? If these tithing instructions are not followed, then no matter how sincere a person may be – in the very act of tithing – they would be breaking God’s Law – **and would be considered as a transgressor**. This is because a person is not fulfilling the **whole** Law. In this case, it is the whole Law about tithing.

Down Payment

Consider this! All Christians, including **the ministry**, have received an earnest of their **inheritance** (Ephesians 1:11). It is a down payment. It means that God has given you His Holy Spirit – which is, “...**Christ in you, the hope of glory**...” (Colossians 1:27). This is **the first gift** of God’s Holy Spirit that is given to a person. It is given in advance of the full installment of The Holy Spirit, later, at **the resurrection**. With this down payment, God dwells “**in you**,” and you have entered God’s Sabbath **rest** and

have received the **earnest of your inheritance**.

You now **rest** in Christ (Hebrews 4:10). The Sabbath is a **sign** of God's people. You, as **the church**, have entered that **rest** – that Sabbath – and **Christ's life, His Body**, is manifested "**in you**." Concerning this **promised rest**, this is the intent of Jesus' message, when he said, "**Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest ...learn of me... and ye shall find rest unto your souls**" (Matthew 11:28-29).

Now you can live as Christ lived when He was on this earth. You are His **witnesses** (God "**in you**") by His Holy Spirit. In this process you will find that, "**...My yoke is easy, and My burden is light**" (Verse 30). This is Christ's **rest**. What do these things mean? In part, it shows there is no burden of a **tithing** requirement. Furthermore, there is no **biblical** basis for any sense of obligation to tithe to any particular ministry. Why is this? It is because the ministry has received The Holy Spirit as their **inheritance** along with all other Christians. This disqualifies the ministry from receiving tithes. Tithes are not **the inheritance of the ministry**. Erase that thought from your mind. Rather, the ministry has the down payment of **the inheritance** they will receive along with all others. The fullness of the **inheritance** for everyone will come later at **the resurrection**.

In retrospect, you can now see more clearly why Abraham and Jacob gave tithes voluntarily – because none **had entered God's rest or promise** (Hebrews 11:13). Also, the entire **church** is **The Priesthood** and not merely the ordained ministry (I Peter 2:9).

So who would pay tithes to whom? Would **the church people** just pass them back and forth to each other – since all are part of the ministry? This is absurd. This type of conduct would cer-

tainly not be anything close to fulfilling The Law according to the five basic requirements for giving tithes.

Consider this factor: When The Law was changed from The Levitical to The Melchizedek Priesthood (Hebrews 7:12), tithing was no longer required, because under Christ, tithing didn't meet the conditions of The Law. It is obvious, on a **Scriptural** basis, that a person cannot tithe to *The New Testament* "**ministry.**" This is because The Law under Melchizedek had changed. The Law became a **spiritual matter** and not The Letter of The Law (The Written Law), which kills (II Corinthians 3:3,6). So how does God finance His "**work**" today? Through the simplicity of *The Scriptures*, you will be amazed. You will find that tithing is not necessary, nor are offerings required for T.V., radio, publishing, etc. This is not a stated requirement. **Neither is money required to furnish cars, houses, administration buildings, colleges, jet aircraft and the like.** This is because none of these things are a part of God's "**work.**" **Remember this – and please don't forget it – God's "work" is to believe on Him who God has sent (John 6:29). Nothing else is God's "work."** This was explained in Chapter 1.

Disciples Of Christ

The **principle of giving** to God's "**work**" is a very basic Christian tradition. It is, also, a prevalent condition. To be a **Christian**, Jesus summed up the matter in one simple statement. Christ said, "**By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another**" (John 13:35). This is a very simple reality that has been stated by your Savior. How can you recognize a **true disciple today?** You **can identify a Christian only** if they have **love** for one another. There is no other requirement. Prove this saying of Christ's. See if this is the actual basis for how *The*

Bible proves that God finances His “**work.**”

History Of New Testament Giving

The birth of *The New Testament* Church on The Day of Pentecost, with over three thousand newly baptized members, gave the full evidence of Christ's Disciples. It was performed in a simple act. They gave all that they had (Acts 2:41-45). This degree of giving, by the **church membership**, was a proof that these people were The Disciples of Christ. You will find how this **giving of money** was based on their love for one another.

But there is more. The rich man asked Christ what he must do to obtain **eternal life**. The story is found in Matthew 19:16-21. Jesus answered the rich man, and said, “**...if you wilt enter into life, keep the commandments...**” (Matthew 19:17). The rich man said that he had done this. Now what? Jesus then told him, “**...If thou wilt be perfect, go and sell that thou hast, and give to the poor, and thou shalt have treasure in heaven...**” (Verse 21). Again, this is Christ's **principle** in loving each other by never forgetting to help the poor.

There is still more. Christ mentions the widow who threw just two mites into the treasury. He said that she gave more than anyone else. She gave all that she had (Mark 12:42-44). **Tithing** – or giving **offerings** to God – **isn't enough!** As Disciples of Christ – as Christians – you must be willing to give **all** that you have – **but only to those in need**. This is God's “**way**” of financing His “**work.**” It is bankrolled by “**love.**” You are called upon to give all that you have, but only for the needy – and this includes the **needy** who are the **preaching ministry**. The start of *The New Testament* Church had no needy or poor in **the church; they were taken care of because of Christian love** (Acts 4:34). This was

due to the love that The New Christian Church had manifested – by giving all they had so the needy could receive help. A **true Christian** church should have **no one in need**.

Deacons Only

Are you ready for another surprise? The **early church** was structured in accordance with a basic requirement of the ministry (I Peter 5:2). When the widows in **the new church** were neglected, The Apostles organized a system whereby **the preaching ministry was not allowed to handle money**. The preaching ministry was to have nothing to do with money in **the church**. This concerned all aspects, such as requesting it, tabulating it, recording it, spending it, etc.

That is why Deacons were instituted. This one office establishes a basic balance of powers. Teaching ability is a power of the ministry, and controlling finances is, also, a power of The Deacons. Therefore, this situation poses a balance of power – which is an underlying safeguard for **the church**. With human nature being what it is, it is helpful to have this balance set into place. **The Twelve Apostles** stated that it **was not right** for the **preaching ministry** to have involvement with money. That takes them away from their true profession. The ministry is required to pray and preach **The Word** only (Acts 6:1-4). They are not even allowed to participate in choosing those who handle the money.

It was **the church** – and **not** the ministry – that picked the seven deacons who would be in charge of handling the money for **church** needs. Then, The Apostles confirmed the choice made by **the church** (Acts 6:6).

The preaching ministry should not write about, preach about, ask

for – and especially, they should never plead for – money **at any time**. As you will see, the laborer is worthy of his hire only when the minister's personal employment (outside job) is not sufficient to supply his daily ministerial needs. Obviously, expenses are incurred while performing ministerial service. So, there is a way for this to be handled. It is both **scriptural** and **logical**, as well.

First, address a basic principle. Only the local **churches** handle the money donated for "**church needs**." Only The Deacons, **who are known to be competent**, are allowed to be in charge of "**church funds**." Paul told Timothy that, "**...the love of money is the root of all evil...**" (I Timothy 6:10). In this context, Paul explained that ministers should not handle or be in charge of money – because it is "**corrupting**." Paul said that when he brought an offering to help the needy in Jerusalem, this offering should be accompanied by some of the most trustworthy people. Paul said to send **witnesses** along with the money, so that no one could accuse Paul of wrongdoing (I Corinthians 16:1-3).

I Corinthians 16:1-4 has nothing to do with tithing. This was a **collection** to help others and not an **offering** for "**the work**." This collection was taken up out of love for those needy brethren in Jerusalem. This collection was designed to offset the suffering in Jerusalem because of a famine. It did not contain tithes or offerings for "**the work**." Besides Hebrews 7, which discusses the process of perfection and not tithing, there are **no other scriptures** in **the entire New Testament** that refer to tithing – except in *The Gospels*. But those two texts (Matthew 23:23 and Luke 11:42) concern the people who were living under the old system that imposed the five requirements listed earlier. Remember, in Matthew 23, Jesus said one tithes only to Levites as Moses directed. This is another subject. It does not apply to *The New Testament* "**church**." As you will see, **all** giving of money by **the**

church (even to the ministry) is based upon **needs** only.

Giving For Church Needs

Paul gives you one of the clearest explanations of financing God's "work" (by needs) in *The Bible*. Paul details clearly what The Church of God is financially responsible to provide. Read I Timothy 5 as it describes what the head of a household should give to care for his family and what **the local church** is responsible to do. Paul leaves no doubt and there is not one word about tithing. In fact, even the ministry is included as those who give.

Worse Than An Infidel

The main subject of I Timothy 5 is "**church financial responsibilities**" versus the financial obligation of the head of a household. The heads of the households were Elders (firstborn sons) whose fathers had died and who had received **the family inheritance**. These Elders (older men) were, also, **the church** Elders, or leaders, just as in **the synagogues**. Paul tells Timothy (I Timothy 5:8) that if any person would refuse to work and provide for their household, they were worse than an infidel. In fact, Paul explained how these non-workers should receive no financial help from **the church**. The Elders, Heads of Households, if they didn't work, were worse than infidels.

Later, you will see how this includes the preaching ministry, as well. Only the truly needy, which includes the ministry, when they temporarily find they need help, can receive church financial aid – if they are in a circumstance beyond their ability to provide for themselves.

Paul is a good example. By trade, Paul was a businessman who

manufactured tents. So he supported himself, and refused to accept any help from the church. However, when Paul was in prison, he did accept assistance and was thankful for the church's help.

Since the laborer is worthy of his hire (Luke 10:7), Paul would accept church funds, but only when he was **in need**. Notice another fact. Never was ministerial help requested from a headquarters church. This is because a "**local church**" kept "**church funds**" locally by their Deacons. A **central church** that collected money and/or disbursed money did not exist.

In short, preaching ministers knew better than to corrupt themselves with filthy lucre. I Timothy 5:1 defines an "elder" as "being an older man or father." The younger men are as brethren. So an "elder" is a senior or older man in **the church**. A young man cannot be ordained as an Elder. This is confirmed by the word "presbyteros," which in the Greek language means "an older man."

Therefore, the older men were responsible for caring financially for their households as overseer ("episkope"). If they did not perform, they were infidels (I Timothy 5:8). Overall, the individual needy church members are financially supported by their own family heads, The Firstborn Elders. This was "**God's Welfare System**." The subject of widows comes under another category. Since they had no husband and no inheritance, they could receive **church help** – if the widow had "a need" (I Timothy 5:3).

There were two kinds of widows. If a widow had a family with an older head, then the family had to be financially responsible. The younger widows were expected to marry again and not be a church burden (I Timothy 5:14). The older widows (over sixty) with no family in the church to help them, would be helped by the church

as widows “indeed” (I Timothy 5:9 and Deuteronomy 21:17).

There were also older men who were destitute or in need. There were two types: (1) Elders (firstborn) who didn't preach, and (2) Elders (firstborn) who did preach **The Word**. Both, preachers and honorable older men, were worthy of double honor (I Timothy 5:17).

This may appear to be rather amazing to some readers. But whether a man was only an Elder, or an **older man**, or a **preacher of The Word** in need, all were worthy of double honor. Why is this? The answer is simple. Both were Elders or **firstborn older sons** who had a right, according to The Law, to receive a double portion of honor. It is based on the principle in Deuteronomy 21:17. Remember, for Christians, The Law or Torah is only a shadow or only a type of the real (Hebrews 10:1).

Whether The Elder was a preacher or not, according to The Law, both received financial help, but only when it was needed. Older men in need, and the older widows in need, also could receive financial help from **the church**. This is plain and simple. I Timothy 5 deals with giving money to the ministry only when they were in need.

Christ's Admonition

As usual, Jesus, Himself, tells you **scripturally** how ministers are to be paid as “**laborers**” of **The Word**. In Luke 9, Jesus sent The Apostles out to do The Work of God. They were sent to preach *The Gospel*, heal the sick and cast out demons. Then in Luke 9:3, Christ instructed The Disciples to take nothing with them – not even money. Again, Jesus sent out another seventy in Luke 10. He told them not to take any purse or money, “**Carry neither**

purse, nor scriptures..." (Luke 10:4).

Then in Luke 10:5-7, Christ told The Disciples to find a house of peace, so they could lodge and eat there. Then Jesus stated the situation in the simplest of terms, "**The Labourer is worthy of his hire...**" (Verse 7).

How did this take place? It was by lodging with **the church brethren and** eating what they gave you with thanksgiving. That is how it was done in Christ's time. Hence, there were no salaries, tithes, offerings or as you see today, the acquiring of fancy cars, houses, colleges, administration buildings, jet aircraft, fine paintings and various art works, etc. Christ said that a **minister** should be paid by staying with **church brethren** and eating and drinking what the brethren offered. Jesus said that a "**laborer**" is worthy of his hire by eating and drinking what is given – period! There was no salary, tithes or donations. A **minister** was to be totally helped financially, but only when he was "**in need.**" That is how God financed His "**work,**" but only by need.

These needs can be satisfied for elders, ministers, or older men, widows (over sixty) or orphans. These are included along with "the poor in **the church.**" In other words, God finances His "**work**" by eliminating the need of basic necessities such as food, clothing or a place to sleep. I Corinthians 9 clearly states the situation when a minister has need for financial help when he preaches *The Gospel*. But it is only for eating and drinking – not a salary. The **subject** is **eating** and **drinking** (Verse 4). This chapter in no way implies tithes or offerings. Then an illustration is given from Deuteronomy, which states, "**...Thou shalt not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treadeth out the corn**" (Verse 9).

Why does Paul use the example of not muzzling the ox that treads

out the corn? It is so the ox can eat. He should share in the proceeds. Tithes are not the subject! Verse 13 also explains that the **priests ate from the altar**. This is an important principle. The priests ate the meat from the sacrifices. Then, in Verse 14, Paul states that Jesus said the same about preaching *The Gospel*. You read, “**Even so has the Lord ordained that they which preach the gospel should live of [Greek, “out of”] the gospel.**”

Yes, Christ said to eat and drink whatever the people of peace offer you. The entire history of true Christianity, from *The Gospels* through *The Book of Acts*, is about how financing God’s “**work**” is done – by helping the needy – so that **no one in the church** (or ministry) lacks anything.

Some have offered an excuse to get money, and quote II Corinthians 11:8. This is the text where The Apostle Paul explained how he had robbed **wages** from other churches.

The problem here is the Greek word for “wages” – which in the English means a “**soldier’s daily rations.**” Soldiers **did not** receive a **salary**. They received **daily rations** (eat and drink), and whatever spoils they received from a successful battle. That was compensation for special duress. Also, soldiers had to have assistance, because they were not able to provide all materials necessary for their military mission.

They could not grow their food, make their uniform, forge a sword, craft a shield and train for war at their own expense. They needed help from a larger body of individuals – just as it reads, “**...Who goeth a warfare any time at his own charges?**” (I Corinthians 9:7).

All these points are further evidence that **the church** only gave to

the ministry and the needy **church members**. They were given food and drink as was needed.

That is the reason Paul stated in 1 Corinthians 9:5 that when “**the ministry**” was traveling for “**the work,**” **the church** could, if necessary, supply their daily needs, along with their families when traveling with them.

The Ministerial Example

Did you know that “**ministers**” especially, should labor with their hands? Why is this? Consider the following aspect. In I Corinthians 4:9-12 Paul said, **The Apostles are last in “the church.”** They are last because they are belittled, go hungry, are beaten and must even **labor by working with their hands. Apostles worked.** Ministers worked and were directed to work by Paul. This became a point of Paul’s defense against the false ministers in his discourse throughout II Corinthians – and especially in Chapter 11.

Furthermore, Paul explained in II Thessalonians 3:10 that **any** who did not work (including ministers), neither should they eat. There is to be no financial help from **the church**. Who is Paul talking to? He speaks to the **entire church** and “**the ministry.**” Why include “**the ministry?**” Paul stated that if **any church member** didn’t work, then they should have nothing to do with that brother. Then in Verses 7-10, Paul proclaimed that **the ministry** did not eat anyone’s bread, but **wrought** with **labor** night and day. He said that no one in **the church** had to help **the ministers** at all. Why was this? Verse 9 gives authority to receive food and drink from **the church**, but **the ministry** should work in order to be **an example to the church**. Paul declared that **the church** should help **no one** who could, but **wouldn’t** work, especially “**the ministry.**”

How does God finance The Work of God? Everyone in The Body of Christ works, including “**the ministry.**” By so doing, you prove you are The Disciples of Christ because you love each other and are not a burden on each other. When everyone **works**, there is enough for them and the needy. There should never be **needy** individuals in God’s **church!**

CHAPTER 8

WHY THE PRIESTHOOD RECEIVES TITHES!

The previous chapter, ‘*Financing God’s Work*’ showed how The Scriptural Method of Christian “giving” is for Christians to be willing to give all that they have to one another. It involves much more than merely the giving of a tithe or an offering. Rather, Christian giving is based upon need. It does not concern ministerial salaries or other “perks.”

It has, also, been shown that each local congregation is responsible for the control of giving money to the needy. Whether this “gift” goes to an orphan, widow over sixty, elder, or a minister of “**the word**”, or those in need, it becomes the responsibility of the church to provide the basic necessities for life. Most Christians know **the laborer is worthy of his hire** – as Christ has shown, it is only for basic necessities like food, shelter, clothing. These are expenses that have been incurred in performing a ministerial service. The cost of these necessities was not to be borne by the provider of this service (the minister) but rather by the receiver of it (the congregation). Included in this arrangement is that the minister must, also, labor with his hands or work in other ways, to be an example to The Christians (I Thessalonians 3:6-9).

The minister is not only to be an example of **production** and physical service, but solely for the **support** of his **immediate house-**

hold (I Timothy 5:8).

Spiritual Gifts

Physical gifts received at birth form the foundation for everyone's skills and abilities, which are developed later in life to provide the basis for a livelihood. **Spiritual gifts**, on the other hand, are different. Each has received a **spiritual gift** (sometimes more than one).

I Peter 4:10 As every man hath received the gift [Greek "charisma; a gift"] even so minister the same one to another, as good stewards of the manifold grace of God.

These gifts are listed in three primary places in *The Bible*:

I Corinthians 12:7-10 ⁷But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. ⁸For to one is given by the Spirit the word of wisdom; to another the word of knowledge by the same Spirit; ⁹To another faith by the same Spirit; to another the gifts of healing by the same Spirit; ¹⁰To another the working of miracles; to another prophecy; to another discerning of spirits; to another divers kinds of tongues; to another the interpretation of tongues.

Ephesians 4:11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers.

Why The Priesthood takes tithes:

Romans 12:6-8 ⁶Having then gifts differing according to the grace that is given to us, whether prophecy, let us prophesy according to the proportion of faith; ⁷Or ministry, let us wait on our ministering: or he that teacheth, on teaching; ⁸Or he that exhorteth, on exhortation: he that giveth, let him do it with simplicity; he that ruleth, with diligence; he that sheweth mercy, with cheerfulness.

The purposes of these “gifts” are:

Ephesians 4:12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ.

In Matthew 10:1-8, Jesus is described as sending His Disciples (Verse 5) to The House of Israel (Verse 6) to preach The Gospel of The Kingdom of Heaven (Verse 7). Before sending them, He gave them **spiritual gifts**: (1) Power to cast out unclean spirits, (2) Power to heal sickness and disease (Verse 1). Notice that in Verse 8 Jesus said, “...**freely ye have received, freely give.**” Because they had received these gifts freely, they should use them to serve others without charge. These **gifts** – any and all **spiritual gifts** – **are not for hire.**

Other physical skills or physical abilities, which a Christian might have, could be exchanged for goods and services or for money – the basis for making a living in this world. **Spiritual gifts** are not obtained from any school, college or university and a BA, MA or PhD degree does not signify the attainment of any **spiritual gifts.**

Notice Verses 9 and 10:

Matthew 10:9-10 ⁹Provide neither gold, nor silver, nor brass in your purses, ¹⁰Nor scrip for your journey, neither two coats, neither shoes, nor yet staves: for the workman is worthy of his meat.” [Greek “Trephe” from Strong’s concordance #5142; “nourishment” (literally or figuratively); by implication rations: “food; meat”].

The Disciples were not to take any money or other necessities with them – they would be provided by those whom they visited or stayed with. But notice that it was **only** “**the necessities**” – salaries, health care and pension plans, chauffeur-driven cars and private jets are not part of the package – just food, a warm coat, comfortable shoes and a walking stick – their daily needs. Many ministers today live in exalted splendor while those whom they claim to serve are burdened with crushing obligations to tithe and give generous offerings. If these **ministers** were truly ministers (i.e., servants) of God, they would:

- 1 Reject all salaries, homes, planes, cars, jets, etc,
- 2 Get a job and work for a living, and
- 3 Begin to preach The Gospel from The Word of God.

Why Tithing Was Instituted

Why was tithing instituted? Furthermore, why is it only The Priesthood who could claim a right to receive tithes? On the surface, tithing seems to be a rather simple matter. Did you know that **tithing** gets right to the issue of whether or not you have really **accepted** Christ’s **sacrifice**? You can actually be transgressing The Law if you do not tithe according to the full instructions

laid down in God's "**word.**" If you tithe – but don't do it in the prescribed manner – then it is still a sin – believe it or not.

Whether through **The Priesthood of Melchizedek** or through **The Aaronic Priesthood** (through Levi) both had a right to receive tithes from the people. This is all well and good. On a **scriptural basis**, entirely too many people merely study the tithing issue on the surface – and therefore don't get to the root of the matter. Then, they tend to jump to a **conclusion** without all of the proper **biblical** evidence having been gathered on the subject.

Yes, it is true that Abraham tithed to Melchizedek (Genesis 14:20). Jacob, also, promised to pay tithes (Genesis 28:22). Under Moses, The Aaronic Priesthood could also receive tithes (Hebrews 7:5-10). This is because tithing at that time was based upon a legal system that had been set up under God's direction. Therefore, if one chooses to tithe today, is there anything wrong with tithing to the ministry? This seems to be such a simple question – or is it?

The Inheritance

Were you aware that tithing has a direct link to God's **purpose** on earth? Tithing, from God's point of view, is a very serious **teaching**. The problem is the abuse of God's **original purpose** for tithing. God's Work is an on-going effort to bring individuals to believe on Christ. So Jesus, "**being in you**" makes you eventually become a Son of God by **inheritance**. Paul said, "**...Christ in you, the hope of glory...**" (Colossians 1:27).

Be sure to read all of Ephesians 1 where God promises this **inheritance** to you, so that you can become part of His Family. In short, tithing is directly tied to this Law of Inheritance.

Priesthood Without The Inheritance

There is one vital biblical text that specifically defines the responsibility of a priest, **“For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins”** (Hebrews 5:1).

The **High Priest's duty** is to offer these gifts and sacrifices for the **sins of humanity**. This is the **biblical purpose** for The Priesthood. Once the **sins are paid for**, there is no **further purpose** for The High Priest. This is according to God's Word.

Once an individual repents, is baptized, and receives God's Holy Spirit, there is no reason for The Priesthood to intercede for one's sins. This is because Jesus has already interceded for mankind and continues to do so while on God's right hand. There is no further need to have a Priest to **continue** making sacrifices. The one sacrifice by Jesus gave mankind their **inheritance**.

Once your sins are forgiven, there is no need for a High Priest to offer **sacrifice** for your sins. That is why Paul said in Hebrews 8:1-4, that if Jesus were on the earth, He would **not be a Priest after any order**. Paul went on to declare that there are Priests on the earth after or according to **The Law**. They still have their sins and are without any **inheritance**. These priests on earth, The Levites, are placed there for unconverted, unrepentant people.

The Law is to bring them, inch-by-inch, deed-by-deed, as a **schoolmaster**, to Christ, until finally a repentant person does not have to sacrifice. Always remember, Christ already did (Galatians 3:24). Notice how The Priesthood is based upon The Law or Torah. What does The Law say about receiving **“tithes”** and **“The Priesthood?”**

Tithing And The Law

Numbers 18:21 states that according to **The Law**, **God** has given the **tithes** to The Levites so they can serve Him in **the temple**. Notice, it was given as an **inheritance**. In Verse 23, The Law commands that **no other inheritance** is to be given to The Levites. The **tithe** is **the inheritance** that was given to The Priesthood. This is because they have **no inheritance** in The Promised Land. Their **rest** in the land is to serve in **the temple** for the **sins** of the people – just as Paul said in Hebrews 5:1. So states **The Law**. Only Levites can receive tithes, because there is no “**inheritance**” for them.

Abraham And Jacob

Paul declares that all High Priests who are ordained have this rite performed for things pertaining to God. This is so they may offer both “**gifts**” and “**sacrifices**” for sins (Hebrews 5:1). When did this practice begin? It started with Cain and Abel. Because Abel had a right heart, he was acceptable to God. Cain was told that he had a wrong heart, and therefore, he must master the sin within him. This was so he could be acceptable, as Abel had been accepted.

To give sacrifices, Abel was God’s **first accepted High Priest** to give a sacrifice, but he was murdered before he could perform those duties. Melchizedek was God’s High Priest, to give sacrifices for sins. That is what your Bible states. Since the word “Melchizedek” comes from two Hebrew words meaning “king” and “prosperous” and it stands to reason that Abraham tithed to Melchizedek. God is **the one** who gives blessings and prospered Abraham. Abraham did so because he knew that Melchizedek was The High Priest of The Most High God.

This “**scripturally**” demonstrates that tithes are only given to those individuals **without the inheritance** – or God’s “**promise of the seed**” who would “**restore**” all things (Genesis 3:15). Since The Law of Tithing was not in force for another 430 years, why did Abraham give this tithes? First, it was given as a sign or a witness that Abraham only relied on God for his prosperity, which takes “**faith**.” Abraham’s prosperity did not come from the spoils of war. And, remember, no one had received **the inheritance** of The Promised Seed (The Messiah). To give a tithes to any High Priest after one has already received “**the promise**” (God’s guarantee) of God’s blessings is to show a lack of **faith** in your Father. You are literally rejecting God’s Holy Spirit of “**the promise**.”

In Hebrews 11:9-10, Abraham, The Father of The Faithful, received **not his inheritance** – but rather he looked forward to “**the promise**” of God’s “**kingdom**.” That is why Abraham tithed to Melchizedek. “**No inheritance**” had been given.

The inheritance is a **promise** of all that God is, with all of the riches in Christ. Abraham had to look forward to that “inheritance.” He had total **faith** to show the source of his prosperity. That is the reason Abraham tithed. Jacob knew the same **biblical truth**. He tithed to God as his Protector – and the beholder of all riches. Jacob, also, had not received his **inheritance**, and therefore, tithed, just as did Abraham. This was as a **witness** to the world.

Inheritance: Key To Tithing

As The Law states, only those High Priests who have “**no inheritance**” could receive tithes. This is true, whether in reference to Melchizedek or Levi. One is a Spiritual Priesthood (Melchizedek) – and the other is a Physical Priesthood (Levi). Tithes can

only be paid to them since they have “**no inheritance.**”

In The Law, The Levites (Numbers 18:20-21) were **given the tithe** because they had **no promise in the land**. If tithes are given or taken by someone **who has received their inheritance**, they are transgressing The Law, and that is sin (I John 3:4). If you break **one point of The Law**, you are **guilty** of breaking “**The Entire Law**” (James 2:10). There is no “scriptural” way around it.

Christ And Christianity

It is beyond consideration that one cannot tithe to any Priesthood (Levi or Melchizedek) if they have inherited God’s “**promise.**” Receiving a tithe, or **giving** a tithe, is an act of **faith** that one **has not received** their inheritance. Abraham, Jacob, and all the Fathers had not received the **inheritance** until **the children** of Israel received their **inheritance in the promised land**. The Levites were **excluded** from this “**promise of the land**” and therefore, could receive tithes.

In Hebrews 1:2, Paul said that Jesus had inherited **all things**. This was God’s complete **glory**. Christ, as Priest after The Order of Melchizedek, could not receive any tithes once He was **resurrected** and sitting at God’s right hand.

Neither can Christ’s ministers take tithes. Why is this? Besides Jesus, His ministers and all Christians have received, at least, an earnest (down payment) of their **inheritance**.

Ephesians 1:13-14 infallibly states that Christians, once sealed with God’s Holy Spirit, have the **earnest of their inheritance**. Jesus and **all Christians** have **received an inheritance**. Once **the inheritance** has been received, no tithes should be accepted by

any Priesthood, Levite or Melchizedek, because they do not need to **witness** their future prosperity. Christ and all true Christians have received their **heavenly blessings** in Christ (Ephesians 1:3). To keep tithing, once a person has received **the inheritance**, is a **lack of faith**. Lacking **faith** is a **sin** (Romans 14:23).

Too many treat tithing lightly. Tithing carries a deep **spiritual lesson** that illustrates how one has **not** received their **inheritance**. To give tithes in any way, or for any purpose, is a complete lack of **faith** in God. Abraham and Jacob tithed because they had not received their **inheritance**.

This was an act of **faith** by **them** illustrating how they were sure they would receive it. Christ and Christians who have received **the inheritance** show their faith by not taking or giving tithes. This is a very **deep spiritual lesson**.

That is why God said that Abraham kept His Commandments, Laws and Statutes. It was Abraham's **faith** which was his "righteousness" (Genesis 26:5). Christians likewise walk in **faith** by living every Word of God (Matthew 4:4).

Christian Giving

You have already seen the earlier facts and factors in Chapter 7, '*How God Finances His Work.*' "Christian giving" is based completely **on need**, and not on any tithes. In fact, Christians are supposed to be willing to give everything they have to the needy such as other Christians or to a minister who is having a hard time making ends meet – and only when absolutely necessary. This guideline especially applies to The Body of Christ (**the church**). Carefully read Chapters 3, 4 and 5 of Acts. Paul said that Christians should be willing to offer their bodies as a **living sacrifice**

(Romans 12:1). Since Jesus is your **sacrifice**, you should be a willing **sacrifice** like Christ – and give everything for the needy. One of the major **truths** about God’s **church** is that there should be **no poor** in this body of believers. This is God’s Spiritual Welfare System – brother-helping-brother. Tithing is not enough. It is only for those who need a Priest to make constant intercession for their sins by **sacrifices**. That is the reason Christ would not be a Priest if He were on earth today (Hebrews 8:4).

During The Millennium, Jesus will reign as King of Kings in Israel. At that time, The Israelites who have not entered God’s “**rest**” (Hebrews 4) or “**inheritance**” will be required to follow The Complete Letter of The Law – including tithing. Israel and the unconverted Gentiles will have their chance to come to Christ. All who have not repented and have not received God’s “**inheritance**” will have their opportunity to come to Christ. Once they are **repentant**, The Letter of The Law will no longer apply to them. Consequently, they will not tithe because **the repentant** will become Christians and have their **inheritance** of Christ “**in them**” (Colossians 1:27). Tithing will completely cease when all have received their “**inheritance**.”

CHAPTER 9

WHAT OR WHO WAS MELCHIZEDEK?

Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek, who was The High Priest of The Most High God and then He blessed Abraham. Who was this Melchizedek and why did he bless Abraham (Hebrews 7:1)? The answer will surprise you.

An Order

Many assume that Melchizedek was a single human being. Some believe that The Melchizedek who blessed Abraham was Christ. Could this be true? Due to a common error, most misunderstand the true identity of Melchizedek. People assume that Melchizedek is just one individual person. But what does *The Bible* actually say?

When Abraham met Melchizedek, *The Bible* states, that this particular Melchizedek was The High Priest of The Most High God. This statement in *The Book of Genesis* reveals the fact that there were other High Priests in existence – but they were “**not priests**” of The Most High God (Genesis 14:8).

You will see, on a **biblical** basis, that Melchizedek **was not one person** – but rather a **lineage** of individuals from the time of Adam and Eve down to the time when Christ came – who was, also, a Priest after **The Order of Melchizedek** (Hebrews 7:21). To understand this Order of Melchizedek, you must first come to see why God had instituted a Priesthood in the first place. The

answer to this mysterious and puzzling question will reveal the entire story line and underlying theme of *The Bible*.

The Priesthood

The Apostle Paul clearly states the reason God has **ordained** The Office of a Priest – especially The High Priest of God. In Hebrews 5:1 Paul said, **“For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins...”**

Notice God's requirements for The High Priesthood:

- 1 A High Priest must be human.
- 2 This High Priest must be ordained of God. The word “ordain” in Greek is “kathistemi” which means “to set down” or “place in a position.” God makes this appointment personally. It is accomplished by His established Law or by an oath.
- 3 The **purpose** and **duty** of **The High Priest** is for the good of humanity. It makes Christians acceptable to God.
- 4 Without a sacrifice God will not accept the sinner (Isaiah 59:1-2). When a sinner repents and wants to be forgiven, he must offer a sacrifice so God can forgive him.
- 5 These sacrifices and gifts must be acceptable by God because God is the one ordaining the individual to become His High Priest.

It is not the gift or sacrifice that is of significance – but rather the acceptance of the human who is chosen to be High Priest. Please read all of Psalm 139. David said, “**²³Search me, O God, and know my heart: try me, and know my thoughts: ²⁴And see if there be any wicked way in me, and lead me in the way everlasting.**”

God knows the thoughts and hearts of each of His creation and therefore, He chooses those who are to become High Priests according to **the heart** of the individual. Then, in Hebrews 10:5, Paul makes an amazing statement. He says, “**Wherefore when he [Christ] cometh into the world, he [David] saith, Sacrifice and offering [and burnt offerings for sin] thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me.**” Paul quoted this statement from David’s Psalm 40:6. In fact, in David’s Psalm, David declared that God doesn’t even desire sacrifices or offerings, but rather the human body, (“**The Christ**”) which God prepared. Please read this Psalm completely for the importance of its content.

How significant this is. God is not the one who introduced sacrifices and offerings. This process all started by means of human effort. That is why Paul said that **The Law**, with all its carnal **commandments**, was only done by humans to please God. But, they never could accomplish that objective. Only the offering of **the body** of Jesus, The Christ, would suffice. This is because Christ loved **righteousness** – and was chosen above His fellows (Hebrews 7:16 and Hebrews 1:9). You will see that **these fellows**, referred to in Hebrews 1, cover the human genealogy from Cain and Abel until Christ, The **Anointed One**. Jesus is the aim or completion of The Line of Melchizedek. Read all of Hebrews 1 **thoroughly**. Paul related how Jesus is superior to “the angels” and because Christ loved “**righteousness**” by giving His very **life**, became God’s Son and The High Priest after The Order of

Melchizedek.

Since God's real "**temple**" is in **heaven**, some Jewish writings mistakenly state Melchizedek might have been The Archangel, Michael. But, Jesus is **The One** who was **the completion** of The Melchizedek Order and is finally chosen above **His fellows** on earth and in **heaven**. The Greek meaning for "Christ" denotes "The Anointed One" or "Melchizedek, **The Chosen One**" (Hebrews 1).

Genesis Of The Priesthood

How did **The Priesthood** begin and when did this take place? Now that you know the **why** and **how** of God deciding His **Priesthood**, you need to investigate the history of "**The Priesthood**" – for both Melchizedek and The Levitical Priesthood from the time of Moses. To know **the purpose** of **each order** is significant in relation to "**salvation**."

After Adam and Eve sinned in The Garden of Eden, they were removed from The Garden and The Tree of Life. The cherubim (angels) guarded the entrance to The Tree of Life – just like the two cherubim that guarded the way to **the mercy seat** of **the ark** placed in **the temple**. Humanity was cut off from God until **that special body which God** prepared had been offered – and the veil of **the temple** was rent – so that mercy could be obtained from God, The Father. In The Land of Eden, Adam and Eve had two children – Cain and Abel. Cain was the firstborn, which gave him the right of the firstborn (Deuteronomy 21:17). Later, you will see when Cain killed Abel, the struggle had been over **The Priesthood**. Cain had a wrong heart. In Genesis 4:7, God simply told Cain, "**If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted?**" If Cain's heart was right, God would have accepted his offering. For

God to accept Cain's offering, he had to have a right heart to be able to perform the role of The Priesthood.

Then God said, “...and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule [master or repent] **over him**” (Genesis 4:7). God wanted Cain to change his attitude and his ways. Instead, Cain murdered his brother Abel and consequently, was expelled from God's “**presence**.” The result was that he became a **pagan** who was a man without God. Remember that the punishment for Eve's sin was that the restoration to God's **rest** (in The Garden) would not occur until “**the right seed**” came along (Genesis 3:15). This “**promised seed**” would defeat Satan and restore humanity (Eve's seed) to God. Cain and Abel both knew this and therefore, both tried to please God with their offerings.

Now, notice how God made His choice. Once again, The Apostle, Paul, reveals “**the truth**.” *The Book of Hebrews* is **The Priesthood Epistle**. In Hebrews 11:2, The Apostle explains that these individuals were all elders, or the **older men of God**. They were **all faithful** and had direct instruction from God. Then in the text of Hebrews 11:4, it is clear that Abel offered unto God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain. As a gift, this sacrifice represented more honor to God. It was a witness that Abel's gift was more righteous. This meant that since God accepted Abel's sacrifice as **more righteous** than Cain's, then Abel was to become the one God accepted as His High Priest. Abel would be the one to offer sacrifices for sin. Abel fulfilled all of the requirements for becoming God's High Priest in the process of giving sacrifice for sin. Abel was to become the first human to be accepted, chosen and ordained of God. He would offer an acceptable sacrifice to God. Although the lamb pointed to Christ, God was not promoting the idea of animal sacrifice. Rather, God wanted a **particular**

body – as has already been shown. But, Abel's faith of righteousness was the cause of Abel's worth in becoming God's High Priest. His mother, Eve, understood this reality, also.

Replacement By Seth

In Genesis 4:25-26, you find that Eve conceived Seth. This was the son who replaced the slain Abel. In this text, Eve made a critical statement, **"...God, said she, hath appointed me another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew."** This seed would be the seed that would defeat Satan and the penalty of sin that had been brought upon Eve and her progeny.

In Hebrew, the word, "appointed" means "strength." This is the same principle and meaning as applied to the firstborn in Deuteronomy 21:17. The word comes from a root in Hebrew which means "chief" or "head." Seth was **"the new head"** who was installed as the firstborn to replace Cain – who himself became a wanderer and secondly, he replaced Abel who was killed. In this process, **The Priesthood's "promised seed"** was to come through Seth, who would be the one to offer gifts and sacrifices to God for sin. Seth became God's High Priest. Notice the genealogy in *The Book of Genesis*.

In Genesis 5:1-3, God said that He made man, Adam, in God's image or likeness. **Adam looked like God.** In Verse 3, it states that Adam's son was Seth – and that Seth looked like Adam. There is no more mention of Cain or Abel. The genealogy of **"the promised seed"** who finally would be Christ – was now to take place through Seth – who looked like Adam, and who, in turn, looked like God. Therefore, Seth looked like God – or a Son of God. This is **very significant** to The Priesthood of Melchizedek. The English translation of the word "like" in Hebrew refers to "charac-

ter” or “righteousness.” The very name of “Melchizedek” means “King of Righteousness.”

Definition Of Melchizedek

The Apostle Paul leaves an excellent clarification of what and who Melchizedek was. Read carefully Hebrews 7:1-4. Study each morsel and compare Paul’s definition to what has already been proved. Following is a list of Paul’s descriptive points concerning Melchizedek, who met Abraham:

- 1 Melchizedek was The King of Salem.
- 2 He was The Priest of The Most High God.
- 3 He was, also, King of Righteousness, King of Salem, and King of Peace.
- 4 He had neither father nor mother.
- 5 He had no beginning or ending of life. He was eternal.
- 6 He was made like The Son of God or Jesus.
- 7 He abides as a Priest forever.
- 8 He was a man – a human being.

Was Melchizedek Christ?

It is a very simple matter to take Paul’s definition of Melchizedek, to see if Melchizedek was actually Christ. It is true that when

Jesus became Melchizedek, He was The King of Salem and King of Peace. Jesus did become The High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek. Christ was, also, King of Righteousness. Furthermore, Jesus abides as a Priest forever. Christ was the target or completion of The Melchizedek Order. Everyone on earth and **heaven** were only types or shadows of **the real**.

Besides this, Christ was a man, a human just like you and everyone else. Jesus, The Christ, certainly did qualify with many of God's requirements to become God's High Priest. But was He, The Melchizedek, who met Abraham? Remember, to be Melchizedek who met Abraham, one had to meet the complete definition that Paul had enumerated. One major point reveals how this Melchizedek had no father or mother. Jesus did have a Father, who is God – and Mary, as His mother. Some could say, “but this was before Jesus was born as a human.” If that were so, then how could Jesus become Melchizedek – once God had begotten Him as a Son? In fact, according to Paul, Jesus became Melchizedek because He was God's first begotten Son.

Notice, Paul's statement in Hebrews 7:15 that Jesus **was not Melchizedek** who met Abraham – but was only after the **similitude** of Melchizedek. He only arose as a High Priest, later on. So Christ could not have been The Melchizedek who met Abraham. Jesus became Melchizedek only after He became God's first begotten Son. Hebrews 5:5-6 reveals that until Christ became God's Son, He did not become High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek. Verse 5, tells you that Jesus did not glorify Himself to become High Priest. But then, God said that Christ was His Firstborn Son – and therefore, in Verse 6, said that Jesus was a Priest forever after The Order of Melchizedek. In Hebrews 7:15 Melchizedek, who met Abraham, was only in the similitude of Christ. It wasn't Jesus. Both came from the same genealogical

lineage. In Greek the original word translated as “similitude” conveys the meaning of “compared” or “to become like” or “to resemble.” It also comes from the Greek root of “similar in appearance” or “character.”

Melchizedek, who met Abraham, was not Jesus, The Christ. They were just alike in some similar ways. Hebrews 7:3 states that Melchizedek, who met Abraham, was like unto The Son of God – but he was not Jesus. If he wasn’t Christ, then who was he?

The Order

Throughout *Hebrews*, the text clearly states that Jesus became High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek – just as was read in Hebrews 5:5-6. The Melchizedek of Abraham’s day (and of Christ’s appointment) were two different men. It all concerns the word “Melchizedek” as being “an order” or “a lineage” from a specific family, or the same DNA. This is especially true concerning righteous character. The High Priest must be “**a lover of righteousness.**” So it is “an order” – and not just a specific person.

The words “after the order” in its strictest Greek sense, carries the meaning of “after” – which “equals the goal” or “aim that comes down from something to something.” The word “after” in Greek denotes “a target to something.” The goal or target is “**the order.**” The word “order” in Greek is “*taxis*” which means “to arrange in order” “categorize” or “place in one’s proper place.”

The Order of Melchizedek is an **arrangement** or **succession** that takes place towards a **proper goal**. So, Melchizedek is not a person or a separate being, but rather a **genealogy of inheritance** from God. That is the root of **misunderstanding**. When you

think of Melchizedek, as one individual being, you have made a **great biblical error**. The “order” (succession) must meet all the eight requirements to be Melchizedek. To be Melchizedek, one had to love **righteousness** and be King of Peace (Salem). Only, The Christ, qualified by being The Body which God chose as a **sacrifice**. Therefore, they would be God's High Priest. Also, in this order (succession) they would have no father or mother – nor beginning or end – because they are all part of a lineage, which ends with Christ (which lasts forever).

The individuals, in this order of succession, had no beginning, because Christ was God's Son – and He came from God who had no beginning. They had to be like The Son of God, in genealogy and character. Jesus and all predecessors had to be humans. All, in their order and abide as a Priest through Christ forever. This genealogical order fulfills all the conditions to become Melchizedek ending in Christ. Once you understand the name of Melchizedek is “a title,” which connotes a **succession of human beings** from the time of Cain and Abel, then you start to realize that it is God's “**promised seed**” (progeny) all through history who are **the called-out ones, “the church.”** This started with Abel's replacement. Then, from Seth, it continued all the way down to **Jesus, The Christ**.

The target (goal) of finalizing God's High Priest in The Order of Melchizedek is finally completed “**in Christ**” – just as with *The Torah* or The Law with The Aaronic Priesthood. In both cases, The Melchizedek Order and The Aaronic Order was a Priesthood, which had been appointed by God. The Melchizedek Order was determined by an oath made by God to His Firstborn Son, Jesus. The Aaronic Order was mandated by The Law. Both Priesthoods had to make an offering (sacrifice) for sin. As long as the sacrifice was accepted, then they were both High Priests of The Most

High God!

The Two Priesthoods

Why did God find it necessary to have two Priesthoods? One was Melchizedek and the other as an Aaronic Priesthood through Levi? Wasn't Melchizedek good enough? After all, The Melchizedek Priesthood was set up to offer sacrifices for the sins of humanity – in order to make them acceptable to God. Christ came as **that body** which God had prepared for the world's sins (I John 4:14). It was after The Order of Melchizedek. Why wasn't this "one" Priesthood of Melchizedek enough to restore Adam and Eve's children to God's **rest** or **paradise** (Matthew 18:11)? Remember, God told Cain for him to be accepted, he had to master sin and **repent**. Jesus clearly stated the same thing in Matthew 13:15.

A Matter Of Repentance

Now, for an overall perspective that is most important, you read the statement made by Jesus:

“For this people’s heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them” (Matthew 13:15).

Christ said it and God certainly told Cain the same thing. These are as the prescribed “two witnesses” according to God’s Law. The Priesthood of Melchizedek only covered the **repentant** or **faithful** people who would always **believe** every “**word**” of God

(Matthew 4:4). **Faith** or **complete belief** in God, Our Father, **is righteousness** and fulfills all The Law culminating in love to God and your neighbor.

Abraham Tithed

Why did Abraham tithe to Melchizedek? It was not because any Law required it, but as you will see, it was because it proved Abraham's **faithfulness** to God. It was Abraham's **faith** which made Abraham **righteous** – and not any works of The Law (Hebrews 11:8-10).

What Tithes Represent

According to The Law, The Levitical Priesthood takes tithes (one tenth) from the people because it is to be their “**inheritance**” for their service in “**the tabernacle.**” Why does God pay The Levites ten percent of **the people's agricultural earnings** for their services in **the tabernacle**? Numbers 18:1 reveals that the duties of The Levites are to bear the sins of the people (and their own) by means of the sacrifices. Remember, Melchizedek was a **spiritual priesthood** based upon **faith** and belief. To be covered by Melchizedek, one had to **repent** – which means to have a **change of heart** – and then to have faith (belief) in **all** of God's “**word.**” Notice, in Hebrews 3:18 when referring to Israel, God said they would not enter God's “**rest**” because Israel lacked “**faith**” (belief) in God. They hadn't repented because of a lack of **faith** and therefore, The Melchizedek Priesthood could not give sacrifices for them. This was because The Order of Melchizedek was a **spiritual Priesthood** based on **faith**.

There was another priesthood, which could not forgive their sins, but only demanded death when the people were guilty of capital sins

or crimes. It was an Administration of Death (II Corinthians 3:5-9). That is why God had to add **the statutes** and **judgments** to The Ten Commandments, because their hearts were unrepentant (Deuteronomy 5:29). Malachi 4:4 clearly states The Law of Moses did not include **the statutes** and **judgments** until they were added to The Ten Commandments (Deuteronomy 5 and Acts 7) after Israel sinned. Before Israel sinned, God only gave The Ten Commandments as The Law of Moses. These **statutes** and **judgments** were laws by which Israel was judged in God's **courthouse**, **the tabernacle** and **temple** (read Chapter 4 on '*God's Judgment*'). They were added for judgment of death or life, blessings or cursings. There was no mercy in this administration because the people were hardhearted and unrepentant. That is why God had to give them The Letter of The Law to judge them without mercy (Exodus 23:20-21 and I Timothy 1:4-9). This Added Law of Statutes and Judgments was The Law that was part of *The Torah* which judged them in God's **courthouse** or **temple**. Read Chapter 3 on '*The Purpose Of The Temple*.'

Tithes Pay The Lawyer

Now, prepare for a **great spiritual surprise!** God does not pay for the sinners' defense unless they "**repent.**" You will see, **scripturally**, tithing is God's insurance tax that pays the lawyer's fees for unrepentant people in God's **court**. Since **no inheritance** is given to The Levite, they are without a **source of income** from **the inherited land** (agricultural).

The Levitical Priesthood had no other career besides being a defense attorney service. By Israel breaking **the commandments**, **statutes** and **judgments**, the tithes paid were for the legal fees given to The Priests for defending the sinner, so to speak. This was for settling, out of court, by means of sacrifices. It is that

simple. God is logical and has complete common sense. Israel could not stop sinning (committing crimes) because they did not have a heart inclined toward God. God knew they would continue to break His **commandments, statutes and judgments**.

God demanded that The Israelites pay their defense attorney's fees by having tithes cover their legal fees. Their defense attorneys, The Priests, had no other inheritance – or source of income. It is **scripturally clear** that The Levitical Priesthood had to be instituted because Israel was carnal – and couldn't keep The Letter of The Law. It had to be because they had the weakness of the flesh with no repentance (Hebrews 3:10 and Romans 9:8). They lacked the **faith** or **trust** in God, The Father.

Courthouse And Attorney's Fees

As *The Bible* states, most of Israel today is blinded (Romans 11:7). Their time of **Salvation** and being forgiven by The Priesthood of Melchizedek will be during The Millennium (Romans 11:25-26). Under The Order of Melchizedek, Christ as your defense attorney (mediator) is "**freely given and freely received**" (Matthew 10:8 and Hebrews 9:8-15). Christ, as your defense attorney, does not charge you. In Greek the word "mesitites" is translated into English as "mediator." The Greek defines it as being "one who mediates between two parties." Moses did this on behalf of Israel when God wanted to kill Israel. With Moses, as Israel's attorney, God gave life to Israel on the basis that their penalty would be to give them The Letter of The Law. The intent was that they would be judged without mercy or pardon – in order to bring them to Christ (Galatians 3:24). During The Millennium, when The Law brings Israel to Christ and Israel has belief (**faith**) in God, the people will receive mercy and forgiveness under The Order of Melchizedek – or Christ. Christ is your defense attorney for no

expense – free. It is by grace that you are **saved** (pardoned) in God’s **court** or **temple** (Romans 3:24).

No tithes or offerings are to be given. If you, as a Christian, tithe or give offerings, then you are **paying your attorney fees** instead of God giving you grace by and through your attorney, who is pro bono (free) for your defense under The Priesthood of Melchizedek. God did not merely **charge** Israel for their **attorneys’ fees** – but God, also, imposed “**insurance**” to pay for the use of **the courthouse (temple)**. This was a fee of a shekel (read all of Numbers 3). God replaced the firstborn of Israel (who are sanctified for a Holy **purpose**) with The Levites who are sanctified for a Holy “**purpose.**” They are the ones who serve in **the temple** or **courthouse** of God.

All firstborn are sanctified by God to serve in The Priesthood of Melchizedek – just as Christ was God’s Firstborn Son. Therefore, God ordained Christ as a Priest after The Order of Melchizedek (Hebrews 5:5-6). This made it possible for God to ordain a **second** Priesthood after The Law.

This **second** Priesthood was subject to The Law without mercy for carnal people. They did not have a right heart. That is the reason God called The Letter of The Law and its legal requirements a **carnal commandment** (Hebrews 7:15-16). It is carnal because they have no heart or conscience. This legal law in **the temple** was for unconverted people. They were to be judged as people who couldn’t stop sinning or committing crimes. Therefore, this **court** had no **mercy**. The people were weak in their flesh.

How great is God’s justice! How **righteous**? Prove how God has **two courts**, one on earth by The Levites, which was only a **figure** (type) of God’s **real court**, and **the temple** in heaven with Christ

as High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek.

Read all of Hebrews 9. God's **earthly court** (with no mercy) had Laws to prove that humans are too weak to keep them and, therefore, were pronounced guilty and subject to being put to death (Romans 6:23). Under The Priesthood of Melchizedek, God judges carnal people differently from converted people. It was therefore, necessary for God to have "**two priesthoods.**" The Order of Melchizedek was a Priesthood under grace (forgiveness) which was free and there were no costs. While The Levitical Priesthood was based on The Law.

Christian Requirements

Christians are not required to give tithes or offerings to a ministry, priesthood or to anyone. Christians are like their Savior, Christ and consequently must sacrifice their whole life. They give all for the needy – whether the widow in need, the elder man who is poor, the minister of **The Word** who is in need, or anyone in The Body of Christ who is in need. To tithe or to give any offering is to be paying for your defense by a mediator or attorney. You are then, paying for your **salvation**. It is no longer "**grace**" or "**free.**" Since Jesus is your defense as your Mediator, His service is totally **free** – or else **you deny** that you are **saved** by "**grace.**" You do not have to pay for your crimes (sins) as carnal Israel did under The Law with all its demands. Now, you are ready to understand why Abraham paid tithes to Melchizedek. And, why Jacob paid tithes, as well. Remember that Christ said the guilty must pay the last farthing (Matthew 5:26).

The Inheritance

You have proved that God only allows tithes to be given to those

who do not have an **inheritance**. Why is **the inheritance** so important? The entire **theme** or **story** of your *Bible* is about God's **plan of restoring** The Garden of Eden and The Tree of Life to Adam and Eve's progeny (Genesis 3:15). It all comes through Eve's children of **the promised seed** – or the order (genealogy) of her children who are **righteous**, by **faith** through Christ.

This is what *Genesis* to *Revelation* is all about. It concerns the restored Tree of Life in “**paradise**” which occurs in the last chapter of Revelation 22. *God's Story* begins in The Garden and ends in The Garden. It is Alpha and Omega. Without Melchizedek, there is no **salvation**. It is all about an **inheritance** of the complete wealth and riches in Christ from God, The Father. That is why “**the inheritance**” is so important and must be given freely (by grace). There is no payment by any Law – for the defense of your sins – just as with carnal Israel and the rest of the unconverted world. It must be completely and totally free – or else **salvation** and forgiveness of your sins against God **will not be** forgiven. That is what Job had to learn. Now, you can understand why Abraham and Jacob tithed. After Abraham defeated Lot's captives and he had obtained all the spoils of war, he took **nothing**. He only gave ten percent (a tithe) to Melchizedek. In truth, Abraham gave all that he had – just as a Christian does for those **in need**. Had Abraham taken more than the 10% he gave to Melchizedek then the defeated kings and their people would have been destitute. As real Christians do, Abraham was concerned about their needs instead of his own. When Abraham gave the ten percent to Melchizedek, he had nothing remaining from his victory. He totally relied on God for his prosperity.

Since Abraham had **not** received his **inheritance** of “**the promised seed**” yet, he gave the tithe to show that he had **the faith** to wait for his **inheritance** when Christ comes and restores God

to humanity. Abraham knew his sins still had not been paid for by Christ. Read Hebrews 11 entirely. It explains why Abraham tithed to Melchizedek. He had not received his **inheritance** yet, and in **faith** (Hebrews 11) looked forward to it.

The Law of Inheritance is one of the most critical **spiritual lessons** in *The Bible*. Without receiving **the inheritance**, you are without God's Holy Spirit – and are cut off from God. When a Christian tithes or gives offerings, a person is **denying their Mediator** (Defense Attorney), Jesus, The Christ.

Your High Priest does not charge for your freedom. You are no longer under **grace** if you tithe, and therefore, **receive no inheritance**. How vital and important it is to know what and who Melchizedek was. This is critical when considering your **salvation**. Thankfully, true Christians are **saved** by “**grace**” and need to pay no tax (fees) for defense (forgiveness) of sins.

Shem's History

Melchizedek was fulfilled in **one-time period** by Noah's son, Shem. He “**was the one**” who continued The High Priesthood from Noah when he died. Shem was the one who blessed Abraham since he was the one to receive the promises of Eve's seed (Christ).

Abraham would now restore what was lost (paradise) with The Tree of Life (Matthew 18:11). That is why Melchizedek **blessed** Abraham. It is because Abraham believed in **faith** – that God, alone, would prosper him with all the riches in Christ (Hebrews 11 and Ephesians 2:4-8).

Keep in mind that The Melchizedek Priesthood was not one per-

son, but “**an order**” (genealogy) of Eve’s seed who had “**a right**” to sacrifice for the sins of the people. Melchizedek, as **an order**, had no father or mother or descent. It was a Priesthood to continue until “**the promised seed.**” Christ, came as “**the body**” **prepared by God to save the world** (I John 4:14). There was no father or mother because this **seed** was chosen by **righteousness** and **faith**. Those in line for Melchizedek were bypassed if they were not **righteous**. An example is Cain. This Priesthood came directly from God, through His Son, Jesus, who was God’s firstborn. Through Christ, this Priesthood lasts forever. It has no beginning since it started from God who has no beginning. This Priesthood was not temporary as The Aaronic Priesthood – which came by The Law and was only a shadow of the true everlasting Priesthood (Hebrews 10:1). Therefore, it is essential to prove that Shem was the one chosen by God after the flood – and that Shem was alive when Melchizedek met Abraham.

The Lineage

After the flood, Noah had three sons: Shem, Ham and Japheth (Genesis 9:1). Two of the sons, Japheth and Ham, were eliminated by God from receiving the blessing and riches. The **blessing** goes to Shem when Noah dies (Verses 26-29). God chose the line of “**the promised seed**” by means of **righteousness** as Christ was chosen (Hebrews 1:8-9). Shem was now Melchizedek, The High Priest. But did he live long enough? Shem had five children: Elam, Asshur, Arphaxed, Lud and Aram. Now, prepare for a surprise (Genesis 10:21-22).

Genesis 11:10 lists all the generations of Shem. Four of Shem’s children: Elam, Asshur, Lud and Aram are not even listed. Why not? Shem’s lineage starts two years after the flood when Shem was **one hundred years** old. The text mentions the generation

of Shem through Arphaxed, but not the other four. Why is this? Shem lived another five hundred years – for a total of **six hundred years** (Verse 11). With Shem having lived six hundred years, he outlived Abraham. Shem was still alive when Melchizedek blessed Abraham. This lineage is not Shem's total genealogy, but only the genealogy through Arphaxed, Shem's son, to the birth of Terah, Abraham's father.

This lineage reveals the **continuity** of the seed line of “**the promised seed**” from Shem to Abraham. That is why Shem, as Melchizedek, blessed Abraham, as the one to receive The Abrahamic Covenant. This **covenant** was **promised by grace**, as a gift because of Abraham's **faith**. All of Abraham's life – until his death can be read in Genesis 12 to Genesis 25:7. Abraham was 175 years old when he died. Shem still had about twenty-five years ahead of him. So the blessing was upon Shem and his lineage through Abraham. Shem, as Melchizedek, blessed (confirmed) God's oath of The Abrahamic Covenant – that the riches in Christ would come through Abraham. How perfect and wonderful is God's **plan** for you.

The Patriarch

Hebrews 11:7 states that Noah, **by his faith**, became the **heir** of **righteousness**. Noah continued The Order of Melchizedek. **The inheritance** of Eve's seed continues with Noah. In Verse 6, Hebrews reveals that without **faith** it is impossible to please God. If **faith** exists, then God **rewards** those who diligently seek Him (Hebrews 11:6). Now, in Verse 8, the text states Abraham was to receive **the promised inheritance** of prosperity (riches) by faith (Hebrews 11:8). Even though Shem outlived Abraham, as Melchizedek, the blessed son of Noah, the heir, God was now **transferring** the blessings upon Shem to Abraham. This took

place even though Shem outlived Abraham. Amazing!

That is why Melchizedek blessed Abraham and Abraham gave the tithe to Melchizedek. This acknowledged that Abraham believed God – and that Abraham and his seed would now receive **the inheritance**, which Abraham did not obtain in his lifetime. That is **faith** (Hebrews 11:13)! From this point on, Melchizedek (Shem) is not mentioned. The blessing has been **transferred** from **Shem** who continued to **live** after Abraham's death. The genealogy, however, of the blessing of **the promised seed** goes on through Abraham to Isaac, to Jacob, then to Israel, who sinned at Mount Sinai. This is when Israel had to receive The Letter of The Law for judgment to death, in order to bring them to Christ.

Israel, being carnal, required another Priesthood, The Levitical Priesthood, based on The Letter of The Law to bring them to death and **repentance**. From this point on, Israel had to be judged carnally by a carnal commandment (Hebrews 7:15). This was by a **shadow** of the real Priesthood, Melchizedek, which gives **life**. The Aaronic Priesthood could only remind them of sin and by The Law could only produce death (II Corinthians 3:9).

The **body** prepared by God, still had to come through Christ. This was the restoration of the true (better) Priesthood, which gave **life eternal** – and all its riches. This was by “**grace**” and was **totally free**!

Identity Of A Patriarch

Now, Abraham and his lineage were to continue **the promise**. Abraham was now The Patriarch. Paul said, “**Now consider how great this man was, unto whom even the patriarch Abraham gave the tenth of the spoils**” (Hebrews 7:4). Abraham was a

patriarch. What is a patriarch? The Greek word, “patriarchea” refers to a “progenitor.”

This is “a beginner” or “a starter.” It includes two Greek terms, “patria” and “arkho.” “Patria” denotes a “family,” “tribe” or “nation.” “Patria” would be “the father” or “progenitor” of the family, tribe or nation. “Arkho” equates to “being first” or “a father.”

The patriarch is a starter – a progenitor of a family, tribe or nation. That is exactly what God promised Abraham in **the covenant**. Abraham was to be a father of many nations through whom “**the promised seed**” (Christ) would come to bless **all nations** on earth. This is what The Order of Melchizedek was all about.

This **man**, a human (and not Christ) was **so great** that Abraham gave him a tithe (Hebrews 7:4). A tithe could only be given when one doesn't have **the inheritance** – as in the case of The Levitical Priesthood. This was a total **act of faith** by Abraham as has been proved. Why was **Melchizedek so great** that by tithing to him – God would prosper Abraham in all riches?

Melchizedek, The Righteous

The word, “Melchizedek” comes from two Hebrew terms, “malkey” and “tsedaq.” “Malkey” originates from “meleck” which is a “king” or “royal.” “Hammeleck” is “a pagan king” or “meleck” which is The Sun King or Melchizedek – The King of The Most High God.

There were **many molecks** (or kings) in the earth – but not after God. That is why God hated The Israelites for worshipping Moleck, The Sun King, rather than **The True God**. Melchizedek was a King, but he was entirely different from the pagan kings

in the world. Falsely, these pagan kings claimed to be true king/priests over their nations.

All anyone would need to do is to read world history about India, China, Aztecs, etc. There were many priest/kings in the world but none were the king/priest of The Most High God. These false king/priests claimed to be the protector and provider of riches for those under them. That is what Nimrod claimed. What is the difference when compared **with the king/priests** of The Most High God?

The answer is in the definition of the second term in the word “Melchizedek.” What is the meaning of “tsedaq?” This word is used for a **man** who is regarded as receiving deliverance from condemnation (Christ’s trial), and being **entitled** to a certain **inheritance** since He wasn’t guilty of breaking God’s “**will**,” He could receive His Father’s **inheritance**. This man is accounted as **righteous**. Since He is found **righteous** and not guilty, then, He alone, has a **right to the inheritance** given by God. There it is, as clear as a bell.

Melchizedek is a Royal King and Priest (sacrifice for sin) who, because He is **righteous**, has a legal right by God to receive **the inheritance** of The Tree of Life in paradise with all of its wealth and riches. Melchizedek is the theme and story of *The Bible*.

The first chapter of *Hebrews* spells it all out. Christ was the target (goal) of The Order of Melchizedek. Christ was chosen above **all his** fellow humans. This is because in addition to the fact of being human, He **loved righteousness** – and therefore **inherits all things** (riches) from God, His Father. To do so, Christ became **the author of everyone’s salvation**. This is because He was found blameless and loved **righteousness**.

Conclusion

To summarize: God has all the promises and is “**all and in all**” from the beginning. All that was, and all that is, and all that could be, can only come from **the one** YHVH, The Existing One or The Most High “God.” For God to be “**all and in all**” is God’s **purpose** (I Corinthians 15:28). God, from Himself, being without descent, begot His Son, Jesus. Jesus, His Son was to be Melchizedek, The High Priest of The Most High God – who is above all other “gods.”

This Melchizedek was destined to come from “**the seed**” of Adam and Eve to restore what had been lost, which is **paradise**. The children of Adam and Eve never had access to The Garden and The Tree of Life.

Melchizedek made that **promise** come to pass through Jesus, The Christ, or The Anointed One who became the King/Priest of The Most High God. What a perfect and glorious **truth** from God’s “**word**.” God, through His Son, as Melchizedek, will be “**all and in all**.”

As God’s High Priest, Shem passed on the blessing to Abraham. He blessed him with being “**the promised heir**” to receive God’s **inheritance** of restoring paradise to humanity. Shem outlived Abraham by twenty-five years. Shem is no longer mentioned. This was done by means of Abraham’s **faith**, which was **his righteousness**. Abraham, therefore, tithed to Melchizedek – and is **waiting for the inheritance**.

CHAPTER 10

CAN CHRISTIANS LOSE THEIR SALVATION?

The Apostle Paul said, “For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive” (I Corinthians 15:22). Paul explained that all the children born from Adam and Eve will die – and yet all will be made alive (saved) in Christ. How can this be? Paul left no doubt about the identity of the “all” that will be “saved.” The answer is that “everyone” in Christ, will be “saved.” Can you believe that claim? What are the implications of all humanity being made alive at some future point in time?

Unforgiven Sin

To some, those bold introductory statements may seem beyond belief. Yet this is exactly what Paul stated in his first letter to The Corinthians. This phenomenon has been called by some “Universal Reconciliation” (I Corinthians 15:22). It holds to the notion that God is ultimately able to **save** every human being. This concept is **so important** in its overall implications, that you must carefully evaluate the possibilities. In this investigative process, you will see that Christ taught everyone will be **saved**, regardless of what you might have previously heard or thought about this provocative subject. To begin this study, it is important to notice most of all, the following words that were uttered by Jesus. It is

a topic that eventually leads to the subject of forgiveness on an eternal basis:

Matthew 12:31-32 “³¹Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men. ³²And whosoever speaketh a word against the Son of man, it shall be forgiven him: but whosoever speaketh against the Holy Ghost, it shall not be forgiven him, neither in this world, neither in the world to come.”

Jesus Himself states, “**there can be no forgiveness when a person sins against God’s Holy Spirit.**” Once an individual has received God’s Holy Spirit and finds out how they should live and if they refuse to follow God’s Holy Spirit – they will **not** be forgiven in this **life** – or in **the life** to come. Thus it seems that not everyone will be **saved**. Furthermore, this instruction does not exclude some Christians who have failed this test. There is an additional warning that is added to those frightening words just quoted:

Hebrews 10:26-27 ²⁶For if we sin willfully after that we have received the knowledge of the truth, there remaineth no more sacrifice for sins, ²⁷But a certain fearful looking for of judgment and fiery indignation, which shall devour the adversaries.

What does it mean? How can anyone, such as this, ever be **saved**? Going one step further in setting the conditions for this, Paul states the following:

I Corinthians 6:9-10 ⁹Know ye not that the

unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind,¹⁰ Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God.

This is very serious, considering the consequence appears to be on an eternal basis. What will these people do? Will they be lost forever? Or is there some means whereby they may become ultimately saved? Before considering the implications of that suggestion, you need to probe the words of Christ further:

Luke 12:46 The lord of that servant will come in a day when he looketh not for him, and at an hour when he is not aware, and will cut him in sunder, and will appoint him his portion with the unbelievers.

Another **stern warning** about the serious consequences of going against “**the will**” of God. As a result, there are those who will **not be forgiven for their sins now – or in the world to come.** Those who don’t repent **will not** be forgiven. Jesus explained how those Christians who are **not** constantly watching for The Return of Christ, will also be considered as “**unbelievers.**” Clearly, there are those who will not be forgiven their sins. Christians, who will be classed as unbelievers in The Time of Judgment, **will be burned up** along with the wicked. Therefore, by all appearances, **Christians can lose their salvation.** IF THIS IS SO – **HOW CAN EVERYONE BE SAVED?** To answer this question, you need to know that God, The Father, gave Christ two basic responsibilities. **First**, and foremost, **Jesus is The Savior and Redeemer.** **Secondly**, Christ’s responsibility is to be The **Judge**

of all mankind. Not very much has been written about this second responsibility. These are two different roles, which Jesus Christ must **fulfill**.

The Unforgiven

God's Holy Days only serve as a shadow or a picture, of what will come in the future (Colossians 2:16-17). The Holy Day called The Last Great Day of The Feast, Jesus stood up and cried out, saying, "**If any man thirst, let him come unto me, and drink**" (John 7:37). This text has been associated with "**the waters of life**" (See Isaiah 12:3 and Isaiah 55:1).

Notice further what Jesus said, "...**out of his belly** [Greek: 'innermost being'] **shall flow rivers of living water**" (John 7:38). What is this **water of life**? Jesus revealed that in The Last Great Day of The Feast, God's Holy Spirit will be made available at that time, **TO EVERYONE** (John 7:38-39). These are "**the living waters**." When does this occur?

The Bible shows how The Holy Days reveal God's **plans for the future**. The last Holy Day foreshadows God's earthly **purpose** at the end time when every aspect will be brought into **fulfillment**. This corresponds to the time when Jesus foretold that The Holy Spirit will be made available to everyone (Revelation 22:1-2).

This is the basic reason why it can be stated that, "**...at the name of Jesus every knee should bow... And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of God the Father**" (Philippians 2:10-11). It does not say they unwillingly bowed their knees, but rather the text shows a willing admission of Lordship over them. There is no knee, nor will, that is too strong for God to bring them into willing submission to His "**will**."

Jubilee Year

The Jubilee Year is the one Holy Day, which **lasts a full year**. The Jubilee comes every **fifty years**. The basis for it is the fulfillment of “The Seven Land Sabbaths.” Israel was to count seven times or seven sets of years (forty-nine years) and then **The Fiftieth Year** becomes The Year of Jubilee (Leviticus 25:8-9). This was a unique period. It was designated to be the time of release from servitude and release from debt. In like manner, Christ **redeems the church** (everyone) before The Jubilee, which is symbolized by The Wedding Feast.

It is stated that everyone must return to his own family land or his own **inheritance** (Leviticus 25:10). If the person or the family land has been sold, then the land must be returned to the original owners. This was the land that God had given to The Israelites as an “**inheritance**.” So The Jubilee was The Year of Liberty; when all debts (sins) were forgiven (Leviticus 25:11-16). This is amazing typology – especially when compared to The Ministry of Jesus. This Holy Year had a strong theme of “**redemption**.” Consider the example concerning Naomi’s land. Her husband had died, and Boaz was buying it back into the family in order to continue Naomi’s husband’s **inheritance**. This was **before** a Jubilee Year began, when all debts would have been released.

Boaz was **the redeemer** of the land – just as Christ will **redeem** you before The Jubilee (The Wedding Feast of Christ, The Groom). Jesus is The Husband of The Bride (**the church**) and Christ **redeems** everyone before The Jubilee, now known as The Wedding Feast. When Jesus **returns** to conduct The Wedding Feast, He says that many are called to **this feast** – **but few are chosen** (can attend) (Matthew 22:14). Who is left out? To answer that question, read Romans 2:25-29:

Romans 2:25-29 ²⁵For circumcision verily profiteth, if thou keep the law: but if thou be a breaker of the law, thy circumcision is made uncircumcision. ²⁶Therefore if the uncircumcision keep the righteousness of the law, shall not his uncircumcision be counted for circumcision? ²⁷And shall not uncircumcision which is by nature, if it fulfil the law, judge thee, who by the letter and circumcision dost transgress the law? ²⁸For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; neither is that circumcision, which is outward in the flesh: ²⁹But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God.

Paul said that only those who are circumcised in the heart are considered to be true Jews or The Bride of Christ (Romans 2:25-29). These are the ones who will attend The Wedding Feast. Paul explained that a circumcised Jew (one born of a Jew) doesn't automatically make that person a Christian. It is something much more. You must have a change of heart so you can inherit The Abrahamic Promise (made to Israel). This is because, "...**circumcision is that of the heart...**" (Romans 2:29).

So, spiritual Jews must have experienced a change of heart (Romans 2:26-29). If a person isn't converted by having a change of heart, they will not be forgiven their debts or sins. They will still be a Gentile in the spiritual sense and will not become part of the promise made to Abraham (Galatians 3:29).

Leviticus 25:44-46 ⁴⁴Both thy bondmen, and thy bondmaids, which thou shalt have, shall be of the

heathen that are round about you; of them shall ye buy bondmen and bondmaids. ⁴⁵Moreover of the children of the strangers that do sojourn among you, of them shall ye buy, and of their families that are with you, which they begat in your land: and they shall be your possession. ⁴⁶And ye shall take them as an inheritance for your children after you, to inherit them for a possession; they shall be your bondmen for ever: but over your brethren the children of Israel, ye shall not rule one over another with rigour.

The only people or land, which is not released or forgiven from their debts, will be the heathen and the heathen's land. Those who are unconverted and have not become Christians are, therefore, still uncircumcised in heart and will remain Gentiles or heathens – and they may even be in slavery (Leviticus 25:44-46). The definition for “Gentile” is “one cut off from God.” Now for the dichotomy. It will only be those people, at the end time, who are converted Christians, who will qualify under grace for The Wedding Feast (The Jubilee). Those who reject God's Holy Spirit will not be forgiven when Christ becomes The Judge. Even then, Jesus will offer “the healing waters” of God's Holy Spirit to those who are not yet forgiven. This corresponds to The Last Great Day, which is depicted in The Holy Day (Holy Year) called The Jubilee. Now comes The Judgment (Revelation 20:12-15).

Two Resurrections

Jesus proclaimed that there will be **two resurrections** (John 5:25-29). One of these two resurrections is quite different from the other. One concerns the **righteous** and the other is reserved for **all the rest** of those who have ever lived on this earth. **There**

is one other difference between “the two resurrections” and that is “the span of time” that elapses over “the thousand-year period.” Jesus Christ foretold a future time. He said there will be an hour when **the dead** will hear **His voice**, and literally **come back to life** (John 5:25). Jesus said not to marvel at this **first resurrection**, for the hour is coming when **all in their graves will hear His voice and be resurrected** (John 5:28-29). These two verses need to be carefully discerned. This can be done by carefully comparing these texts with other **scriptural** texts.

The bottom line is that **this resurrection** will be the **final or second resurrection** of everyone. It will contain **two types of people** (John 5:29). When the remainder of the dead are resurrected, some will be resurrected to **life** – literally **saved**. The others will be resurrected to damnation (an English term). The English word, “damnation” is a poor translation. The Greek means “a time of crisis” (“krisis”) or “judgment.” In this **second resurrection**, some will be given **eternal life**, while others will be **sentenced or judged**. The judged group will come before Christ, and He will be their Judge (John 5:30). This means that The Time of Redemption, which is to be **bought back**, “**is now over.**” These people will **not** be **saved** by **The Sacrifice of Christ as The Slain Lamb or The Savior**. Those who are “**unsaved**” – not covered by The Blood of Christ, will be sentenced for their sins. These are the ones who rejected God’s Holy Spirit – so they are **not** forgiven (Matthew 12:31-32).

The Last Farthing

This is The Judgment or time of crisis, for those who are “**not saved.**” Listen to Christ’s own explanation of this critical time:

Matthew 25:31-34 ³¹**When the Son of man shall**

come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory: ³²And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats: ³³And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. ³⁴Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world...

All this information was presented by Jesus to The Apostles in The Olivet Prophecy. Adding to the above texts, you read that The King said:

Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels (Matthew 25:41).

This is The Time of Judgment! Now, Christ is The Judge and **not** The Savior. He has already performed His job as Your Savior. Now, His job will begin and be accomplished as a Judge.

The Sentence

Those “not **saved**” (goats) are thrown into The Lake of Fire. No forgiveness is granted, as their sentence must be carried out. How long do they stay in The Lake of Fire? Consider the following:

Matthew 5:20-26 ²⁰For I say unto you, That except your righteousness shall exceed the righteousness of the scribes and Pharisees, ye shall in no case enter

into the kingdom of heaven. ²¹Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not kill; and whosoever shall kill shall be in danger of the judgment: ²²But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire. ²³Therefore if thou bring thy gift to the altar, and there rememberest that thy brother hath ought against thee; ²⁴Leave there thy gift before the altar, and go thy way; first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift. ²⁵Agree with thine adversary quickly, whiles thou art in the way with him; lest at any time the adversary deliver thee to the judge, and the judge deliver thee to the officer, and thou be cast into prison. ²⁶Verily I say unto thee, Thou shalt by no means come out thence, till thou hast paid the uttermost farthing.

Jesus said that each individual should agree with his adversary quickly while they are still able. You should settle out of court and admit you are guilty and repent. If not, the adversary (sins or debts) will deliver you to The Judge and then The Judge will deliver you to the officer and finally, you will be cast into prison (Matthew 5:20-26). Jesus said, “²⁶**Thou shalt by no means come out thence, till thou hast paid the uttermost farthing.**” No repentance is required or even allowed at that time. You are **not forgiven in this world or the world to come** (Matthew 12:31-32). You are going to burn in “**the fire**” **until all your sins or debts are paid in full**. Jesus plainly gives an example of a person going into debt, which signifies one's sins. This is exactly what

The Jubilee Holy Year is all about. Until all vestiges of basic human carnality are changed, no **debts** or **sins** will be forgiven **in this world or in the world to come**. Notice the more complete perspective in the following *New Testament* text:

Matthew 18:21-30 ²¹Then came Peter to him, and said, Lord, how oft shall my brother sin against me, and I forgive him? till seven times? ²²Jesus saith unto him, I say not unto thee, Until seven times: but, Until seventy times seven. ²³Therefore is the kingdom of heaven likened unto a certain king, which would take account of his servants. ²⁴And when he had begun to reckon, one was brought unto him, which owed him ten thousand talents. ²⁵But forasmuch as he had not to pay, his lord commanded him to be sold, and his wife, and children, and all that he had, and payment to be made. ²⁶The servant therefore fell down, and worshipped him, saying, Lord, have patience with me, and I will pay thee all. ²⁷Then the lord of that servant was moved with compassion, and loosed him, and forgave him the debt. ²⁸But the same servant went out, and found one of his fellow servants, which owed him an hundred pence: and he laid hands on him, and took him by the throat, saying, Pay me that thou owest. ²⁹And his fellow servant fell down at his feet, and besought him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay thee all. ³⁰And he would not: but went and cast him into prison, till he should pay the debt.

Jesus said that if you, yourself, are not forgiving all the individuals who owe you a debt (not forgiving others as your Father forgives

you), then you will go into prison – till you pay your own debt. There will be no release from jail. There will be no forgiveness or redemption. Christ, The Judge, has sentenced you to pay back all debts for all your sins. How can you possibly pay back your full debt? And, what and where is this prison?

The Debt Paid

The seriousness of this matter cannot be underestimated. How will these debts be paid? Paul begins to lay out the answer:

I Corinthians 15:54-57 ⁵⁴So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. ⁵⁵O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? ⁵⁶The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. ⁵⁷But thanks be to God, which giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ.

Paul said this corruption must put on incorruption and only then, will death be swallowed up in “victory” (I Corinthians 15:54-57). Your human flesh must go. Now, what is it that causes death? Paul said that sin causes death. Sin is defined by The Law. Therefore, how do you get rid of The Law and have no sin?

Romans 7:1-7 ¹Know ye not, brethren (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth? ²For the woman which hath an husband is bound by the law to her husband so long as he liveth; but if the husband be dead, she is loosed from the law of her

husband. ³So then if, while her husband liveth, she be married to another man, she shall be called an adulteress: but if her husband be dead, she is free from that law, so that she is no adulteress, though she be married to another man. ⁴Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another, even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God. ⁵For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to bring forth fruit unto death. ⁶But now we are delivered from the law, that being dead wherein we were held; that we should serve in newness of spirit, and not in the oldness of the letter. ⁷What shall we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. Nay, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, Thou shalt not covet.

Paul said that The Law has dominion over you as long as you are living in your human flesh (Romans 7:1). In essence, The Law has already killed Christians and so, they are dead to The Law (Romans 7:4). This is a different **form** of death from physical death. Therefore, Christians must put their human bodies to death and as a consequence, have no sin through Christ. Jesus has **redeemed (saved)** you from this body of death. You are **the saved** and have no more penalties to pay.

Penalty Of The Unforgiven

The **unforgiven** must still pay the penalty. What is that penalty? The **unforgiven** must stay in prison until all their human flesh is

gone. In other words, it was the flesh and the sins of the flesh, which was the problem in the first place. So this problem must be eliminated one way or the other. This is typified by **the last farthing or debt** that must be paid.

When Jesus spoke about His “**return**,” He said that those Christians who knew exactly what God wanted them to do **and didn't do it**, would be beaten with **many** stripes (Luke 12:47-49). They have a large debt to pay, therefore, have **a big penalty**. Those who didn't know or didn't understand, would be beaten with **fewer** stripes. This is a smaller penalty – but still “**a penalty**.”

The duration of time in prison is determined by how much of God's **truth** you understood. The more you understood about God's **purpose**, the more you would be held responsible. The less you knew (perhaps, never knew at all) you would receive very little punishment. But God chastens every Son He loves (Hebrews 12:6).

Where is this prison where all debts have to be paid? The Lake of Fire (Gehenna) is **the prison**. Jesus said that He came to send fire on the earth (Luke 12:49). Christ is The Judge, so you will burn until your human nature and your body is destroyed by fire. After that, it is **only God who gives you “life.”** God gives “**the spirit in man**,” which is God's “life giving energy.” At death, this **life energy** goes back to God who originally gave it (I Corinthians 2:12 and Job 27:3).

Paul told The Corinthians to deliver the fornicator in **the church** over to Satan (I Corinthians 5:5). Why? This was so the fornicator's “**spirit**” could be **saved** in The Day of Our Lord Jesus.

I Corinthians 15:53-54 ⁵³**For this corruptible must**

put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality. ⁵⁴So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality, then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory.

God is concerned that “the spirit in man” (I Corinthians 2:11), which He had given to everyone at birth, is to be preserved with a right heart. Your human flesh must go, along with all its lusts. This is accomplished by becoming a Christian. Either that, or Jesus Christ, The Judge, will condemn you to hell (Gehenna) – to be certain that all the flesh is destroyed. The flesh is the basic underlying cause of sin.

Once the flesh is burned up, “**the spirit**” which was given by God, will be “**saved**” and given a new incorruptible body. Remember, this “**spirit**” is not you. It is God’s **life giving energy**. You are completely **dead and gone** (I Corinthians 15:53). Then, “**Death is swallowed up in victory**” (I Corinthians 15:54). There is no more death. This means that only “life” remains. Christians, as well as all the unbelievers, can lose their **salvation** and be burned up in hell (Gehenna) (Luke 12:46). “**But everyone will be ultimately saved by “the fire,” which is the great penalty for sinning.**”

Revelation 20:14-15 ¹⁴And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. ¹⁵And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

When Death Is Destroyed

Death is eventually destroyed in The Lake of Fire (Revelation

20:14-15). The second death is literally **the end of death**. After that, **no one is dead. All are alive**. The Christians will be **saved** by Jesus Christ, The Redeemer and The Savior. Those **unforgiven** will be **saved** by “**fire**.” All will be **saved** and God will become ...**all and in all** (I Corinthians 15:28). Death will be swallowed up in “**victory**” (I Corinthians 15:54-55).

Matthew 5:19 Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least commandments, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven.

In The Kingdom of God, Jesus said that those **who didn't believe in having God's Ten Commandments written in their hearts will be called “the least” in “the kingdom”** (Matthew 5:19), but notice, they will still be in God's “**kingdom**.”

Revelations 22:14-15 ¹⁴Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates into the city. ¹⁵For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolators, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie.

At the time of The New Kingdom, with **the new heaven and the new earth**, only those who **have kept God's Ten Commandments in their hearts** (Romans 13:10), will be able to enter The New Jerusalem and partake of The Tree of Life. Those excluded (until they learn to have “*agàpè*” or “*love*” for others) will be placed outside of “**the city**” (Revelation 22:14-15). So, Chris-

tians can lose their **salvation** by rejecting or quenching God's Holy Spirit. Even if you must burn by paying the last farthing for your sins and your rebellious nature, in the end, you and everyone else regardless of the total sum of their sins, will be **saved**. **Everyone is ultimately "saved."**

CHAPTER 11

REAL REPENTANCE

What does “real repentance” have to do with “salvation?” “Real repentance” is one of the most “spiritually” significant subjects you must fully investigate. What does it mean to repent? And what does baptism have to do with it? At times, you may think you should be re-baptized. Why do many Christians go through this experience? Let *The Bible* explain what “true repentance” is.

Subject Of Repentance

When dealing with the subject of **repentance**, there is no better place to begin than with the statements made by John. This was just prior to when he baptized Jesus in The Jordan River:

Matthew 3:7-12 ⁷But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come? ⁸Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance: ⁹And think not to say within yourselves, We have Abraham to our father: for I say unto you, that God is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham. ¹⁰And now also the axe is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. ¹¹I indeed baptize you with

water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you with the Holy Ghost, and with fire: ¹²Whose fan is in his hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor, and gather his wheat into the garner; but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.

John, The Baptist discusses the importance of **repentance** with very significant **scriptural lessons**. Notice the power of his introductory statement, “**But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come**” (Verse 7). John did not mince words. This wrath is something that most have never understood.

Fruits Of Repentance

What wrath is John talking about? It was the **impending doom** for that society. This would be the eventual destruction brought about by Rome in 66-70 A.D. That is why John said, “...⁸**Bring forth therefore fruits meet [acceptable] for repentance...**” He revealed that **trouble** was coming. Now the question is, what was wrong with The Pharisees and Sadducees which made it impossible for John to baptize them? Many bypass this question, figuring the problem with these top religious figures was that they were all steeped in their traditions, along with being self-righteous about it. But that is **only an assumption**. It is not the answer to the question.

The real situation was that John found himself in a position where he was attempting to bring The Pharisees and Sadducees to a deeper understanding of the significance of their actions. This

had to be done before they were baptized. So, John challenged them with the words:

Matthew 3:9 And think not to say within yourselves [notice what The Pharisees and Sadducees say], we have Abraham to our father: for I say unto you, that God is able of these stones to raise up children unto Abraham.

John tells these prominent religious figures that they were of an unrepentant mind. They knew they were the children of Abraham, so consequently, they felt they already had the promises guaranteed to them. They reasoned, that since they already had the promises, why would they need to repent (change their ways)? In their own estimation, they didn't see the need to repent so they didn't change their ways. That was the problem. Furthermore, when you see no reason to repent, you don't see (the need for) Christ, The Messiah. So, they had blinded themselves from the truth.

Focus On The Messiah

The entire *Old Testament* focuses upon The Messiah. The Purpose of *The Old Testament* was to provide the history of the prophecies about The Messiah. That was the whole reason for *The Old Testament*. A more full explanation about The Law (“nomas,” in Greek) is given in Hebrews 10:1. It is *The Torah*, or *The First Five Books of The Old Testament*, which tells “**the story**” about The Messiah. The religious leaders had studied *The Scriptures*, and yet they could not understand the underlying theme behind “**the story**” being told. In other words, they couldn't see Christ or God. First, they needed to understand there was an important reason for them to repent. They had to show fruit or evidence that

was “**meet for repentance.**” Notice how *The Scripture* states, “¹⁰**And now also the ax is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire.**” If your “**life**” is not operating on the basis that God expects, then you will be burned up.

Different Baptisms

What is the difference between John's baptism and Christ's baptism? John said, “**I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance...**” (Matthew 3:11). Consider that the word “**repentance**” means nothing more than “a change of mind.” The Greek word for “**repentance**” is “metanoia” (Strong's #3341). What is a “metastasis” in medical terms? It means “a change of state.” It means “something changing;” so “metanoia” is “the metastasis” of something. It refers to something that is changing. “Metanoia” in the lexicon means “to repent,” “a change” or “alteration of mind.” **So something happens to your mind when you “repent.”** It concerns something which wasn't there before. Now, to investigate the root, “metaneo” which means “to repent, with regret,” accompanied by “a true change of heart.” The word “repent” means “a change of your mind” about how you think.” From this point on, you see things only from God's **mind**. This is God's perspective.

A World View

If you were to study cosmology (the universe), you would find that scientists perceive the world as a “paradigm.” A “paradigm” means “the way” that you, as an individual “see the world.” It is how you believe something. It is your point of view. If you view it from the standpoint of a deity, then, you believe there has to be a God. From there, you can believe God. Then, it can be

said that everything about the universe, is what you learned from God. It is a clear distinction. If you are an atheist, what you study tends to support how you perceive things. This leads to what you believe. Therefore, you come to the conclusion that there is no God. Then, you have those individuals in the middle who are “the agnostics.” They are not sure which way they should think. They doubt. Hence, they are confused, whether they are sincere in this or not.

So being **repentant** is nothing more than when your mind changes regarding how you perceive things. One person chooses to believe in God. That is a “paradigm.” It is their “viewpoint.” From another perspective, when an individual murders another person, the murderer’s family, although condemning the murder, may try to save the family member who committed the crime. If you come from the family of the murdered victim, you think in reference to the killer. You feel the murderer should get the electric chair. If you are the father or mother of the one who did the killing, all you can think about is how you can help save your child. Both have a different point of view. They look at the issue from their own humanity-based viewpoint. So what would they think when they read *The Bible*?

Usually, these people will study *The Bible* from the standpoint of their own preconceived ideas – much of which they had for many years from the past. A truly repentant person believes he is a sinner and by being a sinner has cut himself off from God.

What Is Carnality?

What creates human nature? Moreover, what is carnality? The word “carnal” translates the Greek word “sarx” which means “flesh.” It means “your reactions are like that of an animal.” An

animal does not think but only responds to emotional stimuli and instinct. In like manner, a carnal person thinks in terms of self-survival. In this mode, you would be continually thinking of protecting **the self**, at all costs. Consequently, this kind of mind-set was purposely made corruptible by God. It is that kind of thinking that causes human nature.

As a human being with this characteristic “deeply ingrained,” it is not until you experience a change of mind and see things differently – that you can view these external stimuli from a standpoint of the corruptibility of your own human mind. This takes a truthful admission from within – from the human heart. One must come to recognize a basic level of internal human deceitfulness, just as you read, “**The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it**” (Jeremiah 17:9)? Now, do you understand why John **didn't** baptize The Sadducees and Pharisees? They literally saw no need for God, so they saw no need to change their minds. As far as they were concerned, they had already received “**the promise**” through Abraham. They were Abraham's children and in their minds, it was “case closed.” As a result, their minds remained closed. This is why John had to tell these scribes and Pharisees that God could raise up children to Abraham from pebbles or stones. The Law they received was from *The Old Covenant*, which literally, blinded them. They thought that the keeping of The Law pleased God. When Moses came down from the mountain, he wore the vail. This obscured his face. In the same vein, these religious leaders could not see God or understand what was taking place. John said, “**I indeed baptize.**” The word “baptize” merely means to “purify” or “cleanse.” But this idea related to “necros” – or “dead.” In other words, the implication is that one is to be “**cleansed by death.**” When baptized, you are allowing your own body to be put to death. John said, “**I indeed baptize you with water unto repentance...**” John's baptism brings

you to the place of being willing to change your mind in how you perceive things. This is because you know that you are sinful. In short, you must see things from God's point of view and not from your human nature's point of view. In this case, the two words "human nature" literally means, "the needs and deeds of the human body." Going further in this line of thought, you must consider reproduction, food, life, preservation and pain. God has produced all these elements in you, because you are temporary. After baptism, you are drawn to seek totally different viewpoints. Christ said:

²¹From within, out of the heart of men, proceed evil thoughts, adulteries, fornications, murders. ²²Thefts, covetousness, wickedness, deceit, lasciviousness, an evil eye, blasphemy, pride, foolishness: ²³All these evil things come from within, and defile the man (Mark 7:21-23).

Jesus knew as long as you were seeing things from a human perspective, **you would, in most cases, come to the wrong conclusions.** This is because of the human trait of placing self-preservation first.

Separating Repentance And Baptism

John separates the two subjects of **repentance** and **baptism**. John proclaims, "...**but he [Christ] that cometh after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he shall baptize you...**" (Matthew 3:11). The question is, "Should you put your human flesh to death because you are a sinner?" However, He is still going to baptize you – but with what? It will be, "...**with the Holy Ghost and...**" Through John, you could never receive God's Holy Spirit. Notice, that if you didn't accept the baptism of

The Holy Spirit through the coming Messiah – then what would you get baptized with? John's answer to that question was, “**and with fire...**” In other words, either your heart will change from the baptism of The Holy Spirit or else your heart will change from **the purification by fire**. Then John states, “...¹²**Whose fan is in his [Christ's] hand, and he will thoroughly purge his floor**” [the earth and specifically Judaea]. John follows up on this with, “...¹²**and [He shall] gather his wheat into the garner; but he will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.**” This is The Lake of Fire.

First of all, this pronouncement refers to the eventual destruction of Judaea in 70 A.D. Then, at the very end of God's **plan** on earth, will come the time when God comes down to burn the earth, as declared in II Peter 3:7, 10, 12.

The Ethiopian Eunuch

True repentance converts your mind and heart. You will view things, not as a human being, but more as God would see it. The only way this can be done is by means of The Baptism of The Holy Spirit. Consider the vital story about The Ethiopian Eunuch:

Acts 8:26-39 ²⁶And the angel of the Lord spake unto Philip, saying, Arise, and go toward the south unto the way that goeth down from Jerusalem unto Gaza, which is desert. ²⁷And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship, ²⁸Was returning, and sitting in his chariot read Esaias the prophet. ²⁹Then the spirit said unto Philip, Go

near, and join thyself to this chariot. ³⁰And Philip ran thither to him, and heard him read the prophet Esaias, and said, Understandest thou what thou readest? ³¹And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him. ³²The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth: ³³In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation? For his life is taken from the earth. ³⁴And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee, of whom speaketh the prophet this? of himself, or of some other man? ³⁵Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him Jesus. ³⁶And as they went on their way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, here is water; what doth hinder me to be baptized? ³⁷And Philip said, If thou believest with all thine heart, thou mayest. And he answered and said I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. ³⁸And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him. ³⁹And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip, that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing.

How much training did **the eunuch** have before he was baptized? He only had a **chariot ride**, a brief study period and then he was baptized. **Repentance** results from a **continual state of growth**.

A person must always have a **mind of repentance**, in order to **grow spiritually**. When you grow **spiritually**, your mind will perceive everything from a deeper, richer viewpoint.

Angel Of The Lord

Your viewpoint (paradigm) will constantly change to be in line with what God thinks. If you don't feed your mind, it will die. Now, back to the beginning of the story about **the eunuch**, “²⁶**And the angel of the Lord spake unto Philip...**²⁷**And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure [perhaps a Chief Financial Officer] and had come to Jerusalem for to worship.**” Up to this point, **the eunuch** knew the place to worship was at **the temple** in Jerusalem. He had the knowledge about Israel – which was generally what The Jews knew. He (the eunuch), “²⁸**Was returning, and sitting in his chariot [and] read Esaias the prophet.** ²⁹**Then the spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.**”

Philip surely had to run fast. How fast was that chariot going? **The eunuch** was reading, so he may have not been going too fast or it would have been too bumpy. “³⁰**And Philip ran thither to him, and heard him read the prophet Esaias, and said, Understandest thou what thou readest?**” This could be compared to a Bible-study workshop as **the eunuch** asked Philip to answer a question, “³¹**And he said, How can I, except some man should guide me? And he desired Philip that he would come up and sit with him.**”

This story goes hand-in-hand with Romans 10, where it tells how wonderful it is to bring good tidings of **the good things to**

come (Verses 13-15). God uses **preaching** to help individuals understand **the truth**. Now, look at what Philip told **the eunuch**, “³²**The place of the scripture which he read was this, He was led as a sheep to the slaughter; and like a lamb dumb before his shearer, so opened he not his mouth: ³³In his humiliation his judgment was taken away: and who shall declare his generation for his life is taken from the earth.**”

This message had a dramatic effect on **the eunuch**, “³⁴**And the eunuch answered Philip, and said, I pray thee [What is Esaias saying]? of whom speaketh the prophet this? Of himself or of some other man?**” With these words, **the eunuch** revealed how open-minded he was. It was virtually an invitation for Philip to expound **the truth** to him. This opened the door for Philip’s full exposition to **the eunuch**, “³⁵**Then Philip opened his mouth, and began at the same scripture, and preached unto him [what]? Jesus. ³⁶And as they went on their way, they came unto a certain water: and the eunuch said, See, here is water; what doth hinder me to be baptized? ³⁷And Philip said if thou believest with all thine heart...**” The words, “With all your heart,” meant for **the eunuch** to really **repent!**

Organ Of Understanding

This story is going to become more significant when you proceed further into *The Scriptures*. Realize that the mind is an “organ of understanding.” It is the part of your brain that has understanding. But the heart goes beyond understanding. The heart gets down to the desire – or the motivation of the very feelings of the person – which makes the person decide what things they do and how they do them.

When you love someone, you are always more willing to forgive

them when they do something wrong. If you don't love somebody, you are more willing to condemn them – or see them as **lesser**. In other words, the one who tends to condemn others, is angry because someone did them wrong. When one loves somebody, even though that person sinned against someone, they will be more inclined to forgive. The action may have been the same, but it was with a different state of mind. It is motivated by what? It is the heart. Do you see the difference? Now it is time to understand **repentance**.

Look at what **the eunuch** did, ³⁸**And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.** ³⁹**And when they were come up out of the water, the Spirit of the Lord caught away Philip [Did something tell him to leave or was it telepathy]? that the eunuch saw him no more: and he went on his way rejoicing.**” What happened to The Ethiopian? He went back to Ethiopia and probably returned to his original business.

In this same context, realize that it was you, reading *The Bible* or another person preaching from *The Bible*, that brought you to the awareness of *The Gospel* – about the need for Jesus Christ and the forgiveness of sin. Once the baptism of The Holy Spirit is received, you have need that **no man teaches you**. This is because, “...ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth...” (I John 2:27). You now have a part of God “**in you**.” In your **new mind**, you will be viewing everything from God's standpoint. Repentance has to do with the mind that is not viewing everything from a human point of view. If you have The Spirit of *Christ “In You”* then, you will accept **The Word** of God when it is read to you – or when you study *The Scriptures*. If you are not **growing spiritually**, but think you are secure in your status before God, then you

are like The Pharisees and Sadducees. You will **not** be growing. You may be busy trying to prove that *The Bible* agrees with what you already believe in your heart.

On the other hand, a Christian doesn't care about being "**right**," because he is more interested in wanting to know God's "**will**." Jesus said, "**I seek not mine own will, [rather I seek] but [what]? the will of the Father...**" (John 5:30).

The Story About Apollos

A man by the name of Apollos was a mighty preacher of **the truth**. In *The Book of Acts*, you run across a description of his teaching ability:

Acts 18:24-28 ²⁴And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria, an eloquent man and mighty in the scriptures, came to Ephesus. ²⁵This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spake and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing only the baptism of John. ²⁶And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto them, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly. ²⁷And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia, the brethren wrote, exhorting the disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace: ²⁸For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publicly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.

Apollos was mighty in *The Scriptures* and was already a preacher

—even before he had God's **Spirit**. He would go to the synagogues to contend with opposing viewpoints and to convince the leaders of each synagogue. Without knowing Jesus, God was already using Apollos as a powerful preacher. You saw the introduction to Apollos in Acts, "²⁴**And a certain Jew named Apollos, born at Alexandria [Egypt] an eloquent man and mighty in the scriptures.**" Apollos had studied diligently and understood much about what *The Scriptures* meant. This man is someone that each and every person should be emulating, by studying to the same degree. You should be mighty in *The Scriptures*, because it is God's "word." Now you know that Apollos, "...came to Ephesus. ²⁵**This man was instructed in the way of the Lord; and being fervent in the spirit, he spake and taught diligently the things of the Lord, knowing [what]? only the baptism of John.**" He didn't know about Jesus and The Holy Spirit. He was only baptized in The Baptism of John, which was to repent and put to death all the negative pulls of the human flesh.

That is all Apollos knew. But because he was mighty in *The Scriptures*, he was already preaching. He had **the gift** of "communication skills." You read, "²⁶**And he began to speak boldly in the synagogue: whom when Aquila and Priscilla had heard, they took him unto them, and expounded unto him the way of God more perfectly.**" This shows that he knew **the repentance** of John. Here is a critical observation. **When you are "repentant," you are "teachable."** Resistance to being taught disappears. You still remain fervent in *The Scriptures* since you are still teachable.

John's Baptism

The text states, "²⁷**And when he was disposed to pass into Achaia [Southern Greece], the brethren wrote, exhorting the**

disciples to receive him: who, when he was come, helped them much which had believed through grace: ²⁸For he mightily convinced the Jews, and that publickly, shewing by the scriptures that Jesus was Christ.” In other words, the entire *Old Testament* is telling you, in one form or another, about Jesus Christ, The Messiah:

Acts 19:1-6 ¹And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples, ²He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed? And they said unto him, We have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost. ³And he said unto them, Unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism. ⁴Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus. ⁵When they heard this they were baptized in the name of the Lord Jesus. ⁶And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.

Consider this perspective, “¹And it came to pass, that, while Apollos was at Corinth, Paul having passed through the upper coasts came to Ephesus: and finding certain disciples, ²He said unto them, Have ye received the Holy Ghost since ye believed?” This means that you can believe and yet, not have received God’s Holy Spirit. The following is the reaction of these people, “And they said unto him, we have not so much as heard whether there be any Holy Ghost.” They didn’t understand The

Baptism of Christ by The Holy Spirit.

Then Paul asked, “**3And he said unto them, unto what then were ye baptized? And they said, Unto John’s baptism. 4Then said Paul, John verily baptized with the baptism of repentance, saying unto the people, that they should believe on him which should come after him, that is, on Christ Jesus.**” That is as much as they understood.

“**5When they heard this, they were baptized.**” This means they were baptized again, only this time, “...**in the name of [by the authority of] the Lord Jesus. 6And when Paul had laid his hands upon them, the Holy Ghost came on them; and they spake with tongues, and prophesied.**”

These were Gentiles, so it was revealed that they received The Holy Spirit by these signs. The mind can be changed only to a certain extent without God’s Holy Spirit. It can’t go any further on its own. If you were baptized with The Baptism of John, which meant you saw yourself as a sinner, then you would put your flesh to death under the water. These people didn’t know about God’s **Spirit** or **power** until they were baptized in Jesus and received **the gift** of The Holy Spirit.

Who Helps You?

When these people received God’s Holy Spirit, they no longer needed any man to **help** them **grow spiritually** (I John 2:27). It meant that if you were sent to The Isle of Patmos, all by yourself with God’s **Spirit**, you would still be able to **grow spiritually** under those conditions of privation. In other words, **repentance** is the process that begins a **continual** change – that is constantly understanding God and Christ from a **biblical** point of view. You

never stop growing and changing. You are always in a state of change – by putting your flesh to death. This is a significant difference.

Romans 2:4-5 ⁴Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance? ⁵But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God.

You need God's Holy Spirit to make a change in the mind. You need your mind to be renovated – or reformed. Repentance means that your whole way of thinking is changed. You stop seeking what you think is right. Jesus said, "If you try to **save your life**, you are going to lose it. If you lose your **life**, you are going to save it."

That is the difference. *The Books of Romans and Hebrews* are filled with **spiritual riches**, "⁴Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?"

God wants you to change. It is a part of His **nature** to have you change to perfection. Then consider the alternative, "⁵But after thy hardness and impenitent heart." This is when one speaks to a group of people and lo and behold someone gets offended. They are offended because they don't want to hear those words. And, they certainly don't want to change their ways. They are not ready for major change.

Words can't do anything to you. But, according to your mind, it

doesn't want to accept a new or different point of view even if it is **the truth**. In other words, their very inner position, their desire, their will and their intent is to feel right in their own eyes. Solomon said, "**There is a way which seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof are the ways of death**" (Proverbs 14:12).

To be right in your own eyes is to think you know **the truth** and are already acting upon it. These are people who are satisfied with the knowledge they already have.

It sounds just like Job's problem. Job was **righteous** until he realized that only God could do everything. Job was going to hold onto his own **righteousness**. In like manner, Moses told The Pharisees and Sadducees that they would receive their **righteousness** from The Law (Deuteronomy 6:25). But it was not God's **righteousness**

The Letter And The Spirit

Are you beginning to see the problem between The Letter and The Spirit? If you reside in The Letter, then it is your own self-righteousness. You are making the decision about what is "**right**" and "**wrong**." The Law is telling you what is "**right**" and what is "**wrong**." When a righteous man came to Christ and said, "... **Good Master, what good thing shall I do, that I may have eternal life**" (Matthew 19:16)? [The first thing Christ said to him was], "...¹⁷**Why callest thou me good? ...there is none good but one, that is, God?**" The only "**One**" who can be described as "**good**" or "**righteous**" is God. Anything you consider to be **right** or anything you think is the way it should be is your **own** righteousness. It is just as Job had proclaimed about himself.

Your mind will not tell you **the truth** if your heart is corrupt or

you are not repentant. It would be impossible for you to have a logical mind. You have already read, “**5But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God.**” Because you are unrepentant, God will see to it that you are disciplined, so that eventually **you will be saved**.

When you feel someone is **good**, perhaps you should say that this person is a decent person. There are decent people, but there are, also, indecent individuals. There is not a single human being who is “**good**.” There are none. The culprit is not the mind, but the culprit is **the heart** and the heart is the seat and center of what motivates your desire as to how you want things to be.

In time, a person who is **growing spiritually** stops judging and instead, feels that he must check and recheck the facts. He needs to find out what **the truth** is. So don’t decide ahead of time because your heart says that you are **right**, no matter what. When someone calls you **ungodly** or a **heretic**, they don’t want to hear something in opposition to what they already believe. *The Bible* is so plain and so simple. It tells you about **the added law**, which was The Law of Moses with **the statutes** and **judgments added** (Malachi 4:4). That Law was only in force until Christ came. That is what your *Bible* states. You could say this a thousand times to a person who doesn’t want to believe the words of *The Bible* and they will not hear or understand, those **biblical words**.

The Law **was added** only until Christ came (Galatians 3:19). If you are honest, teachable and you want to know what God’s “**words**” are – then, it should be enough. You don’t need any other proof and yet, many will fight you, tooth and nail. There is a time when you must **shut up** because you are casting your pearls before swine.

Ephesians 4:22-23 ²²That ye put off concerning the former conversation [conduct] the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts; ²³And be renewed in the spirit of your mind...

This is what you are supposed to do, “²²**That ye put off concerning the former conversation** [conduct] **the old man.**” [This is the old man that you have buried] “...**which is corrupt...** ²³**And be renewed in the spirit of your mind...**” So the mind has not only an ability to reason, but there must be a godly **spiritual attitude** which allows your mind to be open to receive new true understanding.

This process will make you totally different. It will set you apart. You won't get **offended** easily. You won't become **upset** quickly because your understanding becomes more Godly. You won't be **blowing up** as often over small incidents. You will only be angry at sin and **not** getting into **disagreements**. Most people seldom get angry over sin. The person with whom you tend to get angry didn't shoot anyone, steal a million dollars or take away a neighbor's house. All that happened was that something was said which you didn't like. That is not **repentance**.

Going on, “²²**the old man, which is corrupt according to the deceitful lusts...**” What are the lusts? One of them is wanting to be “**right.**” Yet you are told, “²³**And be renewed in the spirit of your mind.**” Repentance is a constant renewal of your attitude in your mind.

Romans 8:7-8 ⁷Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be. ⁸So then they that are in the flesh cannot please God.

Romans 8:8 states emphatically that you can't please God.

Examine this additional section of text:

John 4:23-24 ²³But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him. ²⁴God is a Spirit, and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

Jesus told the Samaritan woman at the well, “²³**But the hour cometh and now is, when the true worshippers** [false worshippers exist also] **shall worship the Father in spirit** [you can't do it in The Letter] **and in truth...**” So, you must worship The Father, first, **spiritually**, and then secondly, in **truth**, “...**for the Father seeketh such to worship him.** ²⁴**God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must** [not could, not should, but must] **worship him in spirit and in truth.**”

This should be worship of God in “**spirit**” and not by **any human effort**. How do people get around it? First, the text says that God only seeks people to worship him in “**spirit.**” There is only **one way** that God wants you to worship Him. **You must worship Him in “spirit” and in “truth.”** It is just that plain and simple.

What Must Change?

Romans 10:8-10 ⁸But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach; ⁹That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God

hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved. ¹⁰For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

Look at these words, “**⁸But what saith it? The word is nigh thee, even in thy mouth, and in thy [what]? heart: that is, the word of faith, which we preach.**” Until your repentance – your actual change of mind progresses to the point that it replaces your previous desires and motivations. How strongly have you set your will in resisting God’s “**words?**” Unless your heart is changed, your mind is going to be corrupt, and you will not have experienced **true repentance.**

Daniel 12:9-10 ⁹And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. ¹⁰Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.

At **the end of time**, just before “**the four kingdoms**” are completed, **the new heavens** will exist with God’s **reign on earth**. You read, “**⁹And he said, Go thy way, Daniel: for the words are closed up and sealed till the time of the end. ¹⁰Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand**” (Daniel 12:9-10).

What must the wise individuals know about **the end-time**? Is this a prophetic event? Is **the temple** being rebuilt in Jerusalem? No, this has nothing to do with prophecy. What everyone in the religious world believes is usually in error. Repentance from error is

the key to understanding.

About The End-Time

Matthew 25:1-5 ¹Then shall the kingdom of heaven be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom. ²And five of them were wise and five were foolish. ³They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them: ⁴But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps. ⁵While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.

Read this same section of text with bracket comments, “¹**Then shall the kingdom of heaven** [this is the end-time] **be likened unto ten virgins, which took their lamps, and went forth to meet the bridegroom** [Christ]. ²**And five of them were wise and five were foolish.** ³**They that were foolish took their lamps, and took no oil with them:** [the unwise had no oil] ⁴**But the wise took oil in their vessels** [a residual supply] **with their lamps** [those with oil and those without oil] ⁵**While the bridegroom tarried, they all slumbered and slept.**”

Notice, both the unwise and the wise virgins are all asleep and don't know when The Bridegroom is **returning**. Daniel talks about those who are wise, which symbolizes the five virgins who are wise.

With regard to **the end-time** events, Daniel 12 does not apply to **the wise** who understand. In fact, they are wise because they do **not** know when He is coming back but act in a proper manner.

This is a little shocking, isn't it? It gets to be so simple. Instead,

so many people are thinking with their emotions and do not understand what God is telling them.

Luke 21:5-7 ⁵And as some spake of the temple, how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, he said, ⁶As for these things which ye behold, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down. ⁷And they asked him, saying, Master, but when shall these things be? and what sign will there be when these things shall come to pass?

This *Scripture* has been in *The Bible* for nearly 2000 years. Many today are sound asleep. This is one reason the author is purposely avoiding “**the whole prophecy explanation**” at this time, but will go into detail later.

Going on, “⁵And as some spake of the temple [what temple and what are they talking about]? **how it was adorned with goodly stones and gifts, he said, ⁶As for these things [Herod's temple] which ye behold, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.**”

Which temple is this? There is no temple in the future. So this prophecy relates to Herod's temple, “⁷And they asked him, saying, Master, but when shall these things be [Herod's temple destroyed] **and what sign will there be when these things shall come to pass?**” The reference here concerns Herod's temple:

Matthew 24:1-3 ¹And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple: and his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple. ²And

Jesus said unto them, See ye not all these things? verily I say unto you, There shall not be left here one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down. ³And as he sat upon the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?

Notice these words, “¹**And Jesus went out, and departed from the temple [Herod’s temple] and his disciples came to him for to shew him the buildings of the temple.**” This is a critical phrase, because it demands that each *Bible* student make a careful determination about which temple is being discussed. Now you must ask three vital questions:

Three Vital Questions

- 1 When was Herod’s temple destroyed?**
- 2 What is “the sign” of Christ’s coming?**
- 3 What was destroyed in 70 A.D.?**

Consider the following textual commentary as a prelude to understanding.

It provides the underlying basis for further study about **the end-time**:

Luke 21:24-28 ²⁴And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down

of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled. ²⁵And there shall be signs in the sun, and in the moon, and in the stars; and upon the earth distress of nations, with perplexity; the sea and the waves roaring; ²⁶Men's hearts failing them for fear, and for looking after those things which are coming on the earth: for the powers of heaven shall be shaken. ²⁷And then shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory. ²⁸And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh.

Earmark this verse as it is a critical **sign**. Everything prior to Verse 24 has already happened. “²⁴**And they shall fall by the edge of the sword**” Who is this? It concerns everything in Judea in 70 A.D. Let them who are in this city flee to the hills. It is talking about Jerusalem. Jesus is talking about **The Herodian Temple**.

Therefore, the reader should recognize that these things have already happened. “²⁴**And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: [The Jews will experience this] and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles**” [The Jews will disperse].” Ever since this time, this land has been in a state of turmoil and war. How long does this continue? It will be, “**until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.**”

That is the **only event that Christ can tell you about before His return**. Everything prior to this has already happened. And what is **the time of the trial of The Gentiles**? Paul tells you that it is the time when **God finishes calling all The Gentiles to “the truth.”** When is that? To determine the answer, you must ask, “What did Christ say?” “**No one knows the times or season, but**

only God, The Father.” Jesus didn’t know the full effects of His prophecy – or when He would be returning. Therefore, how can He tell you about His **return** when He didn’t know at that time?

Christ will return when God, The Father is finished **fulfilling** The Times of The Gentiles (whenever that is). The text says, “²⁷**And then** [see the signs and wonders after the time of the fulfillment of The Gentiles] **shall they see the Son of man coming in a cloud with power and great glory.** ²⁸**And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh.**” What things are these? It concerns those events that accompany His coming in “**the clouds.**” That is the only time. It is only identifying an anchor point which you can look for.

Signs To Anticipate

Look at all the various interpretations about Daniel that have been proposed. Many of them have been concocted for the most part. This state of confusion has turned The Word of God into a mish-mash that is completely false. Do you now understand why the ten virgins didn’t know the times? You still do not know. No one knows.

When will you be granted this knowledge? It will be when **lightning comes out of the east and the trumpet sounds and the heavens are shaken.** Then you will see who is coming. Matthew 25:6 states, “**And at midnight there was a cry made, Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.** The timing of this maximum event is, “**...at midnight** [when do they wake up from sleeping]? **There was a cry made** [the shout and the last trumpet]. **Behold, the bridegroom cometh; go ye out to meet him.**” Now the only difference between these two sets of five virgins – is

what? Consider that when He comes, no one is ready. No one is prepared because no one knows when He is coming. They cannot discern which season or which day this occurs – at midnight. Five did not have a sufficient supply of oil. The wise ones carried with them a residual supply of oil. They had an extra amount of God's Holy Spirit. Christ told The Christians they were supposed to be **the light of the world**. Therefore, the candle is not hid under a bushel but shines on a hill.

So what makes wise Christians understand **the end-time**, as opposed to the unwise Christians? **Their "light" is shining!** They are **"growing spiritually!"** This means you must **watch** and **pray** always so that you are ready (Luke 21:36). This is the formula for discerning the signs that inform you.

You cannot, ever stop being **repentant**. You cannot stop experiencing a change of mind. If you are among the wise, then you will always be growing. Then, everyone can see Christ **"in you,"** as The Light of The World. **Who is "the light of the world?" CHRIST IS.** That is how they will understand. It is a **"big difference."**

Hebrews 6:1 Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again the foundation of repentance from dead works, and of faith toward God...

Repentance is a **continual process**. It is a continuous change of mind. It is not by **spiritually growing** in "the letter." **No, it is not in "the letter" but in "the spirit."** Notice what you must repent from. **"Therefore leaving the principles of the doctrine of Christ, let us go on unto perfection; not laying again [what]? the foundation of repentance [what kind of repentance]? from dead works" [human works are dead works]."**

You cannot please God in the flesh (Romans 8:7). You must change your mind about anything **you** think is **the right way** to please God. Only **God** can reveal what is “right” and “good” for you to follow. It is **His righteousness**.

John 21:15-19 ¹⁵So when they had dined, Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord, thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my lambs. ¹⁶He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love thee. He saith unto him, Feed my sheep. ¹⁷He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest thou me? Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me? And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep. ¹⁸Verily, verily, I say unto thee, When thou wast young, thou girdest thyself, and walkedst whither thou wouldest: but when thou shalt be old, thou shalt stretch forth thy hands, and another shall gird thee, and carry thee whither thou wouldest not. ¹⁹This spake he, signifying by what death he should glorify God. And when he had spoken this, he saith unto him, **Follow me.**

The Apostle Peter did not understand this when he first repented. What you understand today, he had to learn. Christ finally told how he would learn it. After Jesus Christ was **resurrected**, He met with His Disciples, and got down to explaining what **real repentance** was. The account continues with, “¹⁵**So when they had**

dined, **Jesus saith to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest [agàpè] thou me more than these? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord, thou knowest that I [what?] love [philia] thee.**" Peter couldn't say the word "agàpè." He could only say "philia" which only expresses "human love." He couldn't convey God's deep love – "agàpè."

Degrees Of Love

What did Christ say to do, if you "agàpè" Him? He said, **"Feed my lambs [love your brother as yourself].** ¹⁶**He saith to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest [agàpè again] thou me? He saith unto him, Yea, Lord; thou knowest that I love [philia] thee.**" This is only "human love." Then afterward, Jesus spoke, **"He saith unto him, Feed my sheep."**

Finally, Jesus understood that Peter didn't get it – or if he did, he did not admit it. This is because he had boasted earlier that he would never leave Jesus – even if everyone else ran away. Finally, Jesus spoke the third time. ¹⁷**He saith unto him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, lovest [philia] thou me?"** Jesus went down a notch this time from "agàpè" love, to "philia" love. **"Peter was grieved because he said unto him the third time, Lovest thou me?"** That is exactly what Peter said. **"And he said unto him, Lord, thou knowest all things; thou knowest that I love [philia] thee. Jesus saith unto him, Feed my sheep."** Now, for an important point when Jesus prophesied to Peter, ¹⁸**Verily, verily, I say unto thee: When thou wast young, thou girdest thyself, and walkedst whither thou wouldest: [deciding by your own human decisions] but when thou shalt be old [Peter's time of death], thou shalt stretch forth thy hands [perhaps he was crucified upside down] and another shall gird thee and carry thee whither thou wouldest not."**

When does Peter finally get **real repentance**? When he was willing to give his very **life**. What has to go? Your life has to go just as Peter had to give his **life**. You are either going to let it go willingly or it is going to be burned out of you.

Mark 12:29-31 ²⁹And Jesus answered him, **The first of all the commandments is, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord: ³⁰And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this is the first commandment. ³¹And the second is like, namely this, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. There is none other commandment greater than these.**

When one of the lawyers asked Him what was The Greatest Commandment “²⁹**Jesus answered him, The first of all the commandments is, Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord: ³⁰And thou shalt [what?] “love [agàpè] the Lord...**” What did Christ ask Peter? Do you agàpè me? “**And thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all [all what?] thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind, and with all thy strength: this is the first commandment.**”

True Repentance

Complete and **true repentance** is a state of mind that is **true** and correct and will come upon you when you have an “agàpè” love for God. Are you so busy doing religious “**works**” to please God that you never have time to love him? If so, you have **never grown spiritually** to the place that your connection with God is a one-on-one relationship. He loved you first and now, you love him. If you were going to marry a woman and you were coming

down to the wedding party to meet your bride, what kind of virgin would you marry? Christ doesn't marry a bride who does not love him. To me, that is **bizarre**. It has a sense of humor about it. The wise virgins love Jesus because they have been **spiritually growing** in God's "**goodness**." It is because of Christ's "**love**" for you and what He "**IS**" that The Bride has made herself ready. The Bride now loves Christ with an "agapè" love – just as He loves her in the same way. Remember, He told the five **unwise** virgins that "**He never knew them**." They were too busy being religious – not **growing spiritually** and not in love with their God. That comes with complete "**repentance**." You may have started out wanting a **sugar daddy**. You must strip away the baloney. You want somebody who's rich? You want someone who's prosperous? You want somebody who can take care of you – keep you safe? That is called "**repentance – Stage One**." Christ is not marrying any one who wants to marry him for money. That may sound funny. But in reality, isn't that where it starts? When you first repented, you were worried that, as a sinner, you were going **to die**. You wanted to be **saved** or **live forever**. But, you can't have it that way.

You are only going to make it if you come to love God as He loves you and you love your neighbor as you love yourself. **THAT'S CALLED REPENTANCE – REAL REPENTANCE.**

CHAPTER 12

WHY CHRISTIANITY CAN'T BE A RELIGION

Are you shocked reading the title of this chapter? This is a subject that few people have encountered. Yet, there it is in bold capital letters: **WHY CHRISTIANITY CAN'T BE A RELIGION.** How can this be? It certainly is a radical claim. Surely, most everyone to whom you speak would think that Christianity is indeed a religion. But, here you are now witnessing a reverse claim. It is the exact opposite of what people would naturally think. How could Christianity **NOT** be a religion? It seems absurd. Are you prepared for the surprising answer to this paradox?

Elements Of The World

Something stood in the way of *New Testament* believers who wanted to receive **the gift of Sonship** from The Almighty God. It was something quite serious that was getting in the way of progress. Consequently, The Apostle Paul took decisive action, so that these newly **called-out ones** (“ecclesia” or **the church**) could become Sons of God. The Apostle Paul knew that he had to reveal **the truth** about something that was getting in their way and preventing a successful outcome.

Paul shows that Christ came to **deliver mankind from certain**

elements that were holding back some of the early disciples from realizing the goal of Sonship. This **restraining influence** was designated by Paul as, "...**the elements of the world...**" (Galatians 4:3). What are **the elements of the world**?

An overall perspective about these elements can be obtained by reading the full context of Galatians 4:3-7. Paul showed the importance of discerning the difference between, "...**in bondage under the elements of the world...**" (Verse 3), when it is contrasted with the primal objective for **the saints** who were to receive, "...**the adoption of sons...**" (Verse 5). This is the vital Sonship in question. In other words, by this process, they would become, "...**an heir of God through Christ**" (Verse 7).

So these **elements of the world** are getting in the way. You may ask, "What are these elements?" Many **biblical** students and teachers just pass right over these important **scriptures** regarding **the elements of the world**. Some teachers merely dismiss this short phrase as being only a **worldly** matter of some sort but not having much significance. Yet this topic was very important to The Apostle Paul. Whatever these "**elements of the world**" may be, according to Paul, they are something sinister. They are something that can hinder a Disciple of Christ to such an extent that he or she might even miss out on the promised "**Sonship**" under discussion in these texts. That is why every Disciple of the teachings of Jesus needs to divide **The Word** of God more cautiously just as Paul told Timothy, "...**rightly dividing the word of truth**" (II Timothy 2:15). This is what The Bereans did; in order to see "...**whether those things were so**" (Acts 17:11).

Elements Defined

Strong's Concordance, #4747, "stoicheion" for "elements" means

“something orderly in arrangement.” It signifies “a rudiment” or “a human orderly system.” In this case, Paul is discussing these “elements” or “orderly arrangement” as they are based upon “...Law...” (Galatians 3:23 and 4:5). Then, this Law becomes the fundamental basis for religious effort. It is a religion based on Law.

Of course, this outlook appears logical in one sense. In other words, this created system deals with human nature in a logical fashion. But there is one thing it cannot do. It cannot change human nature. So, whether you might like to admit it or not, this practice led to the formation of a religious system that was based upon human effort (works). You can study any human work-oriented, disciplinary system of religion and perceive a simple step-by-step sequence of logic in it from the human standpoint. These are “**the works.**” But it leaves out one vital thing – Christ. He is **the only one who** is able to change human nature. It may begin with teaching, but it also employs supernatural help. This comes through The Holy Spirit.

The Greek language introduces a general perspective about this form of “**works.**” But it does something else. It shows the relationship to Christ who delivered you from all efforts that are part of all **human religious systems.** Now, this **system** served a purpose for a period of time. But it was not to last forever. Something superior would replace it. Consequently, Paul described the **system** this way, “...**the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith**” (Galatians 3:24). So “**the schoolmaster**” or “**the system**” brings you back to the main introductory subject, “**the elements of the world.**” There were certain **elements** that were in the world – and of the world – that made up a certain kind of “**schoolmaster.**” Some wanted to continue with this “**schoolmaster.**” They couldn’t seem to function

on the new system based on **freedom in Christ**.

Why does this situation exist? It is because not enough people have come to see that these physical **elements** are **worldly** – and that they require human effort to keep them going. However, you cannot become a Son of God by means of any kind of “**works**.” You can only become a Son of God, through Christ, by God having begotten you by His Holy Spirit. Just keeping a human religious **system** that is based on human effort does not, and cannot give you **Sonship**.

Many Called

Jesus Himself stated, “**For many are called, but few are chosen**” (Matthew 22:14). He could not have stated the situation any plainer. It means what it says. Many are called but **few are chosen**.

In the Greek language, the word for “church” is “ecclesia.” It is the same as saying, “**the called-out ones**.” **The church** is composed of all those who will be part of Christ’s Wedding. The Wedding has The Groom (Christ), The Bride (**church**) and The Guests. The Bride and The Guests are all humans who are written in *The Lamb’s Book of Life* (Revelation 21:27). Those not found written in *The Book of Life* will be thrown into The Lake of Fire (Revelation 20:15). The point is that **only a few are chosen**. Not everyone gets to come or is invited to The Wedding. Since “**the church**” or “ecclesia,” refers to **the called-out ones**, as a group, they will not all be going to The Marriage Feast of The Lamb.

Only a **few** are “**the chosen**” for this. So, if you become part of “**the church**” it does not automatically mean that you will be one of “**the chosen**” for The Wedding. Why not? You can even get an

invitation, but if you are not dressed properly, you are not allowed to attend.

How Religion Developed

The **genesis** of all religious systems began with Cain and Abel. From Cain, paganism developed into a **multitude of heathen systems of religion**. Why were they called pagan? It is because God had nothing to do with them (Romans 1:21-25). Paul said that God allowed these people to do these things, because after they had known God, they started to worship “the creation” rather than The Creator. *The Bible* states in Romans 1:21:

When they knew God; they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.

This was the beginning of paganism. It was the basis for the concept of religion that developed into thousands of different sects – which were based on human reason without the **true god**. In other words, “...**God gave them over to a reprobate mind...**” (Romans 1:28). From this original descent from **the truth**, people of the world built their own religious systems.

Naturally, the citizens of these societies were required to practice these religions in order to belong. Now, on the other hand, Cain’s brother, Abel, was different. He started to build a human religious system that was predicated upon what he thought would be acceptable to God.

Genesis 4:1-7 ¹And Adam knew Eve his wife; and she conceived, and bare Cain, and said, I have

gotten a man from the Lord. ²And she again bare his brother Abel. And Abel was a keeper of sheep, but Cain was a tiller of the ground. ³And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto the Lord. ⁴And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the Lord had respect unto Abel and to his offering: ⁵But unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell. ⁶And the Lord said unto Cain, Why art thou wroth? and why is thy countenance fallen? ⁷If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? And if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him.

The main point of this story is that God accepted Abel's offering, which was a firstling from his flock. But God did not accept Cain's offering of fruit, from his garden. Why not? *The Bible* does not give a record of God's reasons for doing this, but it may have been because Abel's animal sacrifice pointed to Christ (hinting, also, of the death of the animals that provided clothes for Adam and Eve in The Garden) whereas the fruit of the ground did not. The main point is that Cain started a human religious system. But God was pleased only with Abel's approach and attitude.

Around 3,000 years later, David declared that God never required sacrifices or offerings. This would mean that Abel's sacrifice was **not a requirement** of God's (Psalm 40:6-7) although it is stated the sacrifice pleased God.

First Human Religious Effort

Cain was the first in human history to be involved with starting a human-effort-religious-system. Cain was thwarted. He became angry, killed his brother and then went to The Land of Nod to create his own pagan religion. After the flood, Nimrod, Cain's descendant (The Tower of Babel), continued this pagan system (Genesis 11). However, under Abel, men called on The Name of God. After Abel died, Seth was born as his replacement. When Enos, the son of Seth was born, "...**then began men to call upon the name of the Lord**" (Genesis 4:26). This was the beginning of "**the church**" or **the called-out ones** of God (Romans 10:13).

Under Seth, his descendants sought to please God by calling upon His Name. Under Cain, who created a totally pagan system, his descendants **did not call upon God**. Cain's human-based religion has continued down to this very day. King David announced that, in reality, God never intended for any human system of religion to get started – except the one which Christ would come and institute. Christ would put God's Law in your heart (Psalm 40:7-8). This is the main objective – not external conformity through **law-keeping**.

In other words, God does not want His future Sons to follow a human-religious system requiring human effort on his or her part. What God wants are Sons who have His Laws written in their hearts – or literally – His Laws become part of their very nature (Romans 2:14-15).

Church In The Wilderness

From the time of Abel, to Seth and then to his son, Enos, men called upon The Name of God. They were "**the called-out ones**"

or **the church**, as they were seeking – and were accepted by – God. God's **church (the called-out ones)** continued after the flood, up through the time of Noah's son, Shem. Finally, you have the arrival of Abraham from the line of Shem. He became **the father** of The Abrahamic Covenant, because Abraham believed and trusted in God – to the extent that he was willing to offer up his son, Isaac. This became a major basis for the prophesied Promise of Grace through The Messiah. Abraham was a type of God who offered His own Son.

Now, consider the contrast more carefully. Pagan religions are without the true knowledge of God. Also, they do not call upon God, but rather continue to develop their own human-religious systems. This process continued until the arrival of Christ. Through Isaac, his son Jacob was renamed Israel. This man, Israel, was the father of twelve sons, who later grew into The Nation of Israel. God brought them out of captivity in Egypt – and then the entire host became known as, "...**the church in the wilderness...**" (Acts 7:38). In other words, Israel was God's Church in The Wilderness, by being "**the called-out ones**" of God. When they sinned a great sin, it was like a great rebellion. God had to give them The Ten Commandments at Mount Sinai. They showed that they didn't want to obey – even though they had promised to do so (Deuteronomy 5).

Instead, Israel constructed a golden calf and then worshipped it – breaking The First Commandment. God wanted to kill them but Moses intervened and God spared them. He gave them The Law (*Torah*), which was meant to eventually bring them to Christ.

This is like "**the schoolmaster.**" After they sinned against The Commandments, God added The Statutes and Judgments (Deuteronomy 5 and Malachi 4:4). Now they could come to "**the temple**"

and be judged. Israel (God's **church**) did not understand how "**the works**" of The Law were intended to bring them to Christ. Neither did they understand how it showed they needed to "**repent**." Instead, they believed that by keeping the legalism of The Law, they would somehow become righteous — and therefore, be acceptable to God, as His **church**.

When God's people sinned, God instituted the "**Do's and Don'ts**" of The Law, The Statutes and Judgments or Works. Much like a "**schoolmaster**" making them write 100 times, they will not do whatever they did which was wrong (sinned). Eventually, God hoped they would be sorry for sinning and repent — but they never did. But, all God really wanted was for Israel to keep God's Ten Commandments **IN THEIR HEARTS** (Deuteronomy 5:29).

When Jesus came to this earth, The Israelites rejected Him as being their Messiah. This was because they misunderstood "**the purpose**" of The Law. They thought the keeping of The Letter of The Law **was an end in itself** — to please God — rather than to bring them closer to an attitude of **repentance** for their misdeeds. If done properly, this would have brought them to "**real repentance**" (Romans 5:20). God wanted **repentant people** who had experienced a **change of mind and heart**. God wanted **His Law to be in their hearts** — and not by human effort or "**works**" (Romans 2:28-29). To be acceptable to God, one must have a complete change of heart. Any religious system, whether: (1) pagan or (2) following The Letter of The Law, is not enough. No one is acceptable to God until one's **heart is "right"** with God. **Any human effort** performed by "**works**" that you do in order to please God, cannot, does not and never will please God.

When Christ came and Israel rejected Him (by not **repenting**), God allowed His Son Jesus, to become "**a sacrifice**" for "**the**

world" (I John 4:14). It was done this way so The Promise made to Abraham could accomplish the task of opening **The Door of Salvation to The Gentiles**. This was The Gentiles' first chance to be able to become Christians.

World Salvation

Always remember the basic underlying "**truth**" that Jesus came to "**save the whole world**" (I John 4:14). When Judah, the last tribe to remain in the land, rejected their Messiah, the inhabitants of Judaea were scattered throughout the world. This was the beginning of **The Diaspora** or **The Great Dispersion**. Jesus prophesied that "**the temple**" would be destroyed (John 4) and from that point on, the people would worship God **only by "spiritual means."** It would never be through "the **works**" of The Letter of The Law or any other pagan religious system. God's "**truth**" is a way to learn a "**perfect way of life**" and is not an organized religious system.

In 70 A.D., when Titus destroyed "**the temple**" *The Old Covenant* ended (Hebrews 8:13). Access to God ended with Judah's unrepentant state (rejecting Christ). Without "**the temple**" there was no longer a **court** to administer God's Law. Access to God through the administration of The Letter of The Law was completely finished. There was no longer a religious system to bring Judah to Christ. God changed the **called-out ones** from "**The Letter**" to "**The Spirit**." No **temple** was needed. Now, only **repentance** is required for a person to be in God's **church**. It is the acceptable method of pleasing God.

The New Testament Church

In Ephesians 2:11-15, Paul explained how a basic change took place. At one time, The Gentiles were without God but **by means**

of Christ removing the veil to “the mercy seat” in “the temple.”

The Gentiles now had access directly to God. There was no need of a **temple**, nor was The Law necessary. Even The Priesthood had changed from Levi to Melchizedek. Now, The Law became a **spiritual** matter (II Corinthians 3:6). This *New Covenant* required **no effort**, **no “works”** no **religious system** to please God (II Corinthians 3:17). From this point on, as Christians, no religious system (human effort) would ever be acceptable to God.

Pure Religion

In James 1:27, The Apostle taught that the **only religion** God would accept would be a pure and undefiled one. Nothing you may accomplish by your **“works”** will make you acceptable to God. Christianity is **not a religion** – rather it is **“a way of life.”** The way is to follow God’s Son, Jesus, The Christ. In John 14:6, Christ said that He is **the way, the truth and the life**. Being a Christian is **a way of living**. It is not a religious system of humanity trying to please God by thinking they are somehow **righteous** by following: (1) The Law or (2) any other religious system of human **“works.”**

The word **“pure”** in Greek means **“clean”** or **“undefiled.”** Any human effort to become righteous would not be acceptable to God – because you are unclean in your nature and unclean in your flesh.

With your human nature, you cannot please God, no matter how hard you try. This is because every human being is too weak to ever keep all of The Law **perfectly**. No matter how good you may try to be, it is not good enough. One must be **truly righteous** or **perfect**. For this reason, you cannot live a pure and undefiled religious **life**. **God declares that the only human “works” He will**

accept are as follows:

- 1 Don't judge others,
- 2 Help those in need, such as widows and orphans,
and,
- 3 Don't follow what the world does.

These are the only “**works**” or “**deeds**” that humans can do which will please God. No other religious effort is required. One good summary from *The Old Testament* is, “...**what doth the Lord require of thee, but to do justly and to love mercy and to walk humbly with thy God**” (Micah 6:8).

Israel Misunderstood

The Apostle Paul wrote instructions to the “**believers**” at Rome so they could increase their understanding that Christianity was not a religion based on human “**works.**” Read Romans 10:1-6 thoroughly. Paul said that although Israel had a zeal for God, they believed they could please God by keeping The Letter of The Law. By so doing, it was **Israel's human righteousness** and not God's. Verse 4, clearly states that Christ is **the end** (or aim) of The Law. The Letter of The Law was a step towards bringing them to **repentance** (Romans 5:20). If Israel had repented, they would have received mercy and would have been forgiven their sins. But, they refused and Christ turned to The Gentiles as The Law was a **spiritual matter** (John 4 and II Corinthians 3:6). By God writing His Law in your heart and mind, you will grow in **God's “righteousness”** – and it will not be by means of any human effort or religious system. I John 3:4, “...**sin is the transgression of the law...**” defines what sin is. But, The Apostle John

goes on to enlarge upon this definition.

Christian Sin

John gives you the complete definition of sin very clearly. John said, “**All unrighteousness is sin**” (I John 5:17). Jesus explained the definition for sin, and “**the Christian life**” that is a must for being **saved**. It’s all there in The Sermon On The Mount in Matthew 5, 6 and 7. Christ said that if a man were to look upon a woman with lust, it is already adultery in his heart. If you covet your neighbor’s goods in your mind, you are already a thief. Any unrighteousness for a Christian is a sin, even if only in your mind (or heart). God’s “**righteousness**” is a matter of “**the heart**” – and not The Letter. The Letter is futile because it changes nothing and it certainly doesn’t change anything in any person wanting to be a Christian.

Only by God’s Holy Spirit “**in you**” can a person experience **the renewing of your heart and mind**. This is all that pleases God (Romans 12:2). No religion is acceptable to God but only those who have Christ working in them by God’s Holy Spirit. Only this will please your Father, God (Colossians 1:27).

CHAPTER 13

IS THE LAW DONE AWAY?

Some Christian groups believe The Law is done away. Other Christian groups believe The Law with all its legal requirements is still in force and Christians must obey them. Which group is biblically correct? Has The Law, God gave to Moses, been done away?

The Surprising Truth

Most Christians approach the question about The Law in one of two ways: (1) You keep The Law or (2) You do not keep The Law. Surprisingly, according to *The Scriptures*, **both are wrong**. Let's first address the question, is The Law done away?

The Law Fulfilled

In Matthew 5:17, Jesus said, **“Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets. I am not come to destroy, but to fulfil.”** Much discussion hinges about the word, “fulfill.” Some say Christ meant you to keep the whole Law. Others say Jesus came to complete The Law or finish **the purpose** God gave Him. Which is correct?

You know Jesus did not destroy The Law or end The Law. *The Bible* plainly states and it will be proved later, The Law is **never done away**. Your understanding of this verse revolves around the meaning of the word, “fulfill.” The Greek word, “pleroo” is

defined as “to level up,” “fully fill” or “complete.” Some say by keeping it, The Law is fully filled. Others say, no, it means to come to a final end or completion. Which meaning is correct?

First, there is a specific Greek word that means “to keep” or “do.” In Acts 13:22, Paul was preaching in Antioch in “**the synagogue**” and was talking about King David. Paul is preaching about how God changed the name of The King of Israel from Saul to David. Paul said, “**And when he had removed him (Saul), he raised up unto them David to be their king; to whom also he gave testimony, and said, I have found David the son of Jesse, a man after mine own heart, which shall fulfill all my will.**” The Greek, in this case, for “fulfill” is “poieo” and it specifically means “to do” or “to make.”

If Jesus meant when He said, “to fulfill” The Law was “to do” or “keep it,” then He would have used the proper Greek word “to keep” or “do” which is “poieo.” Since Christ specifically said the Greek, “pleroo,” which is “to complete” or “fill up” He was **not** saying He came to keep The Law but, instead, to **complete its purpose**. Christ was saying “The Law” had a **purpose** and not merely a point of law in a court of being guilty or not, when sinning or breaking The Law (I John 3:4). Is there further proof? Yes, the context makes the meaning clear. Many Christians interested in the subject of The Law read the context of Matthew 5:16-17, but miss the entire meaning Jesus was teaching. In addition to The Law, Jesus also said in Matthew 5:17 that he came “to fulfill” what The Prophets had prophesied. Obviously, Christ **did not** mean “to fulfill” or “to keep” nor “do” what The Prophets said. He came **not only** to “**fulfill**” or “**complete**” The Law, but also **to fulfill** what The Prophets had said about Him. How plain! That is why Jesus used the word “pleroo” instead of “poieo.” So Christ said He came to complete what The Law said about Him

just as The Prophets had prophesied. How clear and how plain. But, there is even more proof, in Matthew 5:18, Christ said, “**For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.**” The Greek word is “pleroo” and not “poieo.” Jesus is saying The Law is a **shadow** of things to come about Him and every single part of The Law refers to The Christ to come (Hebrews 10:1).

Now, you have absolute **biblical proof** that not “one jot,” or “one tittle” will pass from The Law (**at least, until the new heaven and new earth**). So, The Law in *The Old Covenant* and *The New Covenant* is not done away until God, Himself comes to the earth and establishes The New Heaven and New Earth. There is **more proof** that The Law is **not done away**.

The Old And New Covenant

The question of The Law is really resolved by understanding the difference between *The Old Covenant* and *The New Covenant*. Contrary to the belief of many, *The Old Covenant* is not *The Old Scriptures*, as many refer to it. *The Old Covenant* and *The Old Testament* are one and the same. Both are only a **part** of *The Old Scriptures* or *The Old Testament*. In fact, *The Old Covenant* is only a part of the Law or *Torah*. It was added to *The Torah* or Law. This added part became part of The Whole Law. This became the entire *Old Covenant*. A “**testament**” is a “**will**” which a death has put in force. Read all of Hebrews 9, where without shedding of blood, a “**will**” cannot be enforced. Since The Law or *Torah* is only a shadow of things to come, only animal sacrifice was needed for the blood. This enforced *The Old Covenant* or the legal requirements of The Law. The Letter of The Law imposed the death penalty, when a capital crime was committed. So, *The Old Covenant* was not *The Old Scriptures*, but a **covenant**

imposed upon Israel for sinning. This was a **carnal covenant** because Israel was carnal (Hebrews 7:15).

When Moses called all Israel together in Deuteronomy restating of The Law, he said, "...**Hear, O Israel, the statutes and judgments which I speak in your ears this day, that ye may learn them, and keep, and do them**" (Deuteronomy 5:1). Interestingly, Moses at this point did not say, "Israel hear The Law or *Torah*" but only told them to "do **the statutes and judgments.**" Why did Moses not include the entire Law? You will shortly see why The Law or *Torah* was not included. In fact, *The Ten Commandments* were not included. Why? Because Israel broke The Ten Commandments and God added **the statutes and judgments** (Deuteronomy 5:22, 29). Malachi 4:4 clearly **states the statutes and judgments** became part of The Law of Moses. Moses said this **covenant** was made by God with Israel in Horeb or Mount Sinai. However, Moses, at this point, is only referring to **the statutes and the judgments**. Moses said, "**The Lord made not this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, who are all of us here alive this day**" (Deuteronomy 5:3). This **covenant did not** include The Abrahamic Covenant since Moses said this was a different **covenant or agreement** than the one made with the fathers of old. The Abrahamic Covenant was a written part of The Law or *Torah* but was different than this *Old Covenant* made with Israel, which specifically had to do with **the statutes and judgments**. The basic purpose of **the statutes and judgments** covered all the legal works of The Law or *Torah*. That is why this covenant, *The Old Covenant* was called The Law of Moses or given to Moses in writing or The Letter of The Law. Most of The Law or *Torah* is history. It covers the genealogy of the shadow or prophecy of The Promised Seed (Christ) in Genesis 3:15. The Added Laws to *The Ten Commandments* were **the statutes and judgments**. These **statutes and judgments** were The Laws added

because Israel was carnal and kept sinning. That is the reason God had them build **the tabernacle** or **court** where their cases were tried and settled, out of court, by the offering of sacrifices and gifts. Since they were carnal, God intended they continually be reminded of their sinful nature till Christ came. If they sinned by breaking *The Ten Commandments*, then capital punishment or death was the penalty.

The Old Wine

In Matthew 9:14-17, Jesus was asked why The Disciples of John fasted so often but His Disciples did not. He said there was no reason to fast while The Christ, The Bridegroom, was with them. He said after He would leave them, then, they could fast. Then, Christ said you cannot put new wine in old bottles, because those new bottles would explode. The two cannot function together. Jesus was letting them know His Disciples were under a *New Covenant* “teaching” which would not work with *The Old Covenant* teachings. How simple and clear *The Scriptures* really are. What is the difference between the old pharisaical teaching of The Letter of The Law and The Spirit of The Law? Why can they not function together? Christ was very definite about it.

The Letter Of The Law

Jesus came right out and said those under The Letter or written Law (Torah) **must keep and do it all**. James, also, said the same thing in James 2:10. Jesus said The Pharisees were extremely careful to keep The Law in **the letter**, by being sure they tithed but transgressed the weightier matters of The Law like **judgment, mercy** and **faith** (Matthew 23:23). No one can keep the whole Law and therefore, are guilty of breaking all of it. Jesus said you better tithe to The Levites because they sit in Moses’ seat or

Administration of The Letter. How anyone can use these *Scriptures* to justify paying tithes to a ministry is beyond belief? Jesus plainly said they were in Moses' seat and had to keep the **whole Letter of The Law**. The Law demands you tithe to The Levites, **not the ministry**. Jesus had not died yet, so, *The Old Covenant* was in force and that is why Christ said they had to keep all The Law. You can easily prove what *The Old Covenant* was.

Old Covenant

Paul answers this question about *The Old Covenant* in Hebrews 9:15-22 – he said under *The First Testament* or *Covenant*, blood had to be shed for the contract to be enforced. Read completely to see what is *The Old Covenant* or *Testament*. Moses spoke all and every precept of The Letter of The Law (*Torah*) (Verse 19). Then Moses took the blood of clean animals and **sprinkled both** *The Book* (*Torah*) and all the people. Moses said this places the contract in force between you and God (Verse 20). What contract? The contract of requirements in **The Letter of The Law** between God and Israel. It is the written Letter of The Law, **with** the added **statutes** and **judgments** to condemn carnal Israel. These were Laws written between God and Israel because they were carnal and unconverted. The actual account in Exodus 23:7 states all the people of Israel agreed to keep everything in *The Book of The Law* “*perfectly*.” If not, they had to go to court in **the temple** and plead their case. If it was a small transgression, they settled out of court by doing sacrifices. If they were guilty of capital sins or crimes, they were put to death. This is *The Old Covenant* or *Old Testament*. It was called The Law of Moses or administered by Moses and The Elders. It is exactly what Christ said in Matthew 23:23. This is *The Old Covenant* as administered by Moses based on The Letter of The Law. This covenant **was not** *The Covenant* or **promise** with Abraham. This Law, with its legal works,

whenever broken, dictated the penalty because they were under the curse when they broke any part of it.

The New Covenant

Jesus plainly said one cannot mix this **old wine** or **old system** of God with the **new wine** or The New Covenant and be accepted by God. *The Old* and *New Covenants* have two different purposes. They are in total contradiction to each other. The Letter of The Law reminds them of sin. The Law written in your heart and mind doesn't even think of sinning because of love or agàpè (I Corinthians 13).

Read all of Hebrews 10 in great detail. Verse 1, Paul said The Law or *Torah* along with the sacrifices were all merely shadows and not real, as far as what God was really doing or accomplishing. What God wanted was to get rid of sin (Hebrews 10:2-3). The Letter of The Law could not do that. By doing the sacrifices in The Letter of The Law of *The Old Covenant* only made them remember they were sinners, and as yet, not forgiven. Of course, the capital sins put Israelites to death. Now, with *The New Covenant*, Paul said God prepared a body, Christ, to take away sins. *The Old Covenant*, based on The Letter of The Law, could only remind them of their sinning. It is exactly what Paul said was their “**schoolmaster**” to bring them to Christ (Galatians 3:24). That is the **only purpose** for *The Old Covenant* based on The Letter of The Law. They were carnal and God wanted them to repent (I Timothy 1:7-10). *The Old Covenant* and *New Covenant* have **two totally different purposes**. *The Old Covenant* caused death and *The New Covenant* produced “**life**.” Once someone repents, *The Old Covenant* no longer applies because it has fulfilled the purpose of The Law through Christ. One is no longer **under the curse**. The penalties in **the statutes** and **judgments** are meaning-

less to a Christian except as shadows of *The New Covenant*. That is exactly what Christ said He came to do, in respect of *The Law*, **to fulfill** or **complete** it. But, did Jesus do away with The Law? **Astonishingly**, He did not. *The New Covenant* does not do away with *The Law* or *Torah*.

In Hebrews 10:16-24, Paul very clearly states, *The New Covenant*, by God's Holy Spirit through **Christ "In You"** (Colossians 1:27), writes God's Law in your hearts and minds. Wow! **The Law is not done away!** It is **written** not in The Law of Moses, but in Christians' very hearts and minds and has made a change of their very nature. How? By your provoking one another unto **love** and **good works** (Verse 24), The Law now becomes a **spiritual matter**, a matter of how you think and not what is written in The Letter in The Law or *Torah*. This is exactly what Christ said! The Written Law can say, "**Thou shalt not kill**," but a Christian, with God's **love**, would not even think of killing because God has changed their hearts and minds having Christ in them.

When you study *The Bible*, why **do you think** in **verses** and not in **CONTEXT**? This is a great mistake in rightly dividing "**The Word**." Matthew 5, 6 and 7 tell you the very same thing. Jesus told you He came to "fulfill" or "complete" The Law (Matthew 5:17). Everything The Law came to do (bring you to Christ) when you repent, allows Jesus to write The Law in your heart and mind by God's Holy Spirit, **Christ "In You"** (Colossians 1:27). That is why Paul said *The Old Covenant* had to vanish away so "the new" could take its place. In 70 A.D., **the temple** ceased and only *The New Covenant* remains until The Millennium (Hebrews 8:13). At that time, the unrepentant world, along with Israel, will come to Christ. **The temple** and The Law **with the sacrifices** will bring carnal people **finally** to Christ. The **entire** Law must be kept in The Letter (James 2:10 and Matthew 23:23). The Law is **only** for

an unrepentant world (I Timothy 1:7-10).

Jesus states how you are to keep The Law in “**spirit**” and **not as is written in “the letter.”** A Christian’s righteousness has to be better or more righteous than The Pharisees (Matthew 5:20). Why? Because, in Matthew 23:1 and 23, Christ said they sit in Moses’ seat. They only administer The Law of Moses. Jesus said for a Christian to do The Letter, is **not good** enough. Now, The Law must be a part of your heart and mind, a part of your very nature. Christians must keep The Law on a much higher plain. Christ’s example was **perfection**. Christ uses the **very letter of the written Ten Commandments**. He said **The Letter of The Law** demands, “**Thou shall not kill**” (Matthew 5:21). How clear do you want it? As a Christian, if you do not kill but if you still would like to, you are **still guilty!** So, The Letter is meaningless to a Christian. Then, He said if a Christian is angry with his brother without a cause, you are in danger of The White Throne Judgment. You are, already **guilty of murder**, even if you are only **angry** with your brother without a cause. That is Christ’s definition of keeping *The Commandments* in your heart. The Christian definition of “sin” is much greater. In I John 5:17 it states, “**All unrighteousness is sin...**” If a Christian even **thinks** to kill his brother without a cause, he is **guilty**. It does not matter what The Law in “**the letter**” states. For Christians, The Letter is not good enough (Matthew 5:20). Read all of Matthew 5, 6 and 7 for more examples of keeping The Law in your heart and mind. The written Law which tells you **not to kill** is just not good enough for a Christian. It becomes meaningless because The Letter of The Law is only a **shadow** or type of really keeping God’s Law by a change of nature which no longer requires its legal works. The **legal works, statutes** and **judgments** were added for carnal people to be tried in a **court** of law or **temple**. Only capital sins, breaking *The Ten Commandments* can put them to death. These Laws were added

to *The Torah* or Law and were in force until Christ came (Deuteronomy 5 and Malachi 4:4). When Christ came, He fulfilled The Law by His **righteousness** “**in you**” (Colossians 1:27). That is the difference between The Letter and The Spirit of The Law.

What Christ Changed

Since **The Law is not done away**, just what did Christ change? Any person who can understand the English language in *The Bible* knows the subject under discussion is **not tithing** but **perfection** (Hebrews 7:1-12). After Jesus stated how to keep The **Law spiritually** and not in The Letter, He said, “**Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect**” (Matthew 5:48). How does a Christian become perfect? You become perfect by God writing His Law in your heart and mind, by having *Christ “In You.”*

That is the subject of Hebrews 7. Hebrews 7:11 states **perfection (not tithing)**, came by a different Priesthood – Melchizedek. Jesus was a High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek. Read the entire chapter on Melchizedek.

Paul said The Law was changed under The Melchizedek Priesthood, which was a **Priesthood of righteousness** (Hebrews 1:12). How was The Law changed? Some think it is about **tithing**. It refers to the whole Letter of The Law or *Torah*. Chapters 8 and Chapter 9 point out that the change is the entire *Old Covenant* based on The Letter of The Law but certainly not tithing. This change of Priesthood changed The Administration of The Law from Moses to Christ, as Melchizedek. Hebrews 7 states by The Administration of Melchizedek a Christian is made **perfect** but the written Law under Moses only reminded you, that you were still a sinner. By Melchizedek and His sacrifice, your sins were

forgiven and (even more important) completely **forgotten**. That is what Hebrews 9:9 and Hebrews 10:14 state. *The Old Covenant* or The Letter of The Law is **taken away** or was removed, but the second, the **new “spirit”** of The Law **remains forever** (Hebrews 10:9). How simple and plain for you to understand.

Death And Life

Paul said Christians were not under the administration of **death** as with Moses or the curse of The Law (II Corinthians 3:6-18). Legal requirements do not apply for Christians. The Letter of The Law only applies to Christians as a **shadow** or type of what *The New Covenant* is. That is why The Apostles quoted from The Law revealing their true meaning under *The New Covenant*. Under Christ and The Administration of Life, you are under The Priesthood of Melchizedek, which is a **Priesthood of Faith** by keeping The Law “**spiritually**” and not in The Letter. The Law for Christians is not **done away**, but **changed** to **spiritually** keeping God’s Law with a change of nature through Christ. That is why Paul said *The New Covenant* was a **better covenant** with **better promises**. *The New Covenant* makes you **perfect** or **Holy** as **God, The Father** is – through **Christ**. To think Christians need **the written letter** or even The Ten Commandments to tell **right** from **wrong** is to **deny Jesus** came or what He came to do. Christ came to make you Holy and **perfect** like His Father. In Christ, you have God’s **righteousness**, and not by **human effort** of **The Letter of The Law**. You must study Hebrews 9 thoroughly. The following Chapter, ‘*The Law is Spiritual*’ will further explain this vital point.

The Big Difference

What is the real difference? The Letter of The Law and The Spirit

of The Law cannot function together.

- 1 In Hebrews 8, it describes *The Old Covenant* which is based upon The Letter of The Law, which had to be kept in its entirety (Matthew 23:23) was to vanish away. This happened in 70 A.D. with the fall of **the temple**. One cannot keep the entire Law without **the temple**. Plain and simple. God ended the possibility of keeping The Letter of The Law. After all, God would not demand the keeping of The Law, if it could not possibly be done. The Letter of The Law ended in 70 A.D.

- 2 The **purpose** of The Letter of The Law was only a shadow (Hebrews 10:1). The Letter of The Law, *The Old Covenant*, only was a type and not real “righteousness.” It could only be a type of God’s **righteousness**. Hebrews 8 and 9 describe what Law Paul referred to in Hebrews 10:1. Since The Letter of The Law was only a shadow or type, Paul said it would vanish (Hebrews 8:13).

- 3 Paul clarifies the **big difference** between *The Old Covenant*, The Law in The Letter compared to *The New Covenant*, The Law written in your heart and mind (Hebrews 10:1-18).

If *The Old Covenant*, keeping The Law in The Letter, made people **perfect**, then there would no longer be a reason to keep offering sacrifices when they broke The Letter of The Law (Hebrews 10:2). God wants you to become **perfect** (Matthew 5:48). The penalty under The Letter of The Law required animal sacrifices as a reminder of their sins. That is all The Letter could do. It only

told them what sin was (I John 3:4).

Now the **big difference** is when God writes His Laws in your **heart** and **mind**. When one is **perfect** – once a **sin** is **purged**, that person should no longer have **any conscience** of sin (Hebrews 10:2). When God’s Holy Spirit gives you God’s love (agàpè) in your heart and mind, you wouldn’t even think of sinning. You no longer have a conscience to sin. It is no longer necessary to have right and wrong written in a **Law** because Christians would not **even think of sinning**. **Sinning**, when **perfect**, is in opposition to your nature. Why? You would not even think of killing another person because you have God’s **love**. The mind and heart would not even “**think**” of it.

The word “purge” in its Greek meaning is a “catharsis” meaning a “complete purging” from your mind. The doctor might tell you to have a catharsis of your colon. That is to flush out the colon. That is the meaning Paul said was in reference to your conscience or heart and mind when God writes His Law in your heart and mind. Clearly, you do not need a written Law because even your conscience would not think of killing your brother because of God’s “**love**.” There it is, God’s Law is **spiritual**, forever, but only when – The Law is written in your hearts and minds. *The Old Covenant*, with The Written Law, no longer exists for Christians – only *The New Covenant*.

CHAPTER 14

THE LAW IS SPIRITUAL

Is The Law of God “eternal?” Many declared that it is. Yet, there is ‘not one’ Scripture in *The Bible* that states The Law or *Torah* is “eternal.” But, in Romans 7:14, The Apostle Paul clearly said The Law is “spiritual.” If The Law is not “eternal” – then, how could it be “spiritual?”

If The Law is **spiritual**, then it cannot be in the same mode as The Letter of The Law. A number of **scriptures** indicate this would be a contradiction of terms. These two descriptions of “Law” operate in different realms.

Originally, The Letter of The Law was given for humans to keep. Carnal people need to be told “**right**” from “**wrong**.” However, if The Law, as God intended, was to be observed **spiritually**, then how can human beings keep it when they are dominated by fleshly impulses? This is a paradox.

The central point is that humans cannot keep The Law because the flesh is, indeed, very weak (Romans 7:22-25). Paul taught that since The Law is **spiritual** and humans are carnal or beast-like, then they are subject to sin and eventually death (Romans 7:14).

God Wants Spiritual Growth

After God gave Israel The Ten Commandments at Mount Sinai, Israel sinned when they made the golden calf and then “**revered**

it.” The Israelites felt they needed some kind of image to look upon and to worship. God recognized that Israel would always be carnal and stiff-necked. Originally, God had wanted Israel to be able to keep His Ten Commandments in their hearts.

When God had completed giving these Ten Commandments, it is stated that, “...**and he added no more**” (Deuteronomy 5:22). So The Ten Commandments constituted the full and only **spiritual requirement** that was issued by God (Malachi 4:4). From the beginning of The Old Covenant, given to Moses, which was given to Israel, God wanted His Ten Commandments to be kept **spiritually**. God was telling them from the very start of their nation how The Ten Commandments were to be kept “**spiritually**” in their hearts (Deuteronomy 5:28-29). Paul said that The Law was a **spiritual matter** and not a matter of keeping The Letter of The Law.

Jesus said that God only wants Christians to worship Him in “**spirit**” and “**truth**.” “**God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth**” (John 4:24). This is exactly what Paul meant when he said, “...**the law is spiritual...**” (Romans 7:14).

Letter Of The Law

If The Law of God is a Spiritual Law, then a logical question arises. Why did God instruct Moses to write The Law in The Letter? Furthermore, many ask, “What is The Letter of The Law?” You must remember that **The Law that was added** was a separate Law that had been added to The Ten Commandments, “...**Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions...**” (Galatians 3:19). What Law was that? This was **another Law** that was **added to the original** Ten Commandment Law. This

extra Law was included after Israel had sinned by worshipping the golden calf. It was a Law of sacrifices and various offerings. What was **the purpose** of these actions? It included all that is “**right**” and “**wrong**” in God’s “eyes.” They were designed by God to instill a sense of acknowledgment when an Israelite had sinned. It was an ongoing **witness**. This “**added law**” also gave the penalties when one came under the curse. What Law was added? It was the statues and judgments (Malachi 4:4).

Furthermore, these actions were designed to probe for any potential underlying sense of conscience – “**the wrong**” or “**the sins**” these people did regularly on a daily basis. Notice what Jeremiah said in reference to **this additional Law**:

For I spake not unto your fathers, nor commanded them in the day that I brought them out of the land of Egypt, concerning burnt offerings or sacrifices (Jeremiah 7:22).

So, The Ten Commandments were given **before** any other **Laws** were **later added**. After The Israelites had sinned, by creating the golden calf, Moses, along with The Elders, went to God. In the process, with God’s inspiration, Moses wrote **the entire book** of *The Covenant*, which is *The Torah* or Law. Then, all the people were required to agree to obey everything that was written in this **covenant** (Exodus 24:1-8). Note especially that all these legal requirements were only added to The Ten Commandments after Israel had sinned.

Notice further, this Law was written rather than being **uttered** directly by God, as He did with The Ten Commandments. The **added law** is therefore, **the written Torah**, which are the first five books of *The Bible*. The **statutes** and **judgments** became part of

The Whole Law.

These written books include *Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers,* and *Deuteronomy*. These are the five books called *The Torah* and now had this **added law**. The Law now contained the statutes and judgments (Malachi 4:4). But notice, they were written – which means “in The Letter” – or “written in The Letter.”

Ministration Of Death

Paul says that keeping The Letter of The Law kills, “...**for the letter killeth, but the spirit giveth life**” (II Corinthians 3:6). So, you have a basic contrast being introduced here that compares: (1) The Letter killing people, along with (2) The Spirit giving **life** to people. Now the word “**ministration**” appears fully four times within just three verses in II Corinthians 3:7-9. You are told that it was, “...**the ministration of death...**” that was being removed (Verse 7).

This negative Law was also called, “...**the ministration of condemnation...**” (Verse 9). So it was described by two phrases. This is the element of death described as, “...**that which was done away...**” (II Corinthians 3:11).

But, it was not everything. There was something that remained. Notice these words, “...**For if that which is done away was glorious, much more that which remaineth is glorious...**” (Verse 11). So something important remains about “...**that which is abolished...**” (Verse 13).

The observance of The Letter of The Law can only place you into subjection to death in the administration of death. In Romans 7:4-6, The Apostle Paul informs The Christians that keeping The

Letter of The Law kills. In Verse 5, Paul said that because of the weakness of the flesh, you cannot keep God's Law in The Letter.

Ministration Of The Spirit

The flip side of the situation just posed, is that only by keeping The Law **spiritually**, can you receive **eternal life**. So, it is the "**spiritual part**" of The Law that remains. The **spiritual** part is described by Paul in two phrases (the ministration of death). So the element of death now gives way to, "...**the ministration of the spirit...**" (Verse 8) and "...**the ministration of righteousness...**" (Verse 9). One can now become "**perfect**" through Christ. In Romans 7:6, the word "letter" is translated from the Greek word "gramma." Strong's Concordance #1121 defines "gramma" as "a letter," "epistle" or "book." It merely means, what is written down or what was written in a book. In this case, it was The Law or *Torah*. The Letter of The Law was everything written down in *The First Five Books* or *Torah*. These books also included The Ten Commandments (Exodus 20 and Deuteronomy 5).

Why did God include The Ten Commandments in *The Torah*? II Corinthians 3:7 states that The Ten Commandments were included in The Law because they were "...**engraven in stones...**" as a way to show they could not keep them **spiritually** in their hearts (Deuteronomy 5:29). These Israelites were carnal and had hearts of **stone** and not a **fleshy heart**, "...**not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart**" (II Corinthians 3:3). Paul said this administration by Moses, of The Letter of The Law could only produce death (II Corinthians 3:7).

The keeping of The Letter of The Law, *The Torah* can only produce death (Romans 7:5). If, as a Christian, you believe that one has to obey The Law in The Letter, the end result can only pro-

duce their death – and never **eternal life**.

If one lives within The Law, one will have a better **human life**, but **will never** receive **salvation** by keeping The Letter. This also applies to the writing of The Law with all its legal requirements of **works** and **deeds**. These legal works are contained in **the statutes** and **judgments** which were added. Salvation only comes as a **gift** from God who writes His Laws **spiritually** upon your heart.

Purpose Of The Letter Of The Law

First, *The Torah* was added to The Ten Commandments only because Israel kept sinning. They were a carnal and stiff-necked people. *The Torah* was given to them in **the letter** because The Letter of The Law was written only for an unrepentant and carnal people (I Timothy 1:7-10). This **added Law** was only given and was only to be kept by Israel to make them see how carnal they were (Romans 5:20). It was “**added**” to bring them to Christ so they could eventually **repent** (Galatians 3:19-24). Since Israel was carnal, they of themselves could not know “**right**” from “**wrong**.” God had to require Moses to write down what was “**good**” and what was “**evil**” or “**wrong**” for the carnal Israelites. This is The Letter of The Law. They had to be told what sin was (I John 4:3).

The Letter Only A Shadow

When a person sees a reflection of his own shadow, he recognizes this particular shadow is not the actual individual. The real individual is not only somewhere else, but is, also, entirely composed of a totally different substance. The individual person is real, **but the shadow is not real**. This principle is basic for understanding the following text:

For the law [“nomas” in the Greek and “Torah” in the Hebrew] **having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect (Hebrews 10:1).**

The entire Letter of The Law was **not real**. The complete Book of The Written Law was only a **shadow** or type of what was coming in the future and only through The Messiah. Today, the keeping of The Letter of The Law **does absolutely** nothing to please God and all the more so, since Christ already came. Paul said:

¹²Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh. ¹³For if ye live after the flesh, ye shall die (Romans 8:12-13).

This means that the best you can do by obeying The Law in The Letter is to have “**a good life.**” But, all of the observance of The Law in The Letter doesn’t change a person’s basic nature. Only by keeping The Law **spiritually** can you receive **salvation**. All the rest is not true reality. It is only a shadow.

In Colossians 1:27, Paul explained that the only real **truth** in a Christian is **Christ “In You.”** He warned you against the legalism, such as circumcision, required Sabbath restraints, imposed Holy Day observance, compulsory new moons, meat or drink, etc (Colossians 2:16).

Notice, Paul explained how all the legalism is only a shadow of things to come. None of these Letter of The Law “**efforts**” or “**works**” are ultimately real in the physical sense. All of them are only types, shadows or representations of what the real elements

of **the spirit world** would be like.

The Letter of The Law, with its **works** and **deeds** of human effort, does nothing to give you **salvation**. In fact, “The Letter of Human Effort” as it could be called, by being “good in the flesh” does **not** please God (Romans 8:8). No human labor of righteousness in this sense ever pleases God, whether it is by observing God’s Holy Days, tithing, denying oneself or keeping holidays such as Easter, Christmas, etc. Paul said that if you do these **works** or keep those days, it is for nothing (Philippians 3:6-9).

The Law Is Spiritual

Why is there such a great conflict between The Letter of The Law and The Added Torah? The Letter of The Law and The Spirit of The Law produce two different types of results – which is a contradiction. The flesh is weak, so in your human body, you readily commit sin. Biblically, it is irrefutable that keeping The Law in The Letter, in all its legal demands, can only produce death. You must keep **the entire Law** because if you break one little part, you are guilty of transgressing **the entire Law** (James 2:10). Why is this? It is because God wants you to be perfect – just as His Son is **perfect**. Death is the sole outcome when one attempts to keep The Letter of The Law.

If The Law is not kept **spiritually**, you cannot become perfect as Christ had specified. Jesus said, “...**Be ye therefore perfect, even as your Father which is in heaven is perfect**” (Matthew 5:48). God demands **perfection**. That can only happen with **Christ “In You,”** along with God’s Holy Spirit. It is God’s “**vehicle**” in making The Law **a spiritual matter**. “**If**” The Law is written in your heart and mind, you receive **salvation**. It is the only way **eternal life** can be given as “**a gift**” – and that is why

you must become **perfect**, without any blame.

The Spiritual Process

This chapter, as well as the following chapter, spells out exactly how God writes His Law in your heart and mind. Since the “**goal**” is **perfection**, once you are no longer guilty, you can receive **life** with all its riches. Since keeping The Letter or Works of The Law produces death, then keeping The Spirit of The Law produces **life** – ETERNAL LIFE. That is why The Glory of *The Old Covenant* was intended to bring you to **repentance**, so you could receive Christ. That was the intent and **purpose** of *The Old Covenant* (Galatians 3:24). *The New Covenant* had a greater “**glory**” which can give “**life**,” when you repent and receive God’s Holy Spirit. The Letter only results in death. But, in **the spirit**, you receive **salvation**. “**The letter**” and “**the spirit**” are diametrically **opposed** to each other and therefore, you cannot keep both, The Letter of The Law and The Spirit of The Law. **You cannot have it both ways** (Hebrews 8:6-13). Romans 7 and Romans 8 are the chapters that spell out the details about how The Law is being **spiritually** written in your hearts and minds. As long as you are in the flesh, The Law has dominion over your lives (Romans 7:1). Then Paul reveals the results when you die spiritually and no longer live in this flesh. The Law no longer has any dominion when you die. Read Romans 7:1-5. Verse 6 continues the theme and states that when you are dead in Christ, you are no longer obligated to keep The Letter of The Law with all its legal demands.

From the time of your **repentance** and acceptance of Christ in **faith**, you become responsible to serve The Law **only** in the newness of “**the spirit**” – and no longer in The Letter with its “**works**” and “**deeds**.” This is *The Bible* plainly speaking to you! Romans 7:7-20 explains **the purpose** for The Letter of The Law. It was

given to show just how sinful you are in this flesh. In fact, by your own human efforts, you cannot keep from sinning. This, then, brings you to **repentance** – or a complete change of mind.

In Romans 7:18, Paul said that nothing good dwells in his own flesh. This is why it is so difficult to stop being a sinner. When Paul repented, he found there were two laws within himself. After the inward man (**spiritually**, in his mind), Paul delighted in God's Law; but he was captivated by The Law **of sin "in his flesh"** (Romans 7:19-24). How was Paul going to be **saved** (Verse 25)? Thankfully, he could be **saved**, but only through Jesus Christ "in him." That means a Christian must have Jesus change your nature by writing The Law in your heart and mind.

Being In The Spirit

At this point, you should understand that, as Christians, there is nothing you, with your own human abilities, can do to please God. Now, you can be free. You are not obligated to keep The Letter of The Law with all its legal requirements. Keeping The Law **spiritually** goes beyond even God's written *Torah* or The Law. The Spirit of The Law goes beyond the legal "**works**" of The Law. Keeping The Law **spiritually** involves your heart and Christian motivation alone. The Spirit of The Law demands a loving heart – the kind that Jesus Christ had. The keeping of The Letter of The Law does nothing for **salvation**. It won't make you Holy like God.

Besides God's Holy Days (which are no longer required for Christians), **all other days** that were manufactured from human reasonings are, also, excluded. In Colossians 2:8, Paul warned the people not to allow any **traditions of men** to **spoil you**. This includes Christmas, Easter, Halloween, etc, and all other human ideas such

as asceticism. This is the attempt to be pious by running away from society and living a life of solitude. Paul explained that these are, “...**the commandments and doctrines of men...**” (Colossians 2:22). Paul admits that all these human attempts which are determined by humans to please God have, indeed, a show of wisdom “...**in will worship...**” (Verse 23).

Depriving the human body, such as starving oneself or taking a vow of silence for God, does not please God at all. Why is this? It is because all of your human efforts of attempting to be religious can never make you **perfect, holy, or righteous**. These things can never make you like God and are not needed or wanted by God. Only Christ in you can do that. Now, you are ready to search *The Scriptures* and prove how Christians should keep The Law **spiritually** but only in your hearts and minds. Your hope for deliverance from your sinful nature is through Jesus Christ only (Romans 7:25). As a Christian and having **Christ** “**In You,**” you cannot be condemned any longer of your sinful bodies. The Greek word for “condemned” is “katakrito” or “taken to trial.” You no longer need to appear before The Judge in The Day of Judgment (Romans 8:1). Any time that you, as a Christian, commit sin, you have a special pass where you can immediately pray to God and through Christ, **repent**. Then you are forgiven. Therefore, you have no condemnation when you errantly sin. This is a very simple formula and a great GIFT from God, your Father.

Paul states, The Law of The Spirit makes you free from The Law of sin and death, which is The Letter of The Law (Verse 2). Clearly, Verses 3 and 4 declare that **the righteousness** of God’s Law of The Letter is fulfilled in you as you walk, not in the flesh, but after **the Spirit**. For a Christian, The Law must only be kept **spiritually** to receive **salvation**. The Law is always in force, but **spiritually**.

Going on, Paul explains that when you are carnally minded, it can only produce death (Verse 6). It is a matter of your mind and not your human deeds or efforts. Keeping The Law **spiritually** has to do with your mind and heart, not your body or any **works** or good **deeds** you may perform. Romans 8:8 plainly states, no one can please God by trying to be **righteous** through their own human effort. Since this is **true**, you no longer should worry about keeping The Letter of The Law, because you, now, have God's Holy Spirit "**in you**." By this means, you know instinctively **right** from wrong without the need for The Letter of The Law (Romans 8:9). Why? Because God's **love** is "**in you**" by His Holy Spirit.

With **Christ "In You,"** the body is dead and The Law has no dominion over you (Romans 7:1). You are **righteous** (Romans 8:10) only when you have **the spirit of life** in your mind and heart. You are no longer a debtor to the flesh (no sin), but with The Spirit of God "**in you**," you are His Son (Verses 12-14). You become an "heir" with Christ and will be **glorified** when you receive **salvation**, as occurred with Christ (Verse 17).

Created For Vanity

When Adam and Eve were in The Garden of Eden, God said that everything He created was very "**good**" (Genesis 1:31). At this point, there was no sin. This newly created couple were living in God's **rest** – The Seventh Day – when God had completed all His **work**. They couldn't even die because The Tree of Life was there for them to eat – if only they had chosen The Tree of Life. At this point, Adam and Eve had complete freedom of choice to keep living or die. God's intent was for them to eat of The Tree of Life (Genesis 3:24). They, however, chose to die by eating the fruit from The Tree of Good and Evil instead of The Tree of Life, which gave **life**. They, then, were removed from The Garden.

They no longer had access to The Tree of Life. Many do not really understand sin and why, as humans, one cannot stop sinning. The plain **biblical truth** will be explained. Read Romans 8:20-23 and you will find that God, Himself created you to be sinners from the very beginning. Why?

It was in the hope that you would eventually become His Sons and Daughters. In fact, the entire universe is held in the bondage of corruption and inevitably will die.

All humans die. The same is true for everything in the entire physical Universe. Everyone and everything is subject to death. Even the stars are consumed by devouring black holes. Planets come – and planets go. The entire universe is waiting for a new dimension, “**a spiritual one.**” It is the dimension where one cannot and will not “**die**” (Romans 8:22). God’s **kingdom** is a **spiritual kingdom**. It will be a **new heaven** and a **new earth**, where there is no death or corruption (Revelation 21:1).

Sin

Why do you sin? It is because in the flesh you are corruptible, so you will die. However, you are forced to struggle for life itself. You need to protect yourself. **You are in a life-preserving type of bondage to keep yourself alive.** If someone tries to kill you, you will do anything to protect yourself.

When you are hungry, you will try everything to be able to eat and drink. If not, you die. To survive, you will steal food and water. You always struggle to survive! You, also, need to be careful not to fall, nor to harm yourself accidentally or die from a serious accident. You constantly protect yourself, your family and loved ones. In all of this, you are much like the animals in God’s realm.

This is what carnality is all about – the survival of the fittest. You are like any beast or animal who is struggling against all the circumstances of the environment which could cause death.

The early bird eats the worm so it can live, but while the bird lives, the worm dies. You kill animals to eat them. In extreme events, some will kill other humans to keep from being killed. God made everyone carnal – man and the animals.

Being mortal makes you fight to survive. And yet in the end, all are destined to die. You can't help sinning when you are striving to live. The entire universe has been created this way. You must protect yourself in striving to eat, drink, be clothed, protected, etc. And yet, you still end up dying. You were created to sin. The entire creation is waiting for the **redemption** of the body. Why? Romans 8:21 gives the complete answer, "**Because the creature [humans] itself also shall be delivered from the bondage of corruption [death] into the glorious liberty of the children of God**" (Romans 8:21). Now, you have **the truth**.

When you receive **salvation**, you are no longer subject to death or corruption. You will be at **liberty** (as an immortal) and no longer subject to sin – or concerned with survival by protecting yourselves. The pulls of the flesh will no longer exist. God's Law will be written in your heart and mind. You will be Holy just as God and His Son are Holy or **perfect**.

In the Greek language, the word "liberty" is "eleutheria" and "eleutheros." When defined, they mean "**freedom**" or "**unrestrained**" (to go at pleasure). They mean "freeborn" or "able to do whatever you want." There are no laws. There is no one telling you to obey them. There is no control except within yourself. This is **real liberty** and **true freedom**. When you are God's Sons, you will

be **free** to do whatever you want. Does that mean you will want to commit sin? God forbid, you will never sin – because you will never **want** to do anything wrong (Romans 6:15-18). You will be Holy, **good** or **perfect**.

Once God writes His Laws in your minds and hearts, you will become **servants** of **righteousness**! You will only want to do what is “**right**.” Why? It is because you will be God’s Son, as Christ is, who is **perfect, righteous, loving** and **holy**.

This happens when God writes His Ten Commandments in your heart and mind. The Letter of The Law – or any other Law cannot do what only **Christ “In You” can**. The Apostle Paul, in Galatians 4:24-26 said, The Letter of The Law given at Mount Sinai can only give bondage or death. Those in The Spirit of The Law are **free** or have complete **liberty** to do what they want. Only keeping God’s Law **spiritually** can give you **salvation**. How can that happen?

Spiritual Law Gives Liberty

Unless, and until, you allow God to write His Law in your heart and mind, you cannot be entrusted with **true liberty** or **eternal life**. If a Christian must depend on a written “Letter of The Law” to know what is “**right**” or “**wrong**,” then **the gift of salvation** cannot be given.

Only God is **perfect**. Anything less doesn’t receive God’s grace (Matthew 19:17). “Liberty” in the Greek is “eleutheros.” The Greek term conveys “**unrestrained freedom**.” A **saved person** who is as God and a Son of God, will only do “**good**” just as God, The Father and His Son, Jesus. One becomes a free human being, to independently do whatever they choose, by their free choice.

You are no longer a slave to anyone, including your own carnal nature. In this **life**, you are a slave (Greek – “doulos”) allowing your total human **life** to be mastered by Jesus Christ. When you are **glorified** as Christ and God, The Father, you become a totally-free “**being**” as His Sons and Daughters (II Corinthians 6:18). You will no longer be a slave to anyone. You are no longer in bondage. You can, then, do whatever you choose. God knows that since He is **all and in all**, you will always choose to do only “**good**.” This is so, because The Law is now written in your heart and mind. Your way of thinking, as well as your motivations and desires, will be to do only “**good**” – since God has made you “**perfect**” – just as He is “**perfect**.” This can only happen if you submit to His Will to become like Him – with His Law written in your nature, being and heart. Then, and only then, is The Law **truly spiritual** (Romans 2:14-15).

Summary

Biblically, it is proved that today the observance of The Letter of The Law is not required for Christians. The written Law is only a shadow of *The New Covenant* (Hebrews 10:1). Only keeping The Law **spiritually** pleases God and this grants you **the gift of salvation**.

The Letter of The Law, *The Torah*, with all its legalism of **works**, does absolutely nothing to please God (Romans 8:8). The Holy and **righteous purpose** of The Law was given as a means to convert people – or lead them to Christ. That was the reason God gave The Letter of The Law under The Administration of Moses to bring one to death. The Law was given as a vehicle for unconverted, unrighteous, stiff-necked people to make them understand that, by any human effort, they could not make themselves righteous (I Timothy 1:7-10). Once you see that you are a sinner,

knowing you only need God through His Son, Jesus, to repent and have a change of mind, then, you become dead with Christ. The Law no longer has dominance over your **life**. Now, after baptism which is a symbol of death, you **rest** in Christ and God” (Hebrews 4). His Son writes His Law in your heart **spiritually**. That is *The New Covenant* (Hebrews 8). *The Old Covenant* no longer has any hold on a Christian.

All the shadows of The Law (which were never real) now through Christ, become a reality of **the truth** of God. Christ becomes your Passover or your **Communion**. Jesus makes you unleavened or sinless. Only Christ gives you His Holy Spirit (Pentecost) – and then He makes you “**one with God**” (Atonement). The Works of The Law are only shadows and never were the real thing. They are only a **reality** or **truth** when they come to fruition. This fulfillment or completion of The Law happens to Christians when **Christ is “in you”** (Colossians 1:27).

The converted mind now looks totally to Christ and the converted “**mind**” has **Christ “In You.”** This changes your human nature to a Godly nature by writing His Laws in your **heart** and **mind** (Philippians 2:5). The Law is now **truly spiritual**. It represents a **spiritually-growing** Christian who lives in **the faith** of Christ. Then, and only then, can God give you **the gift of eternal life**. God will never entrust **eternity** to someone who is not Holy or **perfect** as He is.

Once you are **glorified** as God’s Son or Daughter, then you will have complete “**liberty**.” There will be no laws required, because of God’s Law written in your very nature. You will be just like Your Father in **heaven**, and His Son, Jesus. This takes absolute **FAITH** in Christ.

CHAPTER 15

HOW FAITH SAVES

When Martin Luther advocated that faith “alone” could save a person (without doing anything), it became the impetus to jump-start The Protestant Reformation. Since that time, hundreds of different denominations have formed – each believing that only their own specialized ideas about faith can give you salvation. Therefore, you must ask the question: “Should this faith merely be limited to belief in God and His Son?” Or is there more to the story? Just how does faith save you? Ultimately, each person must ask: “How does faith produce ‘eternal’ life?” Do you know the answer?

Christ’s Salvation Statement

Jesus couldn’t have stated it any clearer. He declared, “**Verily, verily, [absolute truth] I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life**” (John 5:24).

Without reservation, Christ couldn’t have presented **the truth** in a clearer manner. Jesus proclaimed that if you believe – or have complete **faith** in God, The Father – then you will not die. That should be comforting to all. But, there is more. Besides this great claim by Jesus, He goes on to report that you will not even

be brought to trial in The Last Judgment. This is because, if you have that special kind of “**faith**” then you already have passed from death to **life**.

How can a person who believes in The Word of God find this formula any simpler? Can anyone understand **salvation** in more basic terms than these very **words of Christ, The Savior**? If you have already done this and keep absolute **faith** in God, then you have obtained **salvation**!

Are Works Necessary?

Some Christians say that you can't **merely** believe in God and Jesus and then automatically be **saved**. They say that you must do good **works**. You are told to perform **righteous acts**. In their way of thinking, **faith** does **save** you, but the idea is that there must be something more that you have to do to receive **immortality**. To the natural mind of man, it does not seem fair to receive something of this magnitude as a **gift** alone. So man's natural mind tends to think in terms of **earning it** – or at least partially so.

But, there is even more to this equation. Going further with this line of thinking, there are those Christians who say that you must follow The Letter of The Law as the only avenue to be **saved**. This notion goes a step further. You will probably be told by these well-meaning people that by doing so, only then will you **prove** your **faith**. In other words, if **you** don't take positive action, then your **faith** is not real. Is this what *The Bible* teaches?

On the other side of the equation, there are those individuals who feel there is complete sufficiency for **saving** them by merely believing in God and Christ. These people teach that a person only has to **believe** and then, **salvation** is theirs. These two views are

poles apart. So, this situation presents a basic problem of discernment. In all honesty, the question you must ask yourself is, “Which line of thinking is **biblically** correct?”

Admonition By James

The entire *Epistle of James* deals with **faith**. But more than that, the topic is **faith** that **saves** a person. Yet, in all this, you will find that **works**, also, seem to be a necessary part of the experience. James declared:

Yea, a man may say, Thou hast faith; and I have works: shew me thy faith without thy works, and I will shew thee my faith by my works (James 2:18).

What is James saying? He is telling you to prove your **faith**. In order to do that, a person must have some **works**. The idea is that the **works** prove that a person is **faithful** – and actually believes in God and Christ.

Human Reasoning

Consider the following statement. “**Works** clearly prove one has **faith**.” This means that, as a result of a person’s **faith**, the evidence of that **faith** is positive action of performing certain **works**. By logic this means, “Without the **works**, there is no evidence of **the faith**.” This basic idea can take many forms. In fact, today you will probably find a “Heinz variety” of notions about what type of **works** can prove (or reveal) a person’s **faith**. Is this the way it should be?

When you stop to think about it, these ideas sound like they are

being **added on** to a basic simplicity that is being lost in the process. Therefore, why not consult *The Bible*? What does *The Bible* say? Some say you should keep The Letter of The Law. Others say “going to church, praying and fasting does the trick.” Still others declare that “being pious” is the true religious answer for proving your **faith**. On and on it goes with an accumulation of **human reasonings** about which type of religious **works** are able to prove your Christian **faith**. Consequently, many believe that if you have **true faith**, then you have proof (Christ’s “**words**”) that the right kind of **faith** will guarantee **salvation**.

What Is Faith?

Many sermons have been given by numerous ministers over the past centuries to prove what **faith** is. Paul said, “**Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen**” (Hebrews 11:1). Paul said that **true faith** occurs when you **believe**, with certainty, that you will be **saved** – knowing and believing what God reveals in His “**word**” will actually happen through His Son Jesus. This is *The Bible* definition of **real faith**. In other words, Your Savior, God’s Son, declares to you how that **faith** will actually guarantee **salvation**.

Faith Is Spiritual

Paul warned “**the first century**” Christians to stay away from **philosophy** or **the traditions of men**, which come from the rudiments of the world and not from Christ (Colossians 2:8). The word “rudiments” in the Greek language is defined as “anything which comes from human effort.”

Jesus told how a person is to worship God. He said, “**God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit**

and in truth” (John 4:24). All human efforts to become righteous – or to worship God by human abilities – are worthless. Paul states this also very plainly in Philippians 2. Any **works** that are produced by **faith** must, therefore, be a **spiritual matter**. Since **faith saves** you, then your **faith** must be **spiritual** – just as God writes His Law in your heart and mind by **spiritual** means.

Faith or belief in God, The Father and in His Son, Jesus and everything that God and Christ reveal through God’s “**word**” is a **spiritual entity** (Romans 2:14-15). Faith is a total state of mind, or **repentance**. Faith has nothing to do with what you do in the flesh. The flesh brings you death, whereas, **the spirit** gives you **life**. Therefore, **faith** only concerns the operation of the mind. In Greek, the word for “mind” is “pneuma” or “spirit.” This is what gives the **life** energy to your mind! It makes you conscious, with the ability to think.

When the mind is left to itself without **faith** in God, it is free to create any belief that humans can think up. Consequently, many different kinds of belief systems have been invented. Since God has given you total free choice, just as He, Himself, has total free choice, then, it is up to you to choose **life** or death. **Faith** is a belief system, which allows you to decide to believe whatever you want. It is an act of free will. In science it is called “The World Paradigm.” It is how you choose to see or understand what you have decided to believe. It all comes down to a choice of your heart and mind. This is a mental act, pure and simple.

Godly Faith

The Apostle Paul explained how there are three important **gifts** God gives to humanity – **faith**, **hope**, and **love** (“agapè” in the Greek). Paul states how these **three gifts** are what Christians

should seek:

And now abideth faith, hope, charity, these three; but the greatest of these is charity (I Corinthians 13:13).

It should be of interest to you that the three groups of *Epistles* written by James, Peter and John concentrate upon these same **three gifts** – **faith, hope and love**. It is even more interesting that these three topics appear in the same order as prescribed by Paul in I Corinthians 13:13. James talks about **faith**, Peter explains **hope** and then John's theme is **love**. Just check those *Epistles*, and you will see how those three identifying words appear quite frequently in each of them. Now, **faith** which comes from God by His Holy Spirit is a **gift**, which God gives to those who are repentant (Acts 2:38). Faith affects your heart, desire, motivation and mind – to see things God's "way" ONLY.

Christ's Mind

Jesus told The Pharisees, "...**Ye judge after the flesh**" (John 8:15). The Greek word for "judge" in this case is "krino" or "put on trial." Christ explained to them how they view various actions by others, only as seen in the flesh. This results in **unjust judgment**. Their worldly view or mind only looks at things from a human standpoint. So, this way of thinking was their only method of judging. But, Christ continued the discourse, and said, "He judged no man."

Jesus did not perceive things from His **human** point of view. Jesus said His **witness** is from The Father who tells Him how to judge (John 8:14-18). In Verse 26, Christ would only report what The Father had told Him to say. Why is this?

Faith, The Commandment For Life

The reason Jesus reported what God, The Father told Him, was to illustrate how He **totally obeyed** and **honored** His Father, “**Jesus answered, I have not a devil; but I honour My Father, and ye [Pharisees] dishonour me**” (John 8:49). Now, you can understand why **faith saves**. Christ said that He came only to speak God’s “**words**” in order to give honor to His Father. Furthermore, Jesus kept The Fifth Commandment, which promises long **life!** Jesus kept The Fifth Commandment **spiritually**

Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee (Exodus 20:12).

Since The Ten Commandments were written in stone (or “**the letter**”) they could only promise long **life** here on this earth. Israel had a carnal heart and so they could only keep The Letter of The Law – which was written in stone. This promised them long **life** here **on earth only**. There was no **salvation**, or **eternal life**. So, The Letter of The Law could **not save** anyone until God wrote The Ten Commandments in their hearts and minds (Deuteronomy 5:29). With Jesus, it was different. It was a matter of **faith** or **spiritually** honoring The Father, because of His belief in His Father. Consequently, Christ manifested total **faith**. It was a type of **faith** that no human had ever manifested before.

Source Of The Miracles

It is important to see how Christ said that, of Himself, He could do nothing. Twice in one chapter, Jesus declared:

“...The Son can do nothing of himself...” (John

**5:19). "...I can of mine own self do nothing..."
(John 5:30).**

This is a form of double emphasis. Do you understand Christ's mind-set? In His **mind**, Jesus believed that He could, of Himself, do nothing. He admitted it outright. However, He had great **faith!** He believed every "**word**" of God. He trusted in God – and not in Himself. In His paradigm of "how He saw things," He sincerely recognized that He had no ability **in His human flesh** to do anything. Jesus went on to say that He only did what He heard from His Father or else that which He had **seen** of His Father:

**I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father
which hath sent me (John 5:30).**

This same text shows that the judgment of Jesus was **only** to seek (or to do) "His Father's **will**" – not His Own. What **faith!** What honor He gave The Father! He had a complete and absolute respect for His Dad. Christ had full **faith** and **belief** in God, The Father, and only did His Father's **will** – according to God's "**word.**" That is the next important point. Jesus did all this according to God's "**word.**" It was God's **doctrine**, as well as, God's **works**. Notice how clear this is made from the "**words**" of Jesus Himself:

**Jesus answered them, and said, My doctrine is not
mine, but his that sent me (John 7:16).**

What a powerful claim! This concerns the matter of doctrine, in addition to the act of performing the actual "**works**" by and through Jesus. All responsibility is on the shoulders of The Father. And The Son trusted in The Father. Then, Jesus gave the last word. It concerned His doctrine and the source of it. Jesus said:

If any man will do his will, he shall know of the doctrine, whether it be of God, or whether I speak of myself (John 7:17).

Christ Kept The Fifth Commandment

Jesus honored His Father not merely in “**the letter**” but in “**the spirit**,” because He was totally humble like unto a little child (Matthew 18:4). He lived by every “**word**” of God and only followed God’s “**will**” (Matthew 4:4).

Christ regarded nothing in His human ability, but was totally in subjection to His Father’s “**will**.” This was for Him a state of **spiritually**, keeping The Fifth Commandment in His **mind** and **heart**. That is total, absolute and complete **faith** in His Father – His Father, who had given Him **eternal life**. This is the reason **this level of supreme faith saves**. By keeping The Fifth Commandment, **spiritually**, in **faith**, Christ demonstrated complete belief in His Father. Most human parents desire to receive this from their children.

Any loving parent only wants the best for their children. Therefore, it pleases the parents when the children honor their parents by believing they would tell the children only what is good for them. This is the **faith** process being developed at an early age.

Many worthy parents receive this kind of faith from their children and that is **the faith** God wants. God is **the supreme parent**, because God has an unlimited supply of good things to give to His children. Isaiah wrote:

**Neither hath the eye seen, O God, beside thee,
what he hath prepared for him that waiteth for**

him (Isaiah 64:4).

This message is so important, that The Apostle Paul repeated this Isaiah text in his instruction to The Corinthian Church (I Corinthians 2:9). This is extremely good news for you. Just think of the implications. Having this great promise in mind, your desire should be to show absolute respectful honor to God.

To believe every “**word**” He tells you. That is why Christ is loved by His Father. He was the only One who had complete **faith** in His Dad.

Consequently, Jesus sought only to do His Father’s “**will**” – and listened only to His “**word**.” That is the kind of **faith** that **saves** humanity. This is also, why, at Christ’s baptism, God said, “**This is my beloved son, in whom I am well pleased**” (Matthew 3:17). Jesus always believed His Father. That is **the faith** that **saves!** Nothing else will do.

Only Faith Saves

Christ said that, just as He honors God, you, by honoring His Son, will also be honoring God, The Father (John 5:19-23). God’s “**work**” is to believe on Him whom God has sent (John 6:29). If you believe all that Christ said and decide to give Him honor, then along with Jesus, **you, too, will have eternal life** (John 5:24). You will be living every “**word**” of God – just like Christ (Matthew 4:4). By doing so, you will demonstrate your **faith** by your **works** of living every “**word**” of God. This is done, in, and through His Son, Jesus (Hebrews 1:2). Because of this **faith**, you have passed from death to **life** (John 5:24). You would have **spiritually** kept God’s Fifth Commandment. This represents **the spiritual commandment for life**. God only wants you to believe Him by show-

ing your complete **faith** in Your Father, just as Christ did. That is all any loving, honorable parent wants.

THE SIN OF SATAN AND JOB

Now, you must analyze two opposite “beings” in order to understand the identity of their individual sin. This analysis provides an interesting perspective. Job was perfect and upright and one who feared God and hated evil (Job 1:1). But how good can an individual be? What was Job’s sin? That is a reasonable question. On the other end of the scale, you find Satan was a liar and the father of lies (John 8:44). He was the one who “...**abode not in the truth...**” (Verse 44). Satan did not continue in God’s “**word**” – and neither did Satan’s disciples. Jesus said, “...**If ye continue in my word...**” (John 8:31).

Based on the perspective above, it would only seem logical that God would **save** Job but not Satan. Satan was the absolute sinner, while Job was perfect and upright. Would you believe that both were guilty of the same sin? If that were so, then even if a person may be totally perfect and upright, he can still be a sinner.

The problem with Job was that he was self-righteous about the good he had been doing through his own efforts. He lacked **faith**. Only **faith** can **save** you through Christ. Job kept The Letter of The Law by his own human efforts. He did not understand that only God can change a person’s nature from carnal to **spiritual**. Only God, by His Son Jesus, can change anyone’s mind and heart to keep His Commandments. Only **Christ “In You,”** by His Holy Spirit, can do that. It is Christ’s **righteousness** – and not yours. That takes complete **faith** in Christ.

Job finally learned that lesson and said, “**I know that thou canst**

do everything, and that no thought can be withholden from thee” (Job 42:2). Job finally gained complete **faith** in God and was **saved** from his miserable situation. Being righteous didn't give him **salvation** – and yet **faith** did. Job believed that he would be **saved**, but he finally understood that only God could **save** (Job 19:26-27).

Satan wasn't much different. He was a heinous sinner and liar. But he was even more than that. Satan lacked what it took to be in God's **kingdom**. Also, he didn't want to believe or follow God. Satan lacked **faith**. However, just like Job, Satan was also **perfect**. In Ezekiel 28:15, God said that when Satan was created, he was perfect **in his ways**. Satan was a cherub or a high-ranking angel of God, before he sinned. In both cases (Job and Satan), they were self-righteous. Isn't that amazing? Because Satan was wise and beautiful, he believed in himself – just as Job did. Therefore, he decided not to believe God (Verse 17). Satan lacked **faith (belief)** in His Creator – just like Job. However, Job finally repented – and had complete **faith** in God – while Satan continued to disobey.

Without Faith There Is No Salvation

In Romans 14:23, Paul said, “...**for whatsoever is not of faith is sin.**” He also shows that it is impossible to please God; until one has **faith** like Noah, he cannot be righteous (Hebrews 11:6-7). Why is this? It is because God will not give **salvation** to anyone who doesn't believe God, The Father. In your heart and mind, you must **spiritually** keep The Fifth Commandment. In this way, you can be given **life** or **salvation**.

How righteous or good you are by means of your own human ability is **not enough**. Keeping The Letter of The Law doesn't do it.

You can only please God in “**the spirit**” (John 4) and, therefore, you must believe every “**word**” which God, The Father tells you by His Son, Jesus. Only **faith**, which is believing everything your Father tells you to do, can **save** you. You must **honor** God – just as Christ believed every “**word**” of God, His Father (Matthew 4:4).

What Works?

What did James mean when he said, “...**shew thee my faith by my works**” (James 2:18). What **works** are these? It isn’t how good or righteous you make yourself feel by your own human effort, but how much you believe every “**word**” that God reveals in His “**word**” (“**logos**”) by His Son, Jesus. Faith in your Father is what God wants. Believe your Dad. He is your **parent** who loves you. That is how **faith saves**.

Hebrews Eleven

Read Hebrews 11. It is The Faith Chapter, par excellence. Not one example of **faith** listed in the chapter has anything to do with how good or perfect God’s **chosen people** are. King David was a sinner, a murderer and adulterer. But he totally believed God when he defeated Goliath. That is **faith** in God.

Noah had **faith** when he built **the ark**. It **saved** him and his family from the flood. Abraham, also, was told to sacrifice his son, Isaac. He believed God in **faith** that He would resurrect Isaac in order to keep His **promise** to Abraham. This **faith** was Abraham’s **righteousness**. He did whatever God told him. In like manner, you must also believe every “**word**” that your Father tells you to do by His Son, Jesus. These are “**the works**,” which prove your **faith** – and **the faith** of all Christians. In **faith**, you believe Christ

dwells in you by God's Holy Spirit. This **faith** is **spiritual**. Only God can give you that "**gift of faith**" so that you will be **saved**.

The short of it is: **Godly faith** "**saves**." It has nothing to do with how righteous you can become on your own. It has nothing to do with how many "**works**" you do. You can't earn any badges. Only Christ's **righteousness** can accomplish that – and this takes Godly **faith** (Romans 1:17, Galatians 2:20 and Matthew 6:33).

By performing every "**word**" of God you show God's **works** "in you." It is the believing and honoring of Your Father that forms **the faith** that **saves**. You must keep growing in that **faith** by listening to every "**word**" "that God tells you in His "**word**." By this means, you grow **spiritually** on a continuous basis as long as you draw breath (Romans 10:17).

CHAPTER 16

SABBATH IS A SIGN

Who is a Sabbatarian? There are those who say that only the first day of the week is The Sabbath. Others, such as those of the Muslim faith, say the sixth day is The Sabbath. Then there are those who insist that only the seventh day can be The Sabbath.

Those who say it is the first day, do so because they feel it is the day Christ was resurrected. They declare that Revelation 1:10 tells how John received his “revelation” on The Lord’s Day. Therefore, because of that reasoning, some believe that the day Jesus was resurrected, designates it as The Sabbath. They insist they are the real Sabbath keepers. Who is a true Sabbatarian in God’s sight?

Who Decides?

Is it possible to prove **biblically** which day is truly God’s Sabbath Day? Yes, it is! In Colossians 2:8, The Apostle Paul said that no human ideas or decisions can be rendered by means of the **rudiments of the world**.

The Greek word for “rudiment” is “stoicheion.” It comes from the root, “stoicheo,” which is “to march in rank or order.” Religiously, it means “to conform to virtue and piety.” It is an estab-

lished system or an order of belief. But what kind of religious piety is this? Paul states in Verse 8, that these religious ideas, come from the world. In other words, this is humanity's system of deciding for themselves how they want to worship God. So, **no church, minister or person has any divine right to supersede what Christ tells you.** Paul ended the verse by explaining that you can only depend on what Christ reveals.

In Matthew 4:4, Jesus plainly stated man should live by every **"word"** of God. If God's **"word"** doesn't reveal **the truth**, then you need to be aware of all humanly-devised religious ideas. But, that is not the case. So, the proper definition of which day of the week is The Sabbath can only come from God's **"word,"** *The Bible*. Quite plainly and as usual, God's **truth** is simple. You should prove The Sabbath Day from God's **"word"** alone. When deciding on a basis of human reason that Jesus rose the first day of the week, it seems irrelevant to determining which day is The Sabbath. This form of reasoning is, also, irrelevant concerning other **biblical issues.**

What Paul Said

What did Paul have to say about The Sabbath? The entire chapter of Hebrews 4 explains which day is The Biblical Sabbath – and how to keep it. In Hebrews 4:4, you find that The **Seventh** Day is the day that God **rested**. In The Garden of Eden God **rested** after His labors. You can read about the length of time required for creating the earth (Genesis 2:2-3). It was in six days. Then, it was on The Seventh Day that God **rested**. This was the day that God sanctified to make it Holy.

God never sanctified **any other day in** *The Bible*. As Christians, you must live by every **"word"** of God. Without any doubt, only

The Seventh Day is God's Sabbath. None of the other ideas generated by man can fulfill this role of The Sabbath.

The weekly Sabbath is the day The Jews have always kept. It is, also, observed by some Christians. Jesus agreed with The Jews that The Seventh Day was the real Sabbath, even though they blamed Him for breaking The Sabbath when He healed many followers on this **rest day** (Matthew 8 and 9).

Why Is This Important?

The Seventh Day must have a very Holy and significant meaning, not only to Christians, but to God, Himself. God told Moses why The Seventh Day Sabbath is so important (Exodus 31:13-18). God is declaring His **truth**, "...¹³**my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the Lord that doth sanctify you.**"

Paul clarifies the matter further when he said that all The Sabbaths, including The Seventh Day, reveal that it is God who makes them Holy (Colossians 2:16-17). Why is this? It is because these days are only a shadow (or type) of elements of a future fulfillment.

It concerns God sanctifying (or creating) Sons and Daughters as His Son, Jesus and Himself. It is a "**sign**" **for those who can perceive its real meaning and purpose.**

What Type Of Sign?

The Hebrew for "sign" is "owth" (Exodus 31:13). It "conveys information" like a "beacon," "monument," "mark" or "evidence" regarding how God sanctifies you to become His Son. An example would be driving your car into a town and before you enter,

you notice a sign is posted with the town's name.

Most towns and cities have a sign acknowledging that you have arrived in the district of that particular town or city. It is "the mark" or "evidence" that the town begins at that point.

If you were driving into God's town, the sign would say "Seventh Day Sabbath." That would be its beginning. Under the sign, it may state how friendly the town is by welcoming you. This town might announce that it is "where God's people live in complete **rest**." So, The Seventh Day Sabbath is an extremely important time. It is when God reveals how He brings His people to **salvation** by procreating Sons and Daughters. There is no other day of the week besides The Seventh Day that God made Holy. Any human ideas that justify the observance of another weekly day as being The Sabbath is completely bogus. Unless you live by every "**word**" of God and not by humanly devised ideas, you are not obeying your Father.

However, you may know what day of the week is God's Sabbath, but how are you to keep it? Furthermore, what is a real Sabbatarian? Remember, you have read how The Sabbath is to be a **sign** between God and His people. What kind of a sign is this? You find The Sabbath is a Day of **rest**. It is God's Day of **rest** – just as He **rested** in *The Book of Genesis*. But plainly, it is merely a **sign** that only God can sanctify or make Holy – as He is Holy. Many times you mistakenly read *The Bible*, and only take a part of its meaning. In this way, you can **miss its entire purpose**.

In retrospect, you have found that the observance of The Seventh Day is accomplished by doing "**no work**." However, if you, as Christians, observe The Seventh Day by doing no work, then realize that God said this is only a **sign**.

You have proved that a sign merely describes something. Remember, *The Torah* Law is only a shadow of things to come (Hebrews 10:1-2). You read in Colossians 2:16-17 that the weekly Sabbath is also a shadow of future things. The **body is of Christ** – and it is not just a shadow or sign like The Sabbath and its Seventh Day observance (Verse 17). When reading Colossians 2:9-10, it is obvious that Paul summarizes the **purpose** in writing this subject to The Colossians. Paul explains that in Christ (Colossians 1:27) “...**dwelleth all the fullness of the Godhead bodily**” (Verse 9).

Paul shows how in Christ “**you are complete**” – and need to do nothing else, humanly, for Christ (Verse 10). This is because Christ completes **all** that you need as Christians. It is the reason why Paul declares that no man should judge Christians concerning The Sabbath and God’s Holy Days, which are only “a shadow” or “sign of what is true or real.” You may tend to forget that The Law, which God gave to Moses, was intended for carnal, unrighteous, unconverted people. The Law was not meant for **converted righteous people** in Christ (I Timothy 1:6-10). You should **bibli-cally** illustrate the identity of a real Sabbatarian. This is the same as defining what a **true** Christian is all about.

The New Testament Sabbath Chapter

Chapter 4 of *Hebrews* explains the meaning of The Sabbath and how it applies to a Christian. However, the context about The Sabbath begins in Hebrews 3. In fact, you cannot understand the **spiritual** depth of Chapter 4 without first obtaining the required background of Chapter 3 in *The Book of Hebrews*.

The Apostle Paul said Christians have a heavenly calling through Christ as The Head Apostle and High Priest (Hebrews 3:1). In Hebrews 3:2-6, Paul continued his discussion by comparing Mo-

ses and Jesus, as both were **faithful** in their respective houses (their domain). Paul said that Moses' house, along with The Nation of Israel, was only to be a testimony (witness) to Christ's future "**house**" (Verse 5).

The significance of Moses' house (Israel) is discerned by understanding Israel. Moses' house was only to be a testimony or a **witness** of what was to become God's real house under Christ, which is **the church**. So, all The Law given to Moses, like *The Torah*, was not the ultimate **truth**. The Law in its entirety was only a shadow, type or sign of what was to come (Hebrews 10:1-2) that showed how God makes you Holy – to be His Sons and Daughters. A **testimony** or **witness** generally refers to a **will** or a **promise** for an **inheritance**. Moses' house, Israel, was only a **witness** of The True House under Christ. Moses and Israel became a sign of what was to come.

Colossians 2:16-17 informs you about this **Sabbath "sign"** serving only as a **shadow (testimony)** of the real Sabbath "**sign**," which was The Body of Christ or **the church** (Colossians 2:17). Just as Israel was to enter God's physical **rest** (Seventh Day – no work) in "**the promised land**" of Canaan, so likewise with Christ, **the church** enters God's **spiritual rest** in The Kingdom of God. Remember that The Sabbath, as a sign, shows how God makes you Holy as He is Holy. The observance of The Seventh Day Sabbath by allowing no work to be done, is only a type or shadow of **the church** entering God's real (or true) Sabbath – which is God's **kingdom** (manifested by Christ's **body**). This is the actual meaning of Colossians 2:16-17.

Then, in Hebrews 3:6, it states that Christians are The House that Christ is building. So, The Sabbath is a "**sign**" of what God is doing through Jesus who is building God's **house** (or family). This

is accomplished by means of Christians becoming Sons of God – who shall become Holy as God. Paul issues a warning to all Christians (Hebrews 3:7-11). He admonishes them not to be like their fathers (Israel) who hardened their hearts. That was why God did not allow that generation of Israelites to enter God’s **rest** or The Seventh Day Sabbath – which was only a shadow of God’s **rest** (Colossians 2:16-17). God decreed that particular generation of Israelites should die in the wilderness – so they never entered The Promised Land or God’s **rest** (Hebrews 3:12-19).

God calls The Holy Spirit to speak God’s “**word**” to Christians (Hebrews 3:7). The message declares, “...**Today if ye will hear His voice...**” The Seventh Day is not mentioned, but the entire period of a Christian’s “**life**” is compared to **today**. Christians are told not to lose **faith** or **hope** as the ancient Israelites did and who died in the wilderness. Your entire Christian “**life**” experience is to be in a Sabbath **rest** – not just for one day a week, but your entire **Christian life**. Paul said that Christians should take heed and not lose **faith** (Hebrews 3:12-15). Paul states, “¹³**But exhort one another daily, while it is called Today; lest any of you be hardened [lose faith] through the deceitfulness of sin.**” So the word “today,” **biblically**, is not applied to The Seventh Day but rather applies to “**the principle**” for a Christian that every day should be The Sabbath – or **resting** in Christ. Remember, The Seventh Day was only a sign (or shadow) of *Christ “In You.”* Real Sabbatarians live The Sabbath **rest** – **daily**, while it is “**today**” – with God’s Holy Spirit residing in you and making you Holy as your Father is Holy. That is what The Seventh Day “**sign**” represents.

Faith And Hope

You have learned that **faith** or belief in God, means to believe every “**word**” that God speaks through His Son, Jesus. This is

compared to honoring God's Fifth Commandment. If you do so, you will receive **salvation**. Paul said The Israelites sinned in the wilderness because they didn't believe God or have **faith** (Hebrews 3:19). He declares that because they didn't have **faith** in their God, there will remain an opportunity, later, to enter God's **rest** or **Sabbath** (Hebrews 4:6).

Hebrews 3:6: But Christ as a son over his own house; whose house are we, if we hold fast the confidence and the rejoicing of the hope firm unto the end.

Paul explains that in addition to **faith**, a Christian must continue in **hope** until **the end**. So **faith** and **hope** are two **gifts** from God that flow one from the other (I Corinthians 13:13). Faith is defined as the substance of things hoped for (Hebrews 11:1). **Faith** and **hope** are tied together when you believe God, in that He "**promises**" something for you in the future. You have the necessary **hope** by knowing it will happen. To this point, you are absolutely confident that you already have it. Faith is **the spiritual keeping** of The Fifth Commandment which insures long **life**. When you **spiritually rest** on The Seventh Day, you are **spiritually** keeping The Fourth Commandment, which is a "**promise**" from God allowing you to enter God's **rest**. What is God's **rest**? Remember, Christians must **rest** in Christ **daily**, and not merely observe The Seventh Day "**sign**."

God's Rest – A City

Paul states that since Israel hadn't entered God's **rest**, then, some would enter that **rest** in the future (Hebrews 4:6-11). A "**rest**" (Greek: "sabbatismos," "**rest**") for the people of God (**the church**) must take place just as God **rested** on The Seventh Day with Adam

and Eve (Verse 9). If Adam and his wife would have eaten from The Tree of Life (perhaps it was an olive tree), then they could have remained there with their children. The Seventh Day would never have ended – just as Paul explains that a Christians' **rest** in Christ is an **ongoing** event. For Christians, the particular day, seventh or otherwise, doesn't matter.

Plainly, you find that Paul states how, if you **rest** in Christ, it is the same as when God **rested** in The Garden of Eden (Verse 10). God's "**work**" was completed on The Seventh Day. All Adam and Eve had to do was eat of The Tree of Life. But they did not do this. Adam and Eve could have remained in God's Seventh Day **rest** just as Christians do, **today**, with God's Holy Spirit. Again, this is ongoing, as a daily affair. Paul gives you an additional insight. This concerns God's **rest** being a **promise** and until it becomes a reality, as Christians, you should not cease from **resting** in Christ, right to the very end (Hebrews 4:1). Paul declared in Hebrews 4:10 that Christians must cease from their own human **works** every day of their lives and totally **rest** in Christ. Which day is The Sabbath for Christians? There is no specific day – whether the seventh or any other day. The original Seventh Day Sabbath (God's **rest**) was only a shadow (or type) of a Christian **resting** each and every day of their **life in Christ**.

As Paul said, "**today**" (every day) in a Christian's **life** is a **rest** from human **works**. This includes totally relying on Christ by the power of God's Holy Spirit "**in you**" (Hebrews 3:13). As Christians, every human need in your lives should be left to Christ – in **faith**. What you eat or wear or any concern you may have for your own safety, does not matter. This is because you are at **rest** in Christ. By **resting** in Christ, God makes you Holy by His Holy Spirit. The Sabbath **sign** depicts you becoming Holy as God is Holy.

God's Promise

In Hebrews 11, Paul explained Abraham's **faith**. "**By faith Abraham, when he was called to go out into a place which he should after receive for an inheritance, obeyed [Fifth Commandment]: and he went out, not knowing whither he went**" (Hebrews 11:8). By **faith**, Abraham sojourned in **the land of promise**. Dwelling in a tabernacle is a temporary dwelling space. It means one hasn't entered their permanent inheritance. "**For he looked for a city which hath foundations, whose builder and maker is God**" (Hebrews 11:10).

Very clearly, **the promise** which is a **shadow** compares with The Seventh Day Sabbath, which was only a type of the real **house** that God is building as a Holy City (Hebrews 3:6, Ephesians 1:23 and Ephesians 2:22). Jesus didn't want Christians to worry, because He was building a place (mansion) in His Father's **house** (John 14:1-3). This is **the promised rest** in God's **house** which is located in God's City.

The New Jerusalem

Where is this **promised house** where God will dwell with Christians? John wrote about the future time when God will change the universe into a **new heaven** and a **new earth** (Revelation 21:1-4). At that time, God will dwell with mankind in **the tabernacle** or House of God. In that future world, you will inherit the complete Sabbath's "**rest**." There will be no more sorrow, pain, crying or even death. Christians will be at total **rest** (or **liberty**) with unconditional **freedom**.

Notice how this is not talking about one day – The Seventh Day or any other day – but the subject is eternity. Where is this place?

This is Holy Jerusalem descending out of heaven from God. God will be coming to earth. True Christians will meet Him in the clouds (Revelation 21:10). An example might be when you go to the airport or the train station to meet a relative or friend.

No one goes to heaven. The Christians who are then “saints” will meet Christ in the clouds. God is coming to the earth and will be bringing New Jerusalem down to this earth in order to dwell with men. New Jerusalem is this “**city**” or “**town of rest.**” It isn’t any one day – rather – it is “**forever.**” This is “**the mansion**” that Christ is building for you in His Father’s **house**. Christians will live in their father-in-law’s house as The Bride of Christ (John 14:1-3).

Keeping Of A Sabbath

To learn “the rest of the story” return to Hebrews 4. The problem with understanding who is the real Sabbath keeper (Sabbatarian) is the need to know the meaning of the words “**rest**” and “**Sabbath.**” There are different Greek words employed for “Sabbath” and “**rest**” in Hebrews 4. All of them have different understandings or meanings. The difference in Greek reveals **the truth** of the intended context.

Paul states that Christians have already entered into God’s **rest** (Hebrews 4:3). What kind of **rest** is this? Paul states that Christians have already entered The Seventh Day **rest** – just as in the beginning when God **rested** from all His “**work.**” Salvation was available to Adam and Eve (Verse 4).

They could have eaten from The Tree of Life and received God’s Holy Spirit. This is similar to the statement made by Paul when referring to Christians taking heed when he said “today.” The

“**word**” “today” obviously refers to this **whole period of human existence** where God’s Holy Spirit is available to humanity – just as “**the spirit**” was available for Adam and Eve to eat The Tree of Life – and then to live on in God’s Seventh Day – FOREVER. In *The Book of Hebrews*, Paul defines **true Sabbath-keepers** in a manner that is different from those who observe the legal requirement of The Letter of The Law. Rather, Paul reveals a **spiritual** process that operates by **faith** and **hope** – with Christ “**in them.**” Paul said that you had better fear, because you would not want to miss out on entering into His **rest**. This is God’s **promise** concerning New Jerusalem (Hebrews 4:1). In this case, the Greek word for “**rest**” is not speaking about the literal Seventh Day but rather concerns “**the rest**” which Christians are presently residing in, as long as Christ is “**in them**” (Colossians 1:27). In Strong’s Concordance, the Greek word for “**rest**” is “katapausis” (#2663). The prefix “kata” is concerned with “to be.” The word “pauis” has the same meaning as the English word “to pause” or “stop.” The word “katapausis” means something that for Christians, can be summed up as: “Christians find **rest** ‘or literally’ stop to pause in something.” This **rest** is His “**rest**” or **God’s “rest**” – as revealed in Hebrews 4:1-3. The word “**rest**” in Verse 3 is also “katapausis,” which continues where Paul said that it was God’s **rest** – when God finished His “**work.**” God is revealing **the true Sabbath meaning** to you in this section of text. When Christians are baptized in Christ, they are dead like Christ (Romans 7:6), but now they are no longer under the dominance of The Law or death. They are in Christ and therefore, in God’s **rest** – just as Adam and Eve on that first Seventh Day when **salvation** was made available to them.

Many Misunderstand

Many misunderstand this form of **rest** because the word in Greek

does not mean what many believe it to mean. The word for “**rest**” in Hebrews 4:9 in Greek is “sabbatismos.” In fact, many *Bible* translations, in their margins, render the true definition as “a keeping of The Sabbath.” Some immediately jump to the assumption that it refers to keeping The Seventh Day Sabbath. But it does not. It couldn’t be further from **the truth**. Check the word in Greek.

Strong’s word #4520 derives its definition from “word #4521” when referring to “The Seventh Day Sabbath.” This is only in regard to “a baptism” or figuratively “the repose” of Christianity serving as a type of New Jerusalem that is in heaven at the present time (Galatians 4:5). This is the **very promise** given to Abraham. When a Christian is “dead in Christ” (through Baptism), then Christians **rest**, “Sabbatismos” in Christ.

Therefore, Christians enter into God’s **rest**, “katapausis” and because they do, are in Christ – and are totally **at rest** from all their work (any and all human effort) (Hebrews 4:10). Now **Christ is “In You”** by His Holy Spirit, which in **faith** and **hope**, is the means by which you **heed** every “**word**” of God.

Christians stop all human effort or **works** to be righteous – or to try and please God by those works (Romans 8:8). Then, Hebrews 4:12 states how God’s “**word**” is compared to a sharp two-edged sword that changes you. It cuts both ways and reveals your true nature.

Growing Christians do not keep any specific day (Romans 6:14) because they are not in the shadow (type) of The Sabbath’s **rest** (Colossians 2:16). Rather, of a **truth**, they are actually experiencing God’s Holy Spirit giving them that **rest**, “katapausis” until **the promise (hope)** comes to pass – just as it will for Abraham (He-

brews 11:13). Paul warned Christians in Galatians 4:8-11 when The Gentiles kept pagan days (Easter, Halloween, Valentine's Day, etc), they were reverting back to observing days again (Colossians 2:16). Only in this case, these are days, which The Jews keep as God's Days, which God intended only for the unconverted (Galatians 4:12-28 and I Timothy 6:10).

Paul further states that your city is Jerusalem **"in heaven."** It is not like the earthly City of Jerusalem where they were in bondage requiring them to keep Legal Holy Days in **the temple.**

These were all days that were **"a shadow"** of Christ. When The Seventh Day Sabbath is to be observed, the Greek word is "sabbaton" not "sabbatismos." "Sabbaton" is only a shadow (Colossians 2:16), but **"the real rest"** for Christians is "sabbatismos." This is to be "baptized into Christ's death." **The true Sabbath rest**, where **Christ** is **"In You,"** gives you God's rest, **the rest of salvation.**

Christ Said The Same Thing

After healing the man who was infirmed for 38 years, Jesus said, **"My Father worketh hitherto, and I work"** (John 5:17). This healing was performed during God's Seventh Day Sabbath (Sabbaton) (John 5:18). Christ said that He **works** and even His Father **works** on The Sabbath (Sabbaton). The Greek word for "work" in this case is "ergozomai."

This word goes beyond "ergo" or "human works" but actually means "to toil" or have "a trade." In The Letter of The Law, Christ said that He toiled – which is contrary to the legal requirements of The Law. That is why Jesus gave the example of a man feeding and watering his ox on The Sabbath. That was real work

(“ergozomai,” “toil”) (Luke 13:15). Finally, Christ gave the example of King David proceeding into **the tabernacle**, where The King took the shewbread (which was an actual breaking of *The Torah*, The Law). David gave this bread to his men because they were hungry and yet they were guiltless in this act (Luke 6:3-4). Why were they all guiltless for breaking these legal requirements (**works**) of The Law?

Christ’s Answer

Jesus tried to tell them that The Father made Him Lord or Master of The Sabbath (Mark 2:27-28). Christ asked if it is lawful on The Sabbath (Sabbaton) to do good. Then He proceeded to **restore** a man’s crippled hand (Verse 9). Of course, those in attendance who believed they must still keep The Letter of The Law, consequently, went **mad** (Luke 6:11).

Jesus said the same thing in Matthew 12:10-14 where He gave the example of doing very hard work on The Sabbath by pulling a sheep from a pit. He concluded His presentation and then said that a man is worth more than a sheep. Therefore, it is lawful to do well on The Sabbath.

How does a Christian keep The Sabbath? It is done just like Christ – by doing “**good works**” – even if it takes toil or work. You should **feed the hungry** when they need food. You should **help the sick** when they are ill.

You can always help the orphans and widows if it happens to be The Sabbath – or any day of the week for that matter. Christians, **the real** Sabbatharians, keep The Sabbath **daily**, while it is still “**today.**” How? By “**doing good works every day.**” You work (“ergozomai”) just as Christ and The Father.

Restoration

Christ came to **restore** what was lost (Matthew 18:11). What had been lost was The Garden of Eden with The Tree of Life – and everything else on that first Seventh Day which was very good (Genesis 1:31). That is why God's **work** is to believe on Him whom He has sent (John 6:29). Christ came to make everything very good, just like that first Seventh Day in Eden. Christians do "**good works daily**" since they are the true Sabbatharians residing in God's **rest**. That first Seventh Day was not a Sabbath (sabbaton – shadow), but truly a Holy Seventh Day of God's **rest** for **eternal life**. The Seventh Day, Sabbath or a shadow, did not become The Letter of The Law until Exodus 16 – Moses' Law. When God made The Seventh Day Holy, He rested because He finished His work. He did not tell Adam and Eve to rest because they were already in God's **rest**.

In Mark 2:24-28, you find that after The Pharisees alleged that Jesus broke The Letter of The Law concerning The Sabbath; Jesus said that David had a right to break the legal requirements of The Law. This was because he was doing "**a good work**" by feeding his men with the shewbread.

This compares with the acts of Jesus healing the sick. Why? Because The Sabbath was made for the good of man and it is not for man to be restricted to any day, seventh, first, or any other, from doing **good works** (Mark 2:27). How does a Christian keep The Sabbath or any other day, by doing **good works**? You are to heal the sick, feed the hungry and help restore to humans some of their needs. This is just like the first Seventh Day when everything was "**very good**."

If Adam and Eve were in that first Seventh Day's **rest** by partak-

ing of The Tree of Life (God's Holy Spirit), then everyone could still be in that **rest** with Adam and Eve. All was "**very good.**" Well, that "sabbaton," Sabbath was truly a shadow (Colossians 2:16) of good things to come. While it is **today**, Christians have God's Holy Spirit.

By this means, they are in that same **rest** as God. Christians continue in that **rest** by means of Christ in them by their **faith**. In full belief, they do the same **good works** as Christ. They help the sick, feed the hungry, clothe the needy and do other **good works** (James 2:17).

Performing those **works** which helps humanity constitutes a real Sabbatarian. This is a person who has ceased from his own **works** and looks to that Sabbatismus (**the true rest**) with God in that heavenly city of The New Jerusalem – the city which will come down from heaven to this earth. Then everything will be "**re-stored**" to "**complete goodness and rest.**"

The Real Sign

This is the real "**sign**" of God, which is His Sabbath's **rest**. God Himself, with Christ and His Bride, will dwell in The Father's **house**. As Revelation 21:3-4 states, Jerusalem will be God's **house** where individuals will dwell with God and Jesus – and there will be no more crying, sorrow, pain or death.

The real Sabbath **rest** is that **promise** made to Abraham and to all Christians. This is truly God's "**rest**" or Sabbath. The real Sabbatarian (doing only **good works**) will eternally live in that **city** of **hope** and **peace**. In the Hebrew, "Jerushalaym" is "**the city of peace.**" The entering sign to this city states, "God's people dwell in **The City of Eternal Rest**" – The Real Sabbatharians.

CHAPTER 17

HOLY DAYS – A SHADOW

Many have written their human interpretation and analysis of Colossians 2:16-17. Some, in their exegesis, claim that Paul is referring to The Gnostic's influence of the day. Others try to make these verses refer to the sacrifices of meat and drink offerings. On and on it goes, with each individual stressing his personal agenda in order to get his point across. In the end, a state of confusion exists.

Why not try something different? Why not believe what The Apostle Paul plainly tells you? This *Epistle* by Paul is one of the simplest and easiest to understand – if you only pay attention to what Paul states (Colossians 2:16-17):

¹⁶Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of an holyday, or of the new moon, or of the Sabbath days: ¹⁷Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.

In order to understand this, you should separately divide each part of these verses, so you do not overlook what is clearly stated in God's "word" – **the plain truth!** "Let no man therefore judge you."

This is The Apostle's first statement concerning the subject. It

seems quite simple. Paul said that no man should judge these believers about Sabbaths, Holy Days, etc. That means no one – no minister, no teacher, no judge, no king, etc – no one! Then Paul added the word “**therefore.**” The key element is the word “**therefore.**” Paul is telling you the reason why no one is to judge The Christians at Colosse. This is because of what he just told them in his *Epistle*. What did Paul just tell them? Paul said that there is a **mystery** that has been **hidden** through all past ages (Colossians 1:26). He affirmed that this **mystery** was not made known to God's people until now. Paul also declares how this **mystery** was made known to **the saints** of Paul's day. What was **the mystery**? Realize that Christians today do not understand this **mystery**.

The discussion and understanding over Colossians 2:16-17 is completely misunderstood – **scripturally**. Unless you understand this **mystery**, you cannot understand Colossians 2:16-17. Remember Paul included the word “**therefore.**” Consequently, because of this **mystery**, no man should judge Christians about the legality of The Sabbaths and Holy Days. That is *scripture*.

The Mystery

In discussing **the mystery**, Paul describes it this way:

To whom God would make known what is the riches of the glory of this mystery among the Gentiles [not The Jews]; which is Christ in you, the hope of glory (Colossians 1:27).

This is **the mystery** defined by The Word of God. *The Bible* reveals that by *Christ* “*In You*,” (God's Holy Spirit) you receive abundant **spiritual riches**. What are these riches “**in Christ**” that you, as a Christian, receive? Paul explains that this **truth** is,

each Christian is made **perfect** by **Christ being “in you”** (Verse 28). Then, Colossians 2:1-3 declares all the understanding of this **mystery** of God. God, The Father and Christ comprise the totality of all wisdom and knowledge. How plain can it be?

A Christian needs nothing else except **Christ “In You”** in order to be made **perfect** like The Father and His Son, Jesus. Then:

⁹In him dwelleth all the fulness of the Godhead bodily. ¹⁰ye are complete in him, which is the head...(Colossians 2:9-10).

Notice this concept, that in Jesus, all the fullness “**dwells.**” This means that everything that God is – has been made complete in each Christian – as long as **Christ is “in you.”** “**Therefore,**” because of this **mystery** of **Christ “In You,”** it supplies and gives everything a Christian needs to be a Christian. That is why no man can judge Christians about the legal requirements of The Sabbaths or Holy Days. That is your *Bible’s* answer.

The factor about “**judging**” is explained at the beginning of this chapter. No man can judge because **Christ is “in you”** – this is all you need. Therefore, you are not to be judged as a Christian by the legal requirement about The Sabbaths (plural), Holy Days or new moons. Why is this? These Sabbaths, Holy Days and new moons are only a shadow of things to come. If you know what a shadow is, then you will know why The Sabbaths, Holy Days and new moons are not to be judged by any man as legal requirements for Christians.

A Shadow

The Greek word for “shadow” clearly defines why Christians

should not be judged by anyone – even, other Christians. A “shadow” in Greek is “skia,” a “shade” or “darkness.” The new moons, Holy Days and Sabbaths are only shadows – not the real thing. It is like looking at a person’s image on a wall that is only a shadow cast by a light.

Keeping the legal requirements of these days never makes a person like Christ. They would only be “**a shadow**” of what Christ is. For Christians, these days and offerings are already fulfilled in Christ – and no longer apply to them as “**a prophecy**.” These Holy Days, Sabbaths and new moons are only shadows of things to come.

Shadows Of Things To Come

Here are other aspects for you to consider. This concerns the weekly Sabbath and The Passover:

- 1 The **Seventh Day** is a shadow of The Sabbath **rest** in Christ (Hebrews 4:9-11). Since **Christ is “in you,”** which is **the mystery**, then you are already in God’s **rest** and have ceased from doing your own works of righteousness.
- 2 The **Passover**, the slain Lamb with blood on the doorpost, is Christ who is already your Passover (I Corinthians 5:7). This has been fulfilled.

Now, Christians take the wine as representing Christ’s blood. They, also, take the bread which represents Jesus’ body. This is done to show they are now married to Christ, as His Bride. That is why He died for His Bride, “**the church**,” in order to show that He loved her.

- 3 **Unleavened Bread:** There is no need to take “leavened bread” out of the house, etc, since Jesus has already made you unleavened (I Corinthians 5:7). This “**shadow**” has already happened to Christians.
- 4 **Pentecost:** You do not need to keep Pentecost since you already have God’s Holy Spirit (Ephesians 1:13-14). This “**shadow**” has already occurred for Christians.
- 5 **Feast of Trumpets:** You are already **saved** in Christ, and Christians do not need to be **saved** at The Feast of Trumpets (Ephesians 2:8). Christ **returns** with **the saints** to **save** the world.
- 6 **Atonement:** Christians have already received Jesus as their “**atonement**” (Romans 5:11).
- 7 **Tabernacles:** Christians do not need to dwell in temporary booths or tabernacles – because the human body is a tabernacle containing the consciousness of the person. Peter said, “...**I must put off this my tabernacle...**” (II Peter 1:14). During The Millennium, **saints** are already **spirit beings** since the time of The First Resurrection (John 5:24-27). “Temporary Booths” are a shadow of Israel’s human **resurrection** to come to **repentance** and be **saved** (Ezekiel 37 and Romans 11:26).
- 8 **Last Great Day:** Christians are **not judged** in The White Throne Judgment. They are already **spirit beings** (John 5:24-29) and are being judged today (I Peter 4:17).

This is the entire **context** of Colossians 2:16-17. The **mystery** of *Christ "In You"* gives Christians all they need as Christians. The Sabbaths, Holy Days and new moons are a shadow of things to come; they came to pass in fulfillment by means of *Christ "In You."*

These days all picture what Christ's riches have done for you. For Christians, all these days have already happened. The meaning was fulfilled in Christ. Hence, these days no longer apply to Christian requirements. It is amazing when you ask a Christian who believes they must keep these days, "How come you do not sacrifice a lamb?" They say, Christ has already done that as your sacrifice. Then, why do they not realize, as already proven, that Jesus has, also, fulfilled all the other days for a Christian? That is what Pentecost did for Christians. Christ has already **redeemed** you. The Holy Days are only in force for **the unconverted** and will not occur again until The Millennium.

That brings you to Paul's final point of emphasis in Colossians 2:16-17. He said, "...**but, the body** [The Church] **is of Christ.**" That is Paul's main teaching in Colossians 2:16-17. It is the subject of **God's mystery**, which is *Christ "In You"* – so that Christians need nothing else to make them **perfect**. Because of this **biblical truth**, Christians are not to be judged by anyone – because you, as a Christian, have fulfilled all the shadows in Christ. How simple this is. It is clear and plain. Always, let *The Bible* interpret itself.

The Millennium

Once **the temple** was destroyed in 70 A.D., it was the end of *The Old Covenant*. A person cannot mix **old wine** and **new wine** together. The shadows, *The Torah* or Law, were **the schoolmas-**

ter to bring people to Christ (Romans 10:1 and Galatians 3:24). These are all shadows of The Messiah. Once one is converted and baptized, a Christian is now “**in Christ**” and no longer can the legal requirements of The Law apply. In I Timothy 1:9-10, The Law is only made for **the unrighteous or the unconverted**. This is a shadow of things to come. Since The Law is fulfilled when one is “**in Christ**,” then The Law does not apply to Christians. It only applies to carnal, unconverted people. Christians only keep The Law **spiritually**. That is what The Millennium and The White Throne Judgment are all about. When Jesus returns, **the temple** is rebuilt and all *The Torah* – The Law – becomes a requirement once again. This includes sacrifices. Why is this? It is because Israel, now in **The Promised Land**, must learn by **the schoolmaster** to eventually come to Christ. That is what The Law in The Letter was designed to do. The Law will eventually bring all the unconverted to Christ – first Israel – and then the rest of the carnal world. This is how The Law brought The Christians to **repentance** in order to have Christ in them. This is exactly how Paul came to **repentance** in Romans 6 and 7.

Paul declared that **all Israel** shall be **saved** (Romans 11:26). Then, by means of The Law, all the rest of the carnal world will be brought to Jesus. Once that happens, they will be “**in Christ**” – and therefore, no man will judge them about God’s Sabbaths and Holy Days. This is because those shadows will all be fulfilled “**in Christ**” **which is the mystery of God**.

Christians do not have to be circumcised on The Eighth Day because Christians are not judged in The White Throne Judgment, which, as you now know, is a shadow of things to come. This Last Great Day is The Eighth Day of The Feast of Tabernacles. The filth of their foreskin is removed when they **repented**. They now become legal children as God’s heirs to His **inheritance**. But,

you as a Christian are being judged now (I Peter 4:17). All the legal **works** of the law do not apply because Christ came to fulfill or complete The Law (Matthew 5:17).

Christ Fulfills The Law

In Matthew 5:17-18 Christ made a major declaration:

¹⁷Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. ¹⁸For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

What many Christians declare is, “Yes, Jesus came to fulfill The Law or keep it perfectly.” That is true, absolutely, but that is not what these two verses really say. Even though Jesus was sinless and paid for your sins by giving His **life for you**, these two verses have a greater **spiritual** meaning. Read them thoroughly.

Consider and study each thought about what each word reveals. First, Christ said that He does not destroy or do away with The Law. Jesus came to fulfill it. The Law is never done away, but notice it is **changed** (Hebrews 7:12). Now, The Law is only to be kept **spiritually** and not in The Letter, which kills. The Letter or The Written Laws and legal requirements, have all been fulfilled – or completed in Christ. This is because they are only shadows and are not really of Christ. If you keep The Letter of The Law, you deny **Christ “In You”** fulfills The Law. You lack **faith**. Jesus continued by stating that The Law remains the same until **the new heaven and new earth** will come down from above. However, at the time of **the new heaven and new earth**, there is a change. This is because at that time, Christ said The Law will be different.

Why is this?

To understand “**the spiritual meaning**” of what your Savior is trying to reveal, you need to understand the full definition of the word “fulfill.” The Greek word for “fulfill” in this verse is “ple-roo.” It means “to satisfy,” “finish” or “complete.” What Jesus is plainly saying is that The Law has a completion point – or as you would say when your car gauge says “empty” you “fill it up.”

That is why this completion of The Law does not take place until **the new heaven and new earth** appears. These are the exact words Christ is telling you in Matthew 5:17-18. What is it that you must understand about The Law which Jesus has to fulfill or complete? To understand Christ’s meaning, you must know **God’s only purpose** for The Law. Reread Chapter 13, ‘*Is The Law Done Away?*’

Purpose of God’s Law

In I Timothy 1:5-10, Paul clearly defines for whom The Law is written. First of all, Verse 5 states that the end or goal of The Commandments is **agapé** or love – charity. This is a clear **biblical definition** of the designated **purpose** for The Ten Commandments. Their **goal or purpose** is to bring Christians to God’s **love**. That is why *The Book of Romans* states:

Love worketh no ill to his neighbour: therefore [because] love is the fulfillment [completion] of the law (Romans 13:10).

In I Timothy 1:8-10, Paul explained how to use The Law lawfully (as God intended). As a Christian, you need to know The Law was **not made** for a righteous man. Once a person repents and is

baptized, then Christ's blood washes away the individual sins and that person is covered by Christ's **righteousness** (Matthew 6:33).

The Law, therefore, is no longer required by Christians with all of its legal works. Why not? It is to keep The Law according to **the purpose** God intended. It must be done in a lawful way. Besides, one must be carnal, unconverted or unrighteous – as I Timothy 1:10 plainly states. Now you can really begin to understand **the purpose** of God's Law. The Law, along with its entire legal works, was given to a carnal, unconverted, stiff-necked people – because they sinned at Mount Sinai. The Letter of The Law of God is Holy, just and good. But its **purpose** is for **unrighteous, carnal people**. It is intended as “homework” to bring them to Christ (Galatians 3:24-25). Once Jesus fulfilled (completed) The Law for Christians, you are no longer under **the schoolmaster** to bring you to Christ.

The Apostle Paul clearly states what The Letter of The (written) Law is intended to accomplish in *The Book of Hebrews*:

For the law having a shadow [just like The Holy Days] of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereunto perfect (Hebrews 10:1).

It should become **scripturally clear** how Christ came to fulfill (complete) The Law. The entire Law is a shadow or type of The Messiah or Christ. Jesus, The Christ fulfills The Law for every carnal, sinful, unrepentant person. Once they become Christians, the entire Law is a shadow of what Christ represents. That is why He had to witness The Law to prove that He was “**the promised seed**” – or The Messiah, Your Savior!

Once you have The Law fulfilled “in you” as a Christian by Christ, you are no longer subject to its legal works – Jesus already completed The Law for you. You have already proved that aspect by studying Colossians 2:16-17. The Laws or *Torah* in The Letter (written, legal demands) are no longer necessary. Why? Because Christians now have God’s Law in their minds and hearts – **spiritually**. Christians are to keep The Law always. It is never done away but kept naturally in their minds and hearts so Christians know “right” from “wrong” by their conscience. There is no need to have legal works of The Law to let them know “right” from “wrong.”

Since Christ is “**in all Christians**” all The Law is fulfilled or completed in each and every one of you. Christians have a change of heart and nature. That is why Paul said in I Corinthians 5:7-8 you should keep The Feast. This was The Feast of Unleavened Bread, which refers to sin. Since Christians are unleavened through Christ, you keep The Feast by not sinning as the fornicator in I Corinthians 5. That is why Paul said you keep The Feast by not having the old leaven or sin. Christians keep The Feast not as a shadow by legal works as putting out leavened bread, but actually by not committing sin as the fornicator. Christians keep the entire Law or *Torah* **spiritually!** They, Christians, are no longer subject to works which are only shadows of what God is doing.

Biblically, you can prove how Christ **saves** Israel during The Millennium and then finally how all the pagan world will be **saved**. This is foreshadowed in the remaining Holy Days.

Two Harvests

Since The Law and The Sabbath and Holy Days are a shadow of things to come; these shadows are only for the unrighteous or car-

nal people. Consequently, now you need to examine all of God's Holy Days. God's Sabbath and Holy Days are a type of God's **plan for salvation**. You must understand that all of The Holy Days are tied directly to agriculture – or Harvests (Exodus 23:14-16). That is why Israel had to tithe to The Levites who had no inheritance in the land. Tithes have to be paid from farming income, only in God's **land**. In Israel, there were two harvests in a year. One harvest was called The Harvest of The Firstfruits or The Spring Harvest. This harvest was a small one, which you have already proved covers the period of time from Passover to Pentecost. It is the shadow of things to come, and applies to Christians. This is already fulfilled.

Once you receive God's Holy Spirit, an individual no longer needs to have “**a reminder**” of this shadow, because you have already been brought to Christ. It has already happened. Christ has fulfilled this part of The Law for Christians who have The Holy Spirit. Christians have now received their **inheritance** – and are Sons of God – and “**heirs**” of “**the kingdom**.” No longer do Christians need “**a reminder**” of things to come – or “**a shadow**.” The Letter of The Law or shadows only applies to **the unconverted**. Notice, there are **two harvests**. You have seen that The Spring Harvest is a **small** harvest. That is why Jesus said, “**For many are called, but few are chosen**” (Matthew 22:14). Then, in Exodus 23:16, the second harvest of the year occurs in **the autumn**. This harvest is called The Feast of Ingathering. The Fall Harvest is the **large one**.

The Spring Harvest of first fruits is small, just as The Apostle James said, “...**we** [Christians] **should be a kind of firstfruits of his creatures**” (James 1:18). The Fall Harvest, therefore, represents only those who are to be last (not first) – just as Christ explained in Matthew 19:30. This **last harvest**, The Ingathering in

The Fall, is **huge**. It includes the remaining bulk of humanity who have not been converted – just as The Christians who appeared as a shadow during The Spring Holy Days. The rest of The Holy Days do not apply to Christians – since they are already **saved**. All who remain for The Autumn Harvest are **the carnal and unconverted people**.

Christians from The Spring Harvest will be with Jesus as His Bride designated to **save the rest of the world** – and to make God’s Holy Spirit available to them so they can, also, “**eventually**” be Christians and “**heirs**” to God’s **kingdom**. In John 7:37-39, Jesus stood up during The Last Day of The Fall Feast, that Great Day, and said, “**37If any man thirst, let him come unto me and drink...38out of his belly shall flow rivers of living water**” (Verse 38). The next verse states that these “**waters**” are the waters from God’s Holy Spirit. Christ said this Last Day of The Feast (in the autumn) is a shadow of the time when **the rest of the world** will be **saved**.

These **Two Harvests represent the total “plan of salvation” for the entire world**. This is what Christ came to fulfill (John 4:14). Read the entire chapter of Matthew 13 for Christ’s complete explanation of this **harvest**. This is how Jesus fulfilled the entire Law, which was a shadow of things to come (Hebrews 10:1).

Parable Of The Penny

Many people wonder about the complete meaning of “**the parable of the penny**” that Jesus gave in Matthew 20:1-16. Christ discusses a farmer who hires laborers to go out into his fields to labor. In each case, he pays each laborer the same pay no matter how many hours they work. He pays each laborer a penny whether they worked from early morning, the third hour, the sixth

or ninth hour – and finally unto the eleventh hour which was almost quitting time. Each of them only received a penny.

When Jesus paid them, He received complaints from those who worked longer than those who worked only one hour. They reported that it is not fair for them to receive only one penny like the rest of the workers who had not endured the heat of the day. Then Jesus said, they had agreed to work for one penny. It was His to give or hire – and the rest is “**none of their business.**” From a worldly point of view, this doesn't seem fair – but remember – each parable has a **great spiritual meaning.**

Order Of Salvation

It is important to remember Chapter 14, ‘*The Law Is Spiritual*’ which covers “**The Order of Salvation.**” So far, that order is as follows: (1) first comes Jesus – who was **resurrected** to God's “**glory,**” (2) then comes The Bride of Christ, (3) next are **the two witnesses**, Israel and Judah, (4) then The Guests of The Wedding appear, (5) finally, those who are **saved** out of The Lake of Fire. Here are the Five Categories in all – just as with the laborers in **the parable of the penny.**

There are “**two harvests,**” which include the five types of how every man is **saved in his own order** (I Corinthians 15:23-24). Who are those Christians who complain about those hired in the eleventh hour? These are **all Christians who do not believe Jesus came into the world to save the whole world** (I John 4:14).

How logical is God's “**plan of salvation?**” Some Christians today, complain that they do not think Jesus should **save** those who are in The Lake of Fire. But Christ said that it is not their decision – rather that decision belongs to God, The Father. Notice how the

remainder of the world is to be **saved**. This accomplishment is represented by The Fall Holy Days – or Feasts. These celebrations cover the last individuals who could have been first (as Israel). This group includes “**the rest of the world**,” as well.

The Shadow Of The Spring Feast

The Seventh Day Sabbath and all The Holy Day Sabbaths represent a time when God offered “**His rest in Christ**.” Remember, The Sabbath and Holy Days are only shadows – not real. These days are represented as *Christ “In You.”* Christians and therefore, you, as a Christian, are in God’s **rest** because you received God’s Holy Spirit (Hebrews 3 and 4). So, all these Holy Days (shadows) represent **God’s total plan of salvation**, showing how God, through His Son Jesus, “**saves the world**” (I John 4:14). True Christians are already within God’s Seventh Day **rest** because you have inherited The Holy Spirit. The keeping of The Seventh Day as a shadow or Sabbath is no longer required. Christians are the real “Sabbatarians” – because you **daily do good works** – just as Christ tried to teach The Pharisees (Hebrews 3 and 4).

The process to bring Christians to Jesus is revealed as a shadow, from Passover to Pentecost. At Pentecost, Christians received God’s Holy Spirit and then entered into the reality of God’s **rest**. You are now **heirs** or **inheritors** of God’s **kingdom**. You no longer need to keep **the shadow** of The Holy Days. This is because Christians have already inherited God’s **promise**. To continue to follow legal works, which is only **a shadow** of the real, is to **deny** that Jesus has already completed this part of The Law for you. The entire context of Paul’s *Epistle* (in his own hand) to The Galatians was done because Paul said those Christians were returning to **keeping days and years**. This applies to keeping either pagan days or God’s Holy Days. Either way – it is a **false gospel**.

Why Pentecost Saves You

In Leviticus 23:15-17, God directs Israel to keep Pentecost on an **exact number of days** from the middle of The Feast of Unleavened Bread until the specific day of Pentecost. Notice, The Law, a shadow, states that one must count seven Sabbaths (or seven weeks) from Unleavened Bread to The Spring Harvest – which is forty-nine days plus one or exactly **fifty days**. Why fifty days?

The Bible answer is found in The Jubilee Year. The Jubilee is a Year of Release for Israel “*from all debts.*” For Christians, it is a release from personal sins. Consequently, you now become **heirs** to **The Promised Land** or **paradise**. Remember, all these feasts are a shadow of what Jesus is doing for mankind. For The Israelites, who are unconverted, The Jubilee Year releases their physical debts. Then, they go back to the land of their family, which they had initially **inherited**. This is the same as Christians who get back to the original state of The Garden of Eden – **paradise** in God's **kingdom** (Matthew 18:11).

Every man in Israel in this Fiftieth Year is returned to “**his inheritance**” – and **all debts** are forgiven (Leviticus 25:11-13). It is The Year of Release. For Christians, there is no more sin. That is why one must count the fifty days from Unleavened Bread because Christ has made Christians sinless and without debt. But notice, Pentecost is The Spring Harvest held each year – and not fifty years later during The Jubilee Year. Christians are set free and released from their sins **ahead** of The White Throne Judgment. Christians are **redeemed** before The Jubilee Year. Besides Christ's **sacrifice**, The Jubilee Year is one of the most important Holy Days for you and all humanity. This is because it is God's Law showing how Christ **saves** not only Christians but **EVERY-ONE WHO HAS EVER LIVED**.

The Jubilee is a time of complete liberty – just as **salvation** – and every man is returned to his **inheritance** (Leviticus 25:10). If and when you get into debt (or sin), then the land will be returned to you (Leviticus 25:24). It is the same for Christians as they will be forgiven for all their sins by their redemption. Then, Verses 25 to 28 declares how this land can be **redeemed**. Sinners have a **redeemer**, Jesus Christ. Jesus, as an Elder Brother, **saved** you from sin, by His death. Leviticus 25:48-49 states that a family member can “redeem” you. You are bought back before The Jubilee or White Throne Judgment. Christians will not be judged during The White Throne Judgment.

Christians are being judged NOW and **released** by Jesus buying them back – and, therefore, becoming His property as **slaves** or “doulos.” This is the meaning of **the shadow** of Pentecost. You are **saved** in The Spring Harvest as **the first fruits** in God’s early harvest (James 1:18).

The Rest Of The World

It is clear that the keeping of The Holy Days for carnal, unconverted people is necessary. Even though Israel sinned at Mount Sinai – and God wanted to destroy all but The Tribe of Levi – yet, His love and final judgment was just not to let them enter God’s **promised rest** (Hebrews 3 and 4). However, the giving of The Letter of The Law turned out to be an excellent loving gesture on God’s part. In reminding them constantly of their sins, **the schoolmaster** would, eventually, bring them to Christ (Galatians 3:24).

Paul in Romans 7 and 8 clearly covers how The Law, as a shadow, brings one to conversion. Once converted, a person, whether Israelite or Gentile, now becomes a **spiritual** Israelite – and an Heir

to The Abrahamic Promise (Galatians 4:7). It is time to see how the full extent of the world, including both Israel and pagans, are to be **saved** by Christ. In the remaining Fall Holy Days and especially The Eighth Day (which is The Last Day of The Autumn Holy Day Season), the full span of time culminates in The Fiftieth Year Jubilee. This represents the total **release** and **salvation** for the entire world (John 4:14).

The Great Fall Harvest

The first autumn Holy Day occurs in The Israelite's First Day of The Seventh Month. According to The Roman Calendar, it usually occurs on the last part of September or early October. This Feast Day is called The Feast of Trumpets.

Feast Of Trumpets

What does The Feast of Trumpets foreshadow? All Feasts point to Christ. Leviticus 23:24-25 declares that in this Seventh Month, in The First Day of The Month, Israel shall have a Sabbath, a memorial of Blowing of Trumpets. It is a holy convocation – and no work can be done. What does this Holy Day, a shadow of things to come, actually mean in relationship to Jesus? Paul describes The Return of Christ (I Thessalonians 4:14-18). When He **returns**, this event is represented by The Feast of Trumpets. Paul said that The Trumpet of God shall sound with the archangel's voice and the "**dead in Christ**" [Christians] **shall rise first**. Those Christians who are alive will be changed in "the twinkling of an eye."

Paul said this Feast of Trumpets represents Christ's **return**. It is when all Christians are changed to **spirit** in order to rule on earth during The Millennium. Jesus said this is The First Resurrection (John 5:24-25). John, also, declared this message in Revelation

20:4-6. Since Christians have been **redeemed** already, this is the time when Jesus returns to rule as King of Kings over the earth with His Bride, **the church**, co-reigning with Him.

Day Of Atonement

The next **fall feast day** is called Atonement. After Jesus **returns** to the earth to rule with His Bride – The Church, then Christ, as King of Kings, brings back all The Israelites from the nations of the world in order to place them, also, in **the promised land**. At the same time, Jesus resurrects all the dead Israelites from the past (the so-called, “valley of dry bones”) (Ezekiel 37). King David is also resurrected and is The King over Israel, just as Christ is King over all Kings. This is Israel’s time of **salvation** as a nation (Romans 11:26).

All The Laws of Moses, in The Letter, with the newly built **temple**, will be a mandatory requirement for observance by Israel and the whole world. Even sacrifices will be re-instituted. This situation lasts for one thousand years. It is a time-period known as The Millennium. Since Israel and the world have never accepted, or known and acknowledged Christ, then by keeping The Written Law, they will eventually come to know Christ.

On The Tenth Day of The Seventh Month, The Day of Atonement occurs (Leviticus 12:27-32). It is a Sabbath’s **rest** and a day to afflict their souls. It is a Day of Repentance concerning one’s sins – with fasting and being humble. It foreshadows a time of asking God to forgive them for their sins. No work is to be done since it is a Sabbath’s **rest** for them. Also, two goats are offered. These are goats that are chosen, because they represent two carnal groups. One goat, Israel, is still carnal – and must come to Christ. The other goat represents Satan (Leviticus 16:7-22). One goat is

sacrificed as a sin offering for Israel. The live goat is released into the wilderness with all of the people's sins placed upon his head. This feast will be a **shadow** of repentant Israel coming out of the nations of the world to receive their **inheritance**. They will be entering God's **rest** under Christ and King David. They are carnal, and, therefore, must keep **the complete or full** Letter of The Law in order to bring them, also, to Christ. Satan, by going into the wilderness, will be under the jurisdiction of Jesus. Satan will be placed in hell or "tartaroo," which is a condition of restraint for one thousand years. During The Millennium, Satan **will not** be able to deceive the nations as he does now (Revelations 20:1-3).

The Seventh Year Land Sabbath

Remember, each Sabbath, whether The Seventh Day Sabbath, Holy Day Sabbaths, Seventh Year Land Sabbath or The Jubilee Year, represents a time of **rest**. This **rest** can be for the people and/or the land. In each case, it is a **shadow** of what Jesus has already fulfilled as The Passover through Pentecost – or a future **rest** for Israel and the world.

At this point, **the church** has been **redeemed** by Christ and has no need to enter this **rest** – since Christ has given to those who have repented God's Holy Spirit. Christians have already entered God's **rest**, as in The Garden of Eden and have ceased from all their works. Israel, as a nation, will be **saved** at the time of Christ's **second coming** with **the church** and **the angels** ruling over Israel and the world.

Sabbath's Land Rest

When Judah was taken captive by The Babylonians, God said

that since they did not keep The Seventh Year Sabbath, then **the promised land** would keep The Seventh Year “**rest**” for “**seventy years**” before they were allowed to come back to Jerusalem (II Chronicles 36:21).

During The Return of Jesus, **The Promised Land** will have had its rest – and then Christ will bring back all of The Israelites from around the earth to enjoy **The Promised Land’s rest**. This is during the time known as The Millennium. This one-thousand-year period is known as The Time of Restoration when Christ and His **church** will bring all of Israel, as a nation, to **repentance** when they take the first step by keeping The Law which will finally bring them to Christ (Galatians 3:24).

Feast Of Tabernacles

Now there are two more “**feasts**” to be discussed. These are, also, a **shadow** or a type of how God will **save** Israel and the rest of the world. In **the parable of the penny**, where the farmer hired laborers to harvest his fields and he hired different workers at different times until the eleventh hour when the harvest would be nearly completed. In each case, no matter how long they labored, each received the same amount of money (Matthew 20:1-16).

Each laborer represented a type of an individual Christ is **saving**, even those who only labored an hour before the harvest was completed. This is **the end of the second harvest** – The Great Fall Harvest. Until those workers who were hired in the eleventh hour had finished their task, they could still be **saved** before the harvest ended. Those who were called in **the eleventh hour** had to work until the job was completed at the end of **the twelfth hour**. All those hired before the eleventh hour could be **redeemed** by Jesus on Pentecost. Here is The Order of Salvation which will be cov-

ered more fully in this chapter.

The Feast of Tabernacles lasts for seven days (Leviticus 23:39). After The Seven Days of Tabernacles, there is one more day called The Eighth Day. This ends “**the harvest**” of everyone, those who labor from the eleventh hour to the twelfth hour. These Seven Days of The Feast are a shadow, again a type of this one-thousand-year period (Revelation 20:5). Why are they called “**tabernacles**?” A tabernacle in *The Bible* represents a dwelling place. During this feast, The Israelites will build temporary dwellings to keep The Feast in Jerusalem. What are these temporary dwellings?

The Apostle Peter states a temporary dwelling is **biblically defined** as your human body, which dies. Read II Peter 1:13-14. This one-thousand-year period is when physical, temporary Israelites are still living the life as human beings. This includes all of Israel’s **resurrected forefathers** who are brought back to **life** (Ezekiel 37). This is the future **shadow** of things to come when all Israel is **redeemed** by Christ’s blood (Romans 11:25-27). All Israelites live for 100 years as prophesied in Isaiah 65.

After Israel begins to keep The Law, they are a **witness** to “**the rest of the world.**” Finally Egypt, Assyria and all other Gentile nations are **redeemed** by Christ’s blood. Read all of Isaiah 19. It is a time when all Israelites will live to be one hundred years old. A newborn infant and the elderly will live for one hundred more years (Isaiah 65:20). The Feast of Tabernacles, after The Seventh Day will end The Time of Redemption. Isaiah 65:20 states after their one-hundred-year lifetime, they are either **saved** or **accursed**. When will these “**redeemed Christians**” be **resurrected**? In John 6:40, Christ plainly states they will be **resurrected** on The Last Day of The Feast (John 7:37-39). This Last Day, The Eighth Day, represents **the end of the harvest** which is The Final Holy Day.

What is this Eighth Last Day?

The Jubilee

The Last Great Day, The Eighth Day, is the end of The Great Harvest of human lives to be **saved**. This is The Year of Release of the entire world from sin. There will be no more debts. The Feast which **shadows** this Last Great Day is The Jubilee or The Year of Release.

This Jubilee is a time that lasts for a full year. It is the time when all of Israelite “**debts are forgiven.**” Only Gentiles or those without God, will not be **released** and will remain in slavery so they can pay the last farthing. Read all of Leviticus 25.

This time-period includes The Great White Throne Judgment, which is judgment for the entire world. Revelation 20:4-15 relates those events. First, Christ and **the church** reign on the earth for one thousand years (Feast of Tabernacles) and afterward Satan is released to tempt the earth once again. This is when the final battle between Gog and Magog against God’s people takes place. Christ and the angels destroy them – and “**the final judgment**” begins. It is The Last Great Day of The Feast. **This is “the second resurrection” represented by The Last Day.** Jesus separates the sheep, which have been **saved**, from among the goats. The rest are those condemned to The Lake of Fire (Matthew 25:32-41).

Afterward, those who are written in *The Book of Life – The Marriage Registry* are invited to The Wedding Feast. When the people attend The Wedding Feast, those who **do not** have a wedding garment of righteousness will be cast out – and must go into The Lake of Fire. Jubilee is a time of plenty, which many call “The Horn of Plenty.” This is God’s **rest** or back into “**paradise**” as it

was in The Garden of Eden. Jesus, at this point, **restores** all that was lost (Matthew 18:11).

In Revelation 21:3-5, God makes all things new. There will be a **new heaven** and a **new earth**. God, Himself, will dwell with His people. God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be **no more death**. No one will ever die; otherwise, there would still be death and dying. Neither will there be sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain, for the former things are passed away. This is God's total **release** and **liberty**, truly The Jubilee.

Jubilee demands that all Israelites must be **released** from their debts or sins. Every man goes back to his **inheritance**. Anyone in debt can be **redeemed** by a relative or Christ, The Redeemer. Anyone in slavery (or sin) is freed and given complete and total **liberty** (Romans 8:21). This is **The Real Sabbath of God's Rest**. Notice, in Leviticus 25, only Gentiles are **not** released from slavery. As long as one is a Gentile or without God, they remain in sin.

Everyone else can enter New Jerusalem for The Wedding Feast – but not those who are still Gentiles. The rest are left outside of the city until they keep God's Commandments in their hearts. Now, what happens to those not allowed to The Wedding? As long as they remain Gentiles, they will not be in God's **kingdom** (Ephesians 2:11-13). These are those individuals who are thrown into The Lake of Fire until the "**spirit in man and heart repents**." When they repent, they become **spiritual** Israelites and **heirs**, receiving The Holy Spirit, according to **the promise** and enter God's **kingdom** as babes. The following two chapters prove their conversion into God's **kingdom**. This concludes the totality of The Sabbath and Holy Days as a **shadow** of things to come.

Christians, who become Christ's Bride are **redeemed** at Pentecost. The rest of **the world** is **redeemed** in The Second Harvest of Trumpets all the way down to Tabernacles. On the final Holy Day called The Jubilee is when everyone is finally **saved** – including those thrown into The Lake of Fire.

CHAPTER 18

RICHES OF GOD'S GRACE

Ephesians 2:8 simply says, “For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is a gift from God.” The Apostle Paul declares that you are “saved” by “grace” by having “faith” – and this very “grace” that “saves you” is “a gift.” Grace is a particular kind of “gift” that has absolutely nothing to do with you doing anything yourselves. Why does this unearned “gift of grace save you?”

The reason God gives you this “**gift of grace**” is so you will not be able to take credit for any of it – lest you would **boast** (Ephesians 2:9). God doesn't want you to make the same mistake that Satan made. Satan went against God because he got carried away with his **own talents and abilities** (Ezekiel 28:17).

When Christians are given **the gift of salvation**, by **grace**, they must become like a little child. You must be willing to be taught, to seek and to learn, especially from parents (Mark 10:15). God is reproducing Himself to become “**all and in all**” (I Corinthians 15:28).

When Israel constructed the golden calf, God was enraged and wanted to kill them. Moses felt so strongly that he tried to intercede on their behalf. Notice, in Leviticus 25, only Gentiles were **not** released from slavery. As long as one is a Gentile or without God, they remain in sin.

Everyone else can enter New Jerusalem for The Wedding Feast – but not those who are still Gentiles. The rest are left outside of the city until they keep God's **commandments in their hearts**. Now, what happens to those not allowed to The Wedding?

As long as they remain Gentiles, they will not be in God's **kingdom** (Ephesians 2:11-13). These are those individuals who are thrown into The Lake of Fire until their "**spirit in man and heart repents**." When they repent, they become **spiritual** Israelites and **heirs**, receiving The Holy Spirit, according to **the promise** and enter God's **kingdom** as babes. Chapter 18 and 19 prove their conversion into God's **kingdom**.

This concludes the totality of The Sabbath and Holy Days as "a shadow" of things to come. Christians, who become Christ's Bride are **redeemed** at Pentecost. The rest of the world is **redeemed** in The Second Harvest of Trumpets all the way down to Tabernacles. On the final Holy Day called The Jubilee is when everyone is **saved** – including those thrown into The Lake of Fire.

The Almighty God, with all His power and greatness, was willing to listen to a mere man and consider what Moses said. What humility and goodness God has. That is why God cannot give immortality unless you become just like God and His Son, Jesus. There is nothing that humans can do by themselves. Any **righteousness**, or human attempt to please God, is totally unacceptable (Romans 8:8).

Salvation must only come from **grace** and **faith** in God, The Father, and only as a **gift**. The word "**grace**" in Greek, is "charis." It means "a benefit which affects your hearts" (Strong's #5485). It gives "liberty." The English word, "charisma" has the same basic definition. A person who has "charisma" "has certain **gifts**" which

others do not possess. Why is this? What is it about “**grace**” that actually has the power to **save**?

Riches Of Grace

Paul gives further **spiritual insight** into God's grace and how it saves. In Ephesians 1:7, Paul states, “**In whom [Christ] we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace.**” Grace, which is an unmerited **gift**, is filled with abundant wealth. The Greek word for “riches” is “*plutos*.” It is defined in Strong's #4149 as “wealth or fullness, money, possessions, abundance or valuable bestowment.” The riches of **grace** bestow something of great wealth and abundance, which gives you **salvation**. *The Bible* will reveal this mystery of the riches contained within this “**grace**.”

By His Stripes

Grace is an “**endowment**” from God. The end result of this **endowment** gives **salvation** or **immortality**. Why is this? Christians should not believe they have done good works, when life punishes them for the wrong they do, and they take it with a good attitude. Rather, a person should rejoice for doing good and are blamed for it – just as Christ was blamed for His good works (I Peter 2:19-24).

Peter said that Christians are called to suffer just as Jesus did for doing what is good. He left an example to follow (Verse 21). Concerning Jesus, you read that, “...**when he suffered, he threatened not...**” (Verse 22). When Jesus was brought before Pilate to be judged, He said nothing to claim His innocence. Christ went to trial before Pontius Pilate without any defense. Why? Read I Peter 2:24, “**Who his own self bare our sins in his own body**

on the tree, that we, being dead to sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.”

This is astounding. Did you know that Christians are healed by means of the beating or the stripes that Christ endured? He suffered for all mankind! Jesus submitted to this beating without a word of complaint. Why do His stripes heal you? Also, what is it that gets healed?

Whatever it is that heals you, stems directly from the beatings He took. Those who saw the movie, “The Passion,” said that Jesus was so badly beaten that you could hardly tell He was human. Read the account in *The Old Testament* about this beating which Jesus endured. “...**As many were astonished at thee; his visage [form] was so marred more than any man, and his form more than the sons of men...**” (Isaiah 52:14). As violent as the movie “The Passion” it was **not violent enough** to show the scourgings. The actual was much worse. No human was ever beaten so badly. You could not tell if He was human. The stripes Jesus took obliterated all evidence that Christ was ever a human being. Yet, because of the stripes, all mankind will be healed.

What Are These Stripes?

Isaiah continues with the account and gives you the answer about why the stripes that Jesus accepted – are so important. The prophecy that Christ would be wounded, chastised, bruised and beaten was for Christians to eventually receive peace. But this would go one step further and show that those stripes actually caused personal healing (Isaiah 53:4-6). Peter states, “...**by whose stripes ye were healed**” (I Peter 2:24).

The prophecy continues relating how all humanity has gone astray

or has sinned by their own choice and therefore, God has **laid** upon Christ the iniquity of everyone. There you have it. God caused Jesus to be beaten with stripes instead of you. These stripes really were deserved by all mankind and not Jesus. Christ was without sin. He was totally innocent and defenseless.

By Jesus allowing Himself to be beaten, He took mankind's penalty upon Himself. In what sense are these stripes capable of healing you? They were intended for everyone and instead, were accepted by your Savior. For the answer *The Scripture* states, "**...and with his stripes we are healed**" (Isaiah 53:5).

Whose Trial?

The **biblical** account of the trial and crucifixion of Christ holds many spiritual truths. "**Everyone**" is called to learn these great truths. In the movie "The Passion," it showed that Jesus died on the cross in order to pay for your sins. But, why did God require Christ to die as payment for the sins of mankind? That is a vital question. Before Jesus was taken, He prayed and said, "**Father, glorify thy name.**" In response, "**Then came there a voice from heaven, saying, I have both glorified it, and will glorify it again**" (John 12:28).

Remember that the word "glorify" in Greek is "doxa," meaning "all of God's goodness and riches." By God allowing His Son to die for you, it revealed all of God's goodness for you. This is **The salvation of mankind**. God sent The Son to be The Savior of The World. This was God's **goodness** toward mankind (I John 4:14). It was also God's "**glory.**" Christ came to **save the world**. How? In reference to the voice in John 12:28, Christ said, "**...This voice came not because of me, but for your sakes**" (John 12:30). In other words, they heard this voice because it was for the good of

humankind. Then, Jesus made a profound **spiritual statement**. He said, “**Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out**” (Verse 31).

These are two significant, **spiritual statements** by Jesus, Christ's trial and crucifixion is not the trial of Jesus, but for “**the judgment**” of the world. The trial conducted by Pilate against Jesus was actually putting “**all humanity**” on trial. It was mankind's trial and crucifixion and not Christ's.

By Christ's death, Satan, the prince, the leader of this world is cast out. No longer will Satan appear before God with his angels to accuse humanity of their sins. Jesus had interceded for the whole world and paid for all the world's sins. It doesn't do Satan any good to accuse Christians any longer. Now, Satan has been cast out of God's **presence** to the earth to fulfill Satan's wrath on the earth when Jesus won the contest by His death. Why is this?

Remember, there are three different Greek words for “judgment” in *The New Testament*. There is “krima” meaning “accused;” “krino” meaning “trial;” and the third is “krisis” meaning “turning point.” This judgment in *The Bible* only refers to The Great White Throne Judgment at the end of this physical world. At that time, Jesus is The Judge (Revelation 20:11-15). Those found guilty by Christ are thrown into The Lake of Fire. The trial for Jesus was really The Trial or The Time of Judgment for **the whole world**. This is **vital truth** for all humanity to fully understand. This trial **was not for Christ** but for all of mankind.

Daniel's Prophecy

In Daniel 2:36-45, The Prophet Daniel explained Nebuchadnezzar's dream. The dream described a huge statue of a man. Then,

Daniel interpreted the dream by saying that the head of gold on the statue represented Nebuchadnezzar, along with The Babylonian Empire.

Additionally, there were three more Gentile **kingdoms**. The fourth was The Roman Empire. Finally, at Christ's **return**, God's **kingdom** will be established. At the end of time, this Roman system will be broken into pieces and the entire Gentile rule in the world **will end**. Then, God's **kingdom** will take its rightful place on earth. Pontius Pilate represented that Roman government serving as judge over Jesus. But, as was seen, it wasn't Jesus who was really on trial but **all of mankind**. So Christ stepped in, on everyone's behalf and paid humanity's full penalty for all their sins. Christ took Christians' place before Pilate by paying the full penalty of all the sins of the world (I John 4:14). As "**prince** of this world," this was Satan's final attempt to accuse humanity for their sins. Satan did his best to keep Jesus from being The Savior.

But Christ remained **faithful** to glorify and show His Father's **goodness** in order to win over Satan and the final phase of The Roman Empire. Jesus took the full penalty of mankind's sins by being thrown – in **the spiritual sense** – into The Lake of Fire. When Pontius Pilate tried Christ and Jesus kept silent, he saw that Jesus would not even defend Himself. Pilate had to decree that Jesus was a just man and totally **innocent** (Matthew 27:19-24). After that, Pilate allowed The Jews to have their way and so Christ was crucified. Why? It was because of Isaiah 53:5. This is a prophecy stating that Jesus was tried and why he was beaten as no other human:

⁵But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement [Hebrew, "instruction"] of our peace [Rest] was

upon him; and with his stripes we are healed
[Hebrew, "to mend"] (**Isaiah 53:5**).

This prophecy by Isaiah reveals much about Christ's trial and crucifixion. First, Jesus was wounded and bruised for mankind's sins. Why did the soldier put a spear into Christ's side? The Law states, "...**the blood is the life**..." (Deuteronomy 12:23). Therefore, by Christ's blood (which was **His life**), all mankind's sins are forgiven. Why? This is because in John 15:13 Christ said, "**Greater love hath no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends.**" Christ had to die for humanity's sins. This was the ultimate **gift of sacrificing** for all of God's created beings.

Since "**life**" is in the blood, Jesus had to spill His blood for all of humanity. Why? To show His great love for you. As you have seen there is no greater love. This was Godly "**love**" totally **self-sacrificing** for your sins. That is why your sins are forgiven because Christ proved His love for the world (I John 4:14). However, once you repent and totally look to God, then you are ready for baptism. Once baptized, your sins are forgiven. But how about future sins?

In Psalm 40:4-7, God said through David that God was not interested in sacrifice, but that God prepared a body, **the promised seed**, to be that **sacrifice**, once and for all. Jesus was appointed to a Priesthood, The Order of Melchizedek (Hebrews 8:1-13). Jesus who sits on the right hand of The Father is your High Priest making intercession for your future sins as well (Hebrews 9:22-28). This was all done by Christ's sacrifice. This sacrifice, since He sits on the right hand of God, The Father, intercedes for all future sins. Christ died for your past sins by baptism, and also, for all future sins of humanity as long as you confess before Jesus as

your High Priest after The Order of Melchizedek (Hebrews 7). Christ's death pays for all past sins, but also, all **future sins** with His "**one sacrifice**." Jesus, The Christ, is also your High Priest, who continually intercedes for your sins and for all the future sins of the world. Secondly, Jesus was chastised and beaten to give Christians peace. In Hebrews, the Greek word "chastise" means "to give instruction" or "correction by God." Later, you will see why this specific beating of Jesus gives **peace**. Thirdly, mankind is "healed" or "mended" by the stripes that Christ was given. Christ was on trial for all humanity. Jesus took upon Himself all of mankind's penalty, by being bruised, beaten, whipped, nailed and speared. It was a beating that no man could ever envision.

Meaning Of Christ's Stripes

Some Christians believe that Jesus was beaten and the stripes He took were referring to God healing Christians in a physical sense. It is true that He performed many miraculous healings and Christ, indeed, came to make mankind whole. But there is a far greater significance **spiritually** to Christ's stripes – and the healing – than merely the restoration of mankind's physical well being. Let Jesus tell you about it.

Christians should remain diligent in watching for His **return**. They should do this by being wise servants (Luke 12:40-49). In these verses, He gives the outcome of those stewards who are wise, and the penalty for those who are not. He guarantees the wise steward or manager will be made ruler over all that He has (Verses 43-44). Then, in the remaining verses, He warns of the penalty **the unwise servants will receive**.

Jesus said the servant (Christian), who knew His Lord's **will** and didn't prepare himself and didn't follow His **will** – would be

beaten with many stripes (Verse 47). Those who didn't know better (Atheists, Agnostics, Pagans) would be beaten with fewer stripes (Verse 48). Rebellious humans who didn't know better would be held responsible only for **the truth** about Christ that they learned and understood. If they knew very little, they will receive only a few stripes. Those who know a great deal about Jesus and God's "**will**" shall be beaten with many more stripes. Does this sound familiar? Christ said that He came to bring **fire** on the earth and that it already exists. His conclusion is that He had to be baptized with the same fire (Verse 49-50).

Your Savior is telling you that some have to be spanked very hard, because in the past, there were those who understood a great deal. Today, there are those who can't make 'heads or tails' about Christ and His truths. So, those who understood very little in the past and those who understand very little today will receive only a small spanking. Christ is telling you that God **disciplines** with fire – and Jesus Himself was baptized in this fire. How? It was by the stripes resulting from His own beating. Jesus compared this to being in a fire (Hell-Gehenna). That is the painful effect of being beaten with stripes. The Redeemer and Savior was beaten by stripes so badly that you couldn't recognize He was a human. The violent beating He accepted was not for what He did, but for all mankind's sins and transgressions. That is why Christians are healed (mended – made whole) **spiritually** by His stripes.

Jesus took His beatings and paid everyone's penalties so you do not need to be thrown into The Lake of Fire. Christ went into hell and was baptized by His **stripes**, so mankind would be healed. Jesus died for you. He has forgiven you your sins but He took mankind's penalty of The Lake of Fire upon Himself. Consequently, **true** Christians do not have to pay the penalty. That is why the stripes of Christ's beating heal you. He literally paid the

Christian's penalty so you can avoid being thrown into The Lake of Fire.

Purpose Of The Lake Of Fire

Most people believe that God's reason for The Lake of Fire is God's penalty upon the wicked or the unrepentant. They feel that sinners are either going to burn forever in this fire or else be totally burned up and destroyed. Using human reason, they think this is God's "**justice**" – especially since Christians try so hard to be good Christians.

Nowhere in *The Bible* does God reveal those who go into The Lake of Fire are there for **justice** or for **revenge** upon the wicked. This is totally mankind's human reasoning. Let *The Bible* give you **the purpose for The Lake of Fire**. The Apostle Paul explained how The Corinthian Church was carnal. The brethren were just like babes "in Christ," or **very new** Christians. Those who were just starting to understand Christianity were behaving like unconverted people (I Corinthians 3:1). They were playing **church "politics."** They divided themselves into groups and said the minister who baptized them was a true minister of God – while the others were not (I Corinthians 3:3-9). So, Paul had to tell them that all ministers of God are true ministers – having been given different **spiritual gifts** for their good.

I Corinthians 3:11 is a key verse. Paul said the **foundation** of Christianity is Jesus Christ. Afterward, Paul explains that whatever a minister teaches, upon that foundation of Christ, he will be **tried**. This was a grave warning for the entire ministry. Then, Paul relates how the building materials represent the Christians who were laid upon the foundation of God's building (I Corinthians 3:12). These building materials are: gold, silver, precious

stones, wood, hay and stubble. The first three, **gold**, **silver** and **precious stones**, are preserved in fire, while some even become better – as with **gold**. The last three materials, wood, hay and stubble, all burn up in a fire. These **six materials** add up **bibli-cally** to the number of a man, which is six.

Revelation 13:18 explains the final human religious beast system to rule with **the last kingdom** before Christ **returns**. Six, six, six (666) is the number and it equates to a totally human religious system – with false teachings about Christ. Paul warns that if **any preaching** is done by **anyone**, which is not of Christ, it will be **tried** and **tested** as to whether it is **the true** “**word**” of God (I Corinthians 3:13). The Apostle Paul declares how this test will be done in a fire. Therefore, the teachings of man will be tried in that fire, whether or not it was **the truth or a lie**.

The Lake of Fire has nothing to do with God's justice or any vengeance which you might think Christ will unleash. It plainly reveals that fire is a purifier, not a punishment for the wicked to be in **torment** or **destroyed**. This is God's punishment to correct **wicked beings** so they will respond to God's **way of life**.

What Is Destroyed

Remember, human ideas and teachings will be burned. This includes agnostics, atheists, rebellious Christians and everyone with their own ideas of **right** and **wrong**. It includes any teachings which human logic originates which must completely perish. All these things will be utterly destroyed. Nothing can be left that is human – **only total death**.

Each and every **morsel** of human nature perishes. Human beings are corruptible and can die. Any human ideas, therefore, burn up

because, like wood, hay and stubble, they are susceptible to fire and will burn totally and completely (I Corinthians 3:13-15). That is why Jesus said, “...**if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out, and cast it from thee...**” [He went on to say] “...**if thy right hand [work] offend thee, cut it off, and cast it from thee...**” (Matthew 5:29-30). Why is this? Jesus answers, “...**for it is profitable for thee that one of thy members should perish, and not that thy whole body should be cast into hell [Gehenna]**” (Matthew 5:30). Could it be any plainer?

But there is more. Paul makes it very clear and states, “...**if any man's work [teaching] shall be burned [Lake of Fire], he shall suffer loss [torment] but he himself shall be saved, yet so as by fire**” (I Corinthians 3:15). It cannot be made any clearer. The wicked, obviously, do not burn forever in torment, nor are they totally destroyed. This is because Paul states that the wicked shall also be **saved**.

Lake Of Fire Purifies

Hebrews 12 is God's “**correction chapter**,” especially concerning those who will be thrown into The Lake of Fire. Read each verse very carefully. Don't skip over any precious **truth** contained in Hebrews 12.

After Paul finished **the faith chapter** (Hebrews 11), he admonished you not to miss out on **salvation** – after having read about the many **holy men and women of old who remained faithful until they died** (Hebrews 12:1). The evidence is overwhelming. He went on to say in Verse 4 that none of you had suffered that much in comparison with those people. He compared their light affliction with those who had remained **faithful** all the way to the shedding of their blood when some were martyred.

Paul said that God chastens every Son He loves. Therefore, those who are thrown into The Lake of Fire are always loved by God. God continues saying when He chastens you, He deals with you as Sons (Hebrews 11:5-8). Otherwise, you cannot be legitimate and **inherit** anything from God. God compares His chastisement to a natural father correcting his child. A human father corrects his child for only a temporary benefit, but when God disciplines, it is permanent and makes you Holy. Very clearly, The Lake of Fire is to make you Holy, which is just the opposite of being revengeful – or for the sake of justice (Hebrews 11:9-10). This is **true love**.

Remember, Christ was chastised to give you peace or rest. Here is the reason, “**Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous [torment] nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby**” (Hebrews 12:11). God only punishes to bring humans to their senses, so they will recognize and believe **the truth** which will set them free (John 17:17). Paul said, “**For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth**” (Hebrews 12:6). The word “scourgeth” in Greek is “mastigoo” meaning “to flog” or “whip” (Strong’s #3146). How plain can that be? The beating and whipping are the stripes Jesus was beaten with, until no one could recognize Him as a human being. The stripes represented mankind’s penalty as demonstrated by Christians in The Lake of Fire. That is why those who repent and remain **faithful** do not have any penalty, because Jesus took their penalties, Himself, for all mankind. Therefore, you do not have to go into The Lake of Fire. This is truly **one** of the **riches** of God’s **grace**. In Hebrews 12:12-13, Paul describes The Israelites at Mount Sinai as being carnal. God wanted to consume them with fire. Why? Hebrews 12:29 states, “...**our God is a consuming fire.**” God chastens by fire, since that is what God is. The Lake of Fire is God scourging (stripes in Luke 12:40-49)

the unbelievers and the wicked because He loves them, so they can completely repent and can, then, be **saved**.

In Matthew 18:11, Jesus said He came "**to restore**" that which was lost (The Tree of Life). Then, in Matthew 13:10-15, Christ's Disciples asked why He always spoke to the people in parables? Jesus said, "**For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them**" (Verse 15). Once a person has repented and is baptized, Christ must heal or **save** them. He has no choice because He came into the world for that specific reason (I John 4:14). Jesus said that of all The Father has given Him, He should lose nothing, but should raise them up again (resurrect) to life (John 6:39). When is this? The answer is at The Last Day known as The Great White Throne Judgment (Revelation 20:11-15). **Since Christ will lose no one**, The Last Day when Jesus resurrects all, it will include those who are thrown into The Lake of Fire. That agrees exactly with I Corinthians 15:21-26 when everyone Jesus **resurrects** will be **saved**, including those thrown into The Lake of Fire.

The Old Testament states **the truth** about the stripes. Peter also explains that by His (Christ's) stripes you are healed. Those stripes represent God's correction in The Lake of Fire. Once a person has been converted, by being repentant and baptized, then Jesus must **save** that person. He will not lose anyone. Once converted, Jesus is obligated to give you **salvation**. That is why in John 5:24 Christ explained that **the faithful**, converted ones have already passed **from death to life**. Jesus Himself has taken on the full penalty of The Lake of Fire by the stripes He took upon Himself. Christians who remain **faithful** will pass from death to **life**,

with no debt or penalty. They are completely healed and restored to The Tree of Life.

Riches Of Grace

What are God's riches of grace? Christ shed His blood for you because "**life**" is in the blood. Secondly, He died for you (forgiving your sins), which showed the greatest love of all. Finally, Jesus took upon Himself the full penalty instead of you being the one on trial or being judged. He was beaten beyond recognition. This was so all would be healed or saved. What great riches are in God's grace, which is an unmerited gift. All this is because God's Son, Jesus Christ, did everything for you and all mankind. His abundant goodness of love for His creation honors and glorifies God, The Father.

CHAPTER 19

EVERY MAN IN HIS ORDER

Many who study *The Bible* do not realize God has a “plan” and “purpose” for all mankind. Many do know that God’s intention is to make all men and women into His Sons and Daughters through Jesus Christ. God is building a family that will literally become The Kingdom of God. Why is God building a family? Couldn’t God have accomplished His “purpose” another way? Why has God chosen to give His Creation “immortality?”

According to The Apostle Paul, The Church at Ephesus was a **spiritually-mature group** of Christians whom he identified as both **saints** and **the faithful** (Ephesians 1:1). Because these people were **growing spiritually**, Paul could reveal a deep **spiritual truth** that had not been made known in past ages (Ephesians 3:1-5). Twice in the context of those five verses, Paul identified this **deep spiritual truth** as being “...**the mystery**...” (Verses 3-4).

Paul goes into detail explaining God’s **purpose** and **will** before God, Himself, began His **creation** (Ephesians 1:3-14). In all this, Paul reveals God’s very mind and His **plan for you**. This is the underlying basis for all that God created.

All Things In Christ

It was God’s intent with great love, to make humanity Holy – just as He is Holy. Before the foundation of the world was laid, God

had **plans** to make humanity **perfect**.

Because of God's abundant love, He will give "**all**" that is within Himself. God could not have chosen to give anything greater than what God Himself is – and has. There is no greater love than His giving everything He has to you. This is total and complete love. Nothing has ever or can ever surpass it. God predestined or predetermined you to be one of His very children by adoption. Paul said in **his letter** to The Church at Ephesus, "...⁵**Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children...**" and "...¹¹**being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will...**" (Ephesians 1:5, 11).

Since God made you human – but not yet **spirit** as He is – God had to adopt you from a human heritage in order for you to become a **spiritual** Son. Since God wanted to give all that He is, the only **perfect way** to do this was to give of His own "being" – His very Holy Spirit. God wanted **all of you** to become just as He is, and to be **all and in all** in your very "**being.**" When everything in heaven and earth is subdued under God, then His Son Jesus Christ will be subject to Him. When all things are put under Christ, then finally God will be **all and in all** (I Corinthians 15:28). God's **purpose** is to reproduce Himself so that everything He **created** will be **holy** and **perfect** – just as He is Holy and **perfect**. God plans to give all that He is to you and to every child He has **ever created**.

How God Is All In All

Carefully study each verse in Ephesians 1:3-14. Do this meditatively – which is a penetrating exercise of "**thought.**" Now, try to place what Paul is saying into a deeply perceptive state of mind.

Be like little children who are thirsting to learn and understand **God's "word."** Spiritually mature Christians, who are **the saints** and **the faithful**, have been blessed already with all forms of **spiritual blessings** in heavenly places through Christ (Verse 3). Paul looked back into history. It was long before the universe of objects was created. There was nothing in existence at that time – only God. This implies that even before the physical existence of the universe took place, God predestinated and foreknew you to be adopted from the state of having human parents – to eventually becoming one of God's **spiritual "sons"** and **"daughters."**

Why? It is because it pleases God to give of Himself. With God's **love** and **goodness**, it gives Him great pleasure to share Himself with you. This is according to His **will**. Since God is the sole **goodness** (Matthew 19:17), it is the only **perfect** and **right path** God must follow. That is the reason God said, "...**It is not good that the man should be alone...**" (Genesis 2:18). Goodness must be shared. That is why God **willed** to reproduce Himself. It is because of His **love** and total **goodness**.

Wisdom Of God

According to God's good pleasure, **spiritually growing** Christians become overwhelmingly blessed with wisdom and prudence (Ephesians 1:8-9). Notice that Isaiah uttered the same concept in prophetic terms. Hence it compares with Paul's writings. Isaiah 46:10 states, "**Declaring the end from the beginning and from ancient times the things that are not yet done** [future events], **saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure.**"

What are these future events? The answer begins to form. In Isaiah 46:13, you read, "**I bring near my righteousness: it shall not**

be far off, and my salvation shall not tarry: and I will place salvation in Zion for Israel my glory.” So God guarantees that **salvation** and **righteousness** will come from Zion or Jerusalem through Israel. So, who will be **saved**?

Who Will Be Saved?

God's ultimate **intention** and **will** is to **save** everyone in the world. That claim may be shocking enough, but there is more. It is possible to go on to declare that God has guaranteed it! Examine the **biblical confirmation** of this bold claim, **“Look unto me, and be ye saved, all the ends of the earth: for I am God, and there is none else”** (Isaiah 45:22). How plain can it be? God declares, **“I have sworn by myself [God's absolute promise], the word is gone out of my mouth in righteousness, and shall not return. That unto me every knee shall bow, every tongue [all the world] shall swear”** (Verse 23).

Understand this – no one is excluded! It is God's **promise**. For God to **save everyone** is the **only righteous** thing to do. That is the maximum scenario. God concludes this disclosure in Verse 24 with the notion that even the angry or incensed will be included. The word “incensed” in Hebrew is “charah,” which means “to be **angry**” or “**displeased**” or “**glowingly enraged** in anger.” Even these people shall be **ashamed** (Isaiah 45:24-25). Wow! How plain and clear can this be? God will **save everyone – even those who have anger and hostility toward their Father, God**. It will even include individuals, who presently hate God. This truly is a loving Father. Those unpardonable sinners will finally be ashamed and bow down before Him. In this posture, they will repent of their ungodly attitudes.

Paul reveals this same mystery. Because of God's wisdom and

His **righteousness**, He has revealed to **spiritual** Christians who have understanding of **the mystery of His will**. This is God's great pleasure. Why? It is the only right thing for God to do. Paul announces God's ultimate **purpose, will or promise**, "**That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one** [God "all and in all"] **all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him...**" (Ephesians 1:10). Who does God exclude? NO ONE! **Even the incorrigibly wicked** will be **saved**. This includes those who are thrown into The Lake of Fire. Isn't this amazing?

Why does God do this? It is because, as has been shown in Isaiah, everyone of **every** tongue or nation will eventually repent. God will bring it to pass. Now you can see that both the books of Isaiah and Ephesians show how all human beings who have ever lived will eventually be brought to **repentance** and **salvation**. What is the time factor for God to fulfill this **promise to save the whole world**?

Christ Must Heal

Jesus promises that He will **not lose one human** who God, The Father calls to Him (John 6:39-44). This occurs during an extended time period where God can bring all this to pass. But there are many other questions. When does Christ become responsible to **save someone**? How does Jesus know that God has called that person? Christ made the following declaration:

For this people's heart is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing [full of wax], and their eyes they have closed; lest at any time they should see with their eyes and hear with their ears, and should understand with their heart [a new desire],

**and should be converted, and I should heal them
(Matthew 13:15).**

That is the time when Christ must **save** that person. It is when they are brought to their own individual repentance. As soon as these individuals understand and believe Christ's "**words**" which are God's "**words**" and have a change of heart and confess they are sinners, then Jesus must heal them. Therefore, no one is lost. Jesus Christ came into the world to **save it** (I John 4:14). Ultimately, when everyone confesses that Jesus is The Christ, then they, too, will be **saved**. Christ must **save** them! Paul and Isaiah both state that everyone will confess and repent. This is a process that will occur over a period of time.

Paul warns Christians not to judge new babes in Christ or other Christians who are weak in **the faith**. Why not? Read all of Romans 14. Paul tells you not to judge your brother, because only Christ can do the judging. He said, "**For it is written, as I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God**" (Verse 11). No one is excluded! Going further in **his letter**, Paul warns Christians not to be totally focused on themselves, but to try to think about the good of others. Why? This is because this is The Mind of Christ (Philippians 2:5), which will heal you.

The totality of that healing will **save** everyone. Paul said, "**That at the name of Jesus every knee shall bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth...**" (Verse 10). This is **all inclusive**.

Even Satan and his demons or fallen angels will eventually confess before Christ. No one is excluded once he or she believes that Jesus Christ must **save** them. Let *The Scriptures* unfold this proph-

ecy which was done first by Isaiah, then by Christ and Paul.

Order Of Salvation

Once a person is converted by having a complete change of mind, Christ must **save** that person. He will not lose any person who **repents**. God, however, has an orderly plan for all this to take place. It concerns each and every person who allows Christ to **heal** or **save** them according to the free choice of each individual. Remember, God is reproducing Himself to be “**all and in all.**” Your Father, in **heaven**, has absolute total free choice to do His **will** or desire. He is not constrained by anyone or anything. Likewise, you, this very day, have that same choice.

When God **resurrects**, He does so only to **give life**. In this process, I Corinthians 15 is The Resurrection Chapter which gives **the order** of **salvation**. God is The God of **the living** and not of the dead. On the other hand, Satan is “**the ‘god’ of the dead**” (Hebrews 2:14). Christ said that, regarding The Resurrection or The Great White Throne Judgment, “**...God is not the God of the dead, but is God of the living**” (Matthew 22:32). God, The Father would not resurrect people, in order to kill them – but instead, **resurrect** them to give them **life eternal!** In I Corinthians 15:22-23, Paul explains these things to the carnal Corinthians, some of whom did not believe there would ever be a **resurrection**. Paul said, “**For as in Adam, all** [his posterity – the world] **die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive**” (Verse 22). Following this statement, Paul goes on to declare, “²³**But every man in his own order...**” [will be] **saved in Christ**. Notice, there is a sense of order or sequence, which God uses in order to give you **salvation**.

How does Christ **save** you once you repent and are baptized (Acts

2:38)? It is by means of Jesus giving you His Holy Spirit which is, "...**Christ in you, the hope of glory...**" (Colossians 1:27). Through The Holy Spirit, you are literally **sealed**, so you can receive your **inheritance** (Ephesians 2:13-14). Jesus said:

"Verily, Verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word [God's Words], and believeth [have faith] on him that sent me [God], hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation [Judgment]; but is passed from death to life" (John 5:24).

What Is Death?

Christ's **promise** absolutely guarantees that **faithful** Christians who follow every "**word**" of God (Matthew 4:4) will **MISS DEATH**, "ultimately." They will not be judged or condemned. As long as you believe in Christ and are **faithful**, this accomplishes God's **work** (John 6:29). Jesus **must save you**. **That is an absolute**. If **spiritually growing** Christians do not die, then what is the method for their redemption? Remember when Lazarus, the brother of Martha and Mary, died, they called on Christ to help. Read the entire account of this apparent tragedy that led up to "**the resurrection**" of Lazarus (John 11:1-45). Christ took four days to arrive on the scene. Why was this? When His Disciples asked where they were going, He replied, "**Our friend Lazarus sleepeth**" (John 11:11). So there was no sense of urgency. The Disciples thought that if Lazarus were asleep, then he would wake up and be fine.

But, then, Jesus said, "**Lazarus is dead**" (Verse 14). It is obvious, by comparing these statements that Christ did not look upon the death of Lazarus as literally being dead, per se, but **only as being asleep**. Then Christ said, "...**I am the resurrection, and the life:**

he that believeth [Faith] in me, though he were dead, yet shall he live..." (Verse 25). Christ is telling you that when **spiritual** Christians die, they are **only asleep** – and will be **resurrected**. They will pass from **death to life**. Now consider Paul. He made a profound statement when he said, "...as it is appointed [Greek: "reserved"] **unto men once to die, but after this the judgment...**" (Hebrews 9:27). The Greek word for "judgment" is "krisis" – or "The Great White Throne Judgment" – **the final** judgment. So, it is obvious that no one can die more than once. But **Lazarus died twice**. He died once before Christ resurrected him after he was dead for four days. Then, when he lived out his human existence, he died again and is still waiting for **the resurrection**. So Lazarus literally died **twice**.

In I Corinthians 15:18, Paul is speaking about Christians who have died, but are only asleep – not really dead. So, those individuals who are **in Christ** only die once and are considered asleep – and not dead. If Lazarus died twice and Christians are considered to be asleep, then the appointment that everyone will die once must be a different kind of death than merely that of the body. That is what Nicodemus did not understand when Christ said, "**That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the spirit is spirit.**" Read John 3. The flesh has nothing to do with **the resurrection to life**. The body becomes dust or ashes.

Kill The Body

Jesus stated, "**And fear not them which kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell**" (Matthew 10:28). The Greek word for "hell" in this case is "Gehenna." Many people believe the soul is immortal. But clearly, Christ said the soul can be destroyed. In addition, Jesus said the body can also be destroyed

in The Lake of Fire. So, God can destroy both your soul and your body in the burning hell.

Examining the Greek gives a much simpler and a more logical understanding. The English word for “soul” in the Greek language is “psuche” or “breath.” In the Hebrew language, the word for “soul” is “ruak.” Both mean “the breath of life.” When Adam was created, God breathed into his nostrils and Adam became a living soul (Genesis 2:7). So, Adam was a “breathing, living being.” The “soul” is not immortal. God started Adam’s life by merely breathing His own breath into Adam’s nostrils – and the body started **to live**. It is very similar to resuscitating an individual whose heart has stopped. This is done by breathing air into the person’s nose or mouth. Once the lungs and heart start the blood flowing, this is the energizing fuel for the body. Then, the human consciousness begins to function – and the person continues to live. The Greek word “psuche” has the same significance as the “ruak” word in Hebrew.

This is the **one** common factor in humans and animals. Humans are of the animal kingdom and function by the breath of life or soul. Biblically, the word “soul,” therefore, merely means “a living being.” All animals struggle to exist by survival of the fittest. The breath, which creates the “soul,” ceases when you die.

Spirit Of Man

Humanity, however, has one **additional source of life energy**. It is known in *The Bible* as “**the spirit in man.**” In I Corinthians 2:11, Paul said:

For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? Even so the

things of God knoweth no man, but the spirit of God (I Corinthians 2:11).

The Greek word for “**spirit**” is “pneuma.” It also means “breath” but rather than “giving life,” it conveys “the rational thought of humanity.” Animals do not hold “pneuma” in common with man. Animals function by instinct and not reason. Descartes said, “I think; therefore, I am.” He recognized the human body is not you but your act of knowing you are conscious, makes you aware that you exist. What is this consciousness? When your brain is energized by your “**spirit**” “pneuma,” your mind begins to function and you have the capability to reason just as God reasons. A good example was Moses at Mount Sinai when he was reasoning with and asking God not to consume the sinful nation of Israel. Consciousness gives humanity the ability to think logically and unlike animals, man can be creative.

Christ said, “**Don’t fear those who can destroy your body.**” The Greek word for “body” is “soma,” which is your physiological makeup as a human. But you, like animals, have a “psuche” which is “a breath of life” or oxygen that supplies your life’s blood and makes you alive and able to function as a human.

However, you are different from animals in that your brain was given “**the spirit**” of man. This “**life energy**” from God causes you to have the capacity to be logical and therefore, exercise the ability to reason. Finally, in this analysis, you must come to understand which death it is that every human being must experience prior to **the judgment**.

Your Body Continually Changes

In The Resurrection Chapter, Paul explains how your mortal body

must put on immortality – thus becoming an immortal body (I Corinthians 15:53). What does *The Bible* mean when it declares that you, as a human, are mortal? To be “mortal” means “you can and will die.” But, in the Greek language, the word “mortal” carries a much greater meaning. The English word, “mortal,” is translated from “thanetos” which in the Greek means “one in change” or “dying.” It is an active tense “to be in the process of.”

Therefore, you are mortal by having human bodies (“soma”) which are constantly changing and are in the ongoing process of dying. Many body cells die every day. It is said that **every seven years**, the complete body has been replaced and literally renewed by this process.

So obviously, when you were a baby you had a different body than as a teenager or a young adult. More than that, when you are elderly, your body is already closing in on the process of dying. Being mortal means that you can get sick and die. You are not whole or not completely whole, as God and Christ are. Mortality is incomplete. It isn't whole. God is complete and therefore, has **life eternal**. God is the same yesterday, today and forever (Hebrews 13:8). God changes not. He is immortal and so is His Son (Malachi 3:6). God, The Father and Jesus, The Son, are both **spirit** and “pneuma” and have “Hagio's **pneuma**” or Holy Spirit. It cannot die or change but is “**eternal**” or “**immortal**.”

What Must Die

Now to answer the question, “What must die only once and then comes **the judgment**?” You know how the body or the flesh can die and then be resurrected, more than once, just as with Lazarus. But now it is time to come to understand why **the act of repentance** is so important to **salvation**. The Law has dominion over

humanity as long as you are alive (Romans 7:1). Does that mean Christians are subject to **the letter** or the legalism of The Law as long as you live? No! Absolutely not! Paul continues:

Wherefore, my brethren, ye also are become dead to the law by the body of Christ; that ye should be married to another [Christ, with *The New Covenant*, not *The Old Covenant*], even to him who is raised from the dead, that we should bring forth fruit unto God (Romans 7:4).

The **legal** requirement of **the letter** of The Law allowed divorce (Deuteronomy 24:1). The woman could be sold as property for sexual purposes of reproduction. In this context, it would be helpful to reread the chapter on ‘*Marriage*’ in *God’s Puzzle Solved*, regarding Satan’s system of marriage. Remember, the word in Hebrew for “marriage” is the same as is found in The Law of Deuteronomy 24:1. This word is “Baal.” You are dead by Christ’s death and, you are married to Jesus, The Groom, under God’s Law of Love and are married **forever**. So **the letter** of The Law, with its legal works, is no longer required for Christians. Christ died for all mankind. But what is it that must **die only once** for you to be married to Christ?

Romans 7:5-6 states that when you live by the flesh (Greek “sarx” or “beastly”) the desire of sin, which The Law demanded, will work in your members unto death. The wages of sin is death (Romans 6:23). You are delivered from death by The Law because you are dead. The Law no longer has any legal requirement for you (Verse 6). Why is this? From now on, you are directed to serve it in the **newness** of “**spirit**” (pneuma) and not according to the **oldness** of The Letter. There it is. It is a **spiritual matter** and not a physical or fleshly matter.

Deliverance

Paul reveals that he serves two laws. He must be continually at war with his fleshly carnal body, but he delights in The Law of God (Romans 7:21-25). Where? It is in his inward man (Romans 6:22). In Verse 24, Paul asks, "...**who shall deliver me from the body [soma] of this death?**" Thankfully, in Verse 25, he goes on to reveal that in his mind he serves God's Law, **spiritually**, but with his flesh (sarx, beastly) he serves **the law of sin**.

How do you serve God? It is not in the body of flesh but in your **mind of the spirit**. What dies? It is not primarily the body of flesh but rather something that happens to your mind (**the spirit** – pneuma). To God it isn't the resurrection of the body of the flesh that **saves** you but, it is more a matter of your **spirit** (pneuma), which has the capacity to think rationally. This does not occur as long as your mind and heart are blinded. Therefore, what must die? In Roman 8:6, Paul declared that to be **carnally minded** (beast-like) is **death**, but to be **spiritually minded** is **life and peace** (Romans 8:6). What has to die? Your **carnal mind or heart** – your human heart must go. Look what Christ revealed. It is actually something in your human heart that is corrupting you. The body (soma) of the flesh (sarx, beastly) is not the problem. It is just **weak**, as Christ said:

¹⁸But those things which proceed out of the mouth come forth from the heart; and they defile the man. ¹⁹For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness [lies], blasphemies [against God] (Matthew 15:18-19).

The culprit is the human carnal heart. The body and the flesh are

weak and, therefore, follow the choices of one's carnal heart. It is the thinking process which dominates. From the very beginning, all that God wanted was for you to have a **heart** which keeps His Commandments **spiritually**.

That is why God added "**nothing more**" for Israel to do at Mount Sinai. This only lasted until they sinned and then God had to give them The Law of **Works**. These were legal requirements imposed as a **bondage** until Christ came with a better **covenant**. This *New Covenant* gave "**life**" and not death (Deuteronomy 5:29). So, what must die? It is your human carnal heart. Your **spirit** (pneuma) must be changed. You must change your mind from human reasoning that follows Satan, to become **spiritual** as God who is a "**Spirit**" (John 4). Therefore, you only worship God **spiritually** in your "**pneuma**" called **the "spirit in man."**

The thinking process must be changed from carnal – self-preservation – to God's way of thinking through love (agapè). The carnal mind must **die**, but only **once!** You must not, as some religions believe, "follow your heart," which applies to the reasoning process and will only lead to your death.

Why Is Repentance Necessary?

When Jesus explained to Nicodemus how he must be **born again**, Nicodemus was preoccupied with the idea that Jesus meant the body of flesh had to become different. But Christ said, "No" (John 3). Christ explained, "**That which is born of the flesh** ["sarx" "beastly"] **is flesh**" (John 3:6). As long as people remain human, they are limited. Once you are born of **the spirit, you are a "spirit"** – and no longer just a human being.

That is why Jesus said that until you are born of water (baptism)

and of **the spirit** (Holy Spirit), you cannot enter into The Kingdom of God. There are two requirements: water baptism and receiving God's Holy Spirit. Why?

John, The Baptist, prepared Christ's way. How was this? John was baptizing people (John 3:23-25). Why did he do this? John's Disciples disputed with him about purifying. Baptism is a method of purifying, by putting something to death (Verse 25).

But there is much more. John was baptizing in The Jordan River while people were **confessing their sins** (Matthew 3:6). Remember that baptism is a method of becoming **pure** by being cleansed. Now, for a **spiritual surprise**. John said:

¹⁰And now also the ax is laid unto the root of the trees: therefore every tree [humans] which bringeth not forth good fruit is hewn down, and cast into the fire. ¹¹I indeed baptize [purify] you with water unto repentance: but he that cometh after me [Christ] is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear [why]? he [here's why] shall baptize [purify] you with the Holy Ghost and with fire (Matthew 3:10-11).

Why is Jesus greater than John? John can only prepare "**the way**" and he only baptizes (purifies) **repented** people with water. But Christ not only baptizes with water but can and will **SAVE EVERYONE**. He has the additional advantage of The Power of Fire – (explained elsewhere).

Baptism By Water And Fire

Those not baptized (purified) by water will be baptized or purified

by **fire** (The Lake of Fire). The Lake of Fire is not intended to destroy people but rather to cleanse and purify them by **the fire**. They **will** emerge from this **fire**. What must be purified? It is not just the tree, but, also, the root. The tree is the body that bares the fruit. The root actually gives **life** (“pneuma” – **spirit**) to the tree. To have good fruit, one must have a clean heart or root.

When you repent, what dies in the water baptism besides your sins (Acts 2:38)? It is “**the self**.” What is repentance? In Strong’s #3340 and #3341, the Greek words “mentanoeo” and “metanoia” mean “**to think differently**” or “reversal of one’s mind.” This is a “**core replacement**” taking place. Repentance has nothing to do with the body or flesh, but only with your “pneuma” or “how you think.” It involves the very **motivation** and **desire** of **your heart** by means of a **change of thinking**. Your carnal thoughts or pneuma only seem to follow the lust of the flesh or survival of the fittest (“sarx”). You need to get to the root, to your **heart/spirit** to think like Christ (Philippians 2:5) and then God will be “**all and in all**.” How does this happen?

Once you repent by a change to God’s mind and are baptized by putting your carnal heart to death, then you are purified or forgiven of your sins. So, Jesus must **save** you (Romans 8:15-17). It has to be a total commitment. How is this done? Paul said that if you are led by God’s Holy Spirit with **Christ “In You”** (Colossians 1:27), then you will be a Son of God. Why? Because Christ can be “in you” by God’s **comforter** – His Holy Spirit (John 14:16-18).

How does God’s Holy Spirit comfort you? His “**Spirit**” leads your “**spirit**,” your converted mind or “**pneuma**,” into all truth. Your heart, which is now pure, can receive **the truth** of God’s “**Spirit**” which sets you FREE (John 17:17). Then Romans 8:16

states, “**The spirit** [God’s] **itself beareth witness with our spirit** [pneuma in man], **that we are the children of God.**” You are **God’s children** and heirs with Christ (Verse 17). You pass from **death to life**. There is no second death (Lake of Fire) possible. The death of your physical body can happen even multiple times like Lazarus, but in Christ, you are only asleep. What dies once? It is your **carnal mind** and **heart that dies** and once that happens, Jesus **saves** you by being your **redeemer**.

God’s Rest

“**There remaineth therefore a rest** [“Sabbatismus” entering the real rest] **to the people of God**” (Hebrews 4:9). This rest is not “Sabbaton,” which is “observing The 7th Day,” but only a **shadow**. Paul said, “**For he that is entered into his rest** [remember God’s real **rest** and not The Sabbath Day, which is merely a shadow or type of things to come], **he also hath ceased from his own works** [human effort]” (Verse 10). How? It is by listening to God’s Holy Spirit this very day and for as long as God’s **Spirit** is available to you.

In Ephesians 1:13-14, Paul said that when you repent and receive God’s Holy Spirit, you are **sealed**. This is very much like earnest money or a down payment on your **inheritance**. You are already **sealed** (passed from death to **life**) to enter into God’s real **rest** or The Kingdom of God. Because of this, you can prove **biblically** who will be in God’s **kingdom**.

The Five Rewards

I Corinthians 15 points out the order or sequence of how God, in Christ, **SAVES EVERYONE**. God is now in the process of **saving the entire world** (I John 4:14). This **biblical process** shows how

everyone must **repent** or **confess** their sins before Christ, either by baptism (purification) of water or a baptism (purification) of fire. What must die? It is not merely the body of flesh, but the carnal minded heart that must die. This is “**the spirit**” in man or “pneuma.” Now you will discover the facts about the orderly process of **salvation**. There is a different reward for each “**repented group**.”

Christ – The Firstborn

The discussion in I Corinthians 15 concerns **whether or not** there will be any **last day resurrection**. Paul declares that if Christ died and was not resurrected, then Christians, of all men, are most miserable. This is because these individuals suffer more than people who seek to be comfortable during their life span. Also, it applies to Christians who stay **dead** for an extended period of time (I Corinthians 15:18-19). Jesus Christ was the first to be resurrected by God, to be in God’s **kingdom**. So, in God’s order, Christ was **resurrected** first, because He was **the firstborn**. Consequently, He will be King of Kings and Lord of Lords over all of God’s **creation** (Verse 20). He is to be The Savior of **the world**, and your Judge who sits on God’s **right hand** sharing all that God is in His “being” or “**all and in all**.”

Jesus, The Christ, God’s Firstborn!

God’s Kingdom involves a Royal Marriage with a Groom and a Bride. Read Matthew 22:1-14. God is preparing a Marriage Feast for His Son. He sends out His servants (Prophets) to announce The Wedding Feast. They are killed, and The King becomes angry, so He sends out invitations to “**the entire world**” (The Gentiles). This is a parable that compares with the fact that Israel rejected Jesus when He came as The Groom (John 3:29). Israel lost their

“chosen” status, and became **last** in line for **salvation** instead of being **first**. God then sends the invitations to The Gentiles. Notice that many are called but few are chosen (Matthew 22:14). Who is The Bride (virgins) to be called? **The called ones** are “**the ecclesia**” or “**the church**” (Ephesians 5:23, 32). **The church** is His “**body**.” But out of those **called**, half are wise virgins and the other half are unwise (Matthew 25:1-13). Read the entire account for a clearer understanding. When Jesus returns at His Second Coming (Greek “*parasousia*”), He rejects the unwise virgins. Why is this? It is because they did not keep growing **spiritually** in God’s Holy Spirit. They ran out of oil for their lamps, while watching for their husband to appear. Jesus will not marry any virgin who doesn’t love (*agapè*) Him as much as He loves her and for whom He gave His **life** (for His Bride – The Church).

A Spiritually Growing Christian

A virgin, to be accepted by Jesus, must love Him. Notice that you can be a virgin, clean, undefiled and still not be selected by Christ. Going to church often, praying, fasting and giving money doesn’t qualify a person to be a virgin. You can even give your body to be burned but if you do not have love (*agapè*), you will not be chosen (I Corinthians 13:3). The wise virgin must be **perfect** like God, your Father (Matthew 5:48). This is a tall order to fill. Now look at the characteristics you must possess:

- 1 You must **believe/love** His Son, Jesus.
- 2 You must **love** God with all your **heart, mind and being**, to the extent of giving up your own life.
- 3 You must **love** your neighbor as yourself and then, go further, **loving** your enemies.

- 4 You must **not judge** or accuse others of wrong doing, which includes your enemies.
- 5 You must give to the needy.

Matthew 5, 6, and 7 shows the perfection to which you must attain, in order to be like your Father and Christ. Nothing else counts – even the keeping of all the legal requirements of The Letter of The Law. Christ said, “**By this shall all men know that ye are my disciples, if ye have love one to another**” (John 13:35). Nothing else matters. To be chosen as a Bride for Christ, you must be a **saint** – which is to be willing to give up all or everything for Christ (Ephesians 1:1). Only a continually growing Christian can receive the reward of being Christ’s Bride. However, Christ said only a few would be **saved**. I Corinthians 15:23 shows how each person receives **salvation**. Christ, who is first, then The Bride follows afterward at **the second coming of Jesus**.

The Bride, Second To Be Saved!

Then comes the thousand-year reign (The Millennium) of Christ and His Bride. Carefully read all of Romans 11 where Jesus **saves** all of Israel – not just The Jews. He **saves** the entire Twelve Tribes of Israel. When does Christ **save** Israel? Romans 11:25 states that when all The Gentiles have been called – before Israel. Israel ends up being the last to be **saved** (Verse 26). This is Christ’s **second coming** as King of Kings when He takes The Throne of David (over Israel and **the whole world**) (Revelation 20:4-6).

This is when a **new temple** is built, which is a courthouse for Israel and the world to receive mercy from Christ, The Judge – The King. **The temple** reinstates *The Torah* or The Letter of The Law with its “**works**” (Sacrifices, Holy Days, Sabbath, etc) for the en-

tire world. Why? This will be a first stepping-stone to bringing **the unconverted** to Christ, The Messiah, so they too, can repent and be healed. Once all Israel is **saved** at The Last Day or Judgment, what will be their reward?

Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power (I Corinthians 15:24).

This is the time when Jesus delivers The Kingdom of God to God, The Father. This is the fantastic conclusion to the story of mankind. It is beyond the imagination of most people who attend church today. Now, it would be good to know what is the reward for Jesus, The Bride and Israel?

Paradise

When New Jerusalem descends from heaven to the new earth, you will see a city that is adorned as a Bride for her Husband (**Christ**). This "**kingdom**" will be God's **rest** (Sabbatismos). The Apostles form **the foundation**, while **the wall is "the church"** (Bride), **the pearly gates**, which have nothing to do with Peter, but have to do with The Twelve Tribes of Israel.

Read all of Revelation 21 carefully. This is God's **rest** or Jubilee Year (50 years) when everyone receives **liberty** by means of a **release** (This particular part is explained fully in the book, *God's Puzzle Solved*).

There will be no fears, no sorrows, no stress, no crying, no pain and no death (Revelation 21:4). This truly is a Sabbath Rest – with **everyone living in a state of liberty and totally free.**

The following are the only ones living in New Jerusalem:

- 1 **God, The Father (Revelation 21:3)**
- 2 **Christ, The Groom (Revelation 21:22)**
- 3 **Christ's Bride (Revelation 21:2-7, 14)**
- 4 **Israel — God's Witness (Revelation 21:2)**

When Jesus went to **heaven** to be with His Father, He went to build a place for you in New Jerusalem (John 14:1-2). Revelation 21:27 explains how **only** those who are written in *The Lamb's Book of Life (The Marriage Registry)* can enter New Jerusalem. At this time, only God, The Father, Jesus, The Husband, The Chosen Bride and Israel live in this **city**.

Who is left out? Read Revelation 21:24. There are those nations who are **saved** and are contained within *The Book of Life*; however, they do not live in **the city**. They are **saved** and can enter **the city** to bring their **glory** to it, but live outside of **the city**. What is this **glory** of **the saved nations**? The Greek word for "glory" is "doxa" meaning "all of God's **goodness**." In God's "**kingdom**," **spiritual growth** will always continue. But, you need to know who these **saved nations** are.

New Jerusalem

Since the nations can come into New Jerusalem, they are The Guests. They do not live there but are **The Invited Guests** to The Wedding Feast. How long does this Wedding Feast last? It lasts FOREVER. It is The Jubilee, a time to always be jubilant and **free forever**. These people all continue to grow in God's "**glory**"

of being “**all and in all**” with God. Who is in *The Book of Life*, otherwise known as *The Marriage Registry*? The following gives you the answer:

- 1 **God (The Father)**
- 2 **Jesus (Firstborn Son – The Groom)**
- 3 **Bride (Saints Chosen from The Church – The Wise Virgins)**
- 4 **Israel (Witnesses for The Wedding)**
- 5 **Guests (Unwise Virgins – Bridesmaids and The Guests)**

Who is left out? Those who were defiled who worked abominations and/or were liars. They cannot enter **the city**. Besides, they are not in *The Marriage Registry – The Lamb's Book of Life* (Revelation 21:27). Only those who keep God's Ten Commandments “**spiritually**” in their hearts, can enter **the city** (Revelation 22:14). The following are excluded:

For without are dogs, and sorcerers, and whoremongers, and murderers, and idolaters, and whosoever loveth and maketh a lie (Revelation 22:15).

None of these people can enter New Jerusalem. That would be a defilement of the first order. Jesus foretold the circumstances about these sinful people in The Sermon on The Mount, saying:

Whosoever therefore shall break one of these least

commandments [The Ten], and shall teach men so, he shall be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whosoever shall do and teach them, the same shall be called great in the kingdom of heaven (Matthew 5:19).

Both groups are in **The Kingdom**. But those who do not keep The Ten Commandments “**spiritually**” are not allowed into **the city** and have the least reward in God’s **kingdom**. Who are these people and what happens to them? (Chapter 16 answers this point). But for now, rejoice in the fact that all of humanity will be **saved** because God and Christ will lose no one. That is your hope and truly a joyous fact to fully comprehend.

CHAPTER 20

A SPIRITUAL RESURRECTION ONLY

The Apostle Paul gives important details about the forthcoming “resurrection from the dead.” His main point of emphasis revolves around a particular step-by-step sequence of events. In describing how these events unfold, Paul used the words, “...every man in his own order...” (I Corinthians 15:23). Does this include those people who are cast into The Lake of Fire? The answer is “yes.” They will be “saved – eventually.” But how will this occur? For one thing, they will be “resurrected” in their own order or sequence. Very few people seem to understand the full extent of God’s mercy. What does *The Bible* say?

The vital text of I Corinthians 15:23 concentrates upon a special **resurrection sequence**. The key words, “...every man in his own order...” are extremely important, because these words establish the primary basis for discerning the situation facing those people who were cast into The Lake of Fire. This prime text brings you to the final group of people who are **saved** by means of a **resurrection**.

Paul’s statement about, “...as in Adam all die...” (Verse 22) clearly applies to all of Adam and Eve’s posterity. The entire human race is included in this vital text. But there is more.

All of humanity is, also, included in the remainder of that same

text which says, “...**as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive**” (Verse 22). Pay special attention to those key words, “...**even so in Christ shall all be made alive.**” That means everyone.

Babes In Christ

People who study their *Bibles* may be inclined to look into the subject of **the promised future life**. In most cases, they have not been told other more important details. Vital evidence is usually missing from the commonly given explanations or not adequately explained by various **biblical teachers**. Many **biblical students** have not been completely satisfied with this type of subject under investigation. The commonly accepted notions about “heaven” and “hell” dominate.

Consider Paul's *Epistle* to The Corinthians. This letter was written to The Church of God in Corinth. These new Christians were short on critical knowledge – just as many people are today. What kind of **church** was it? What did these people understand? What did they fail to learn? You need to know the answers to these questions, because your own understanding depends upon what these people were told by this Apostle over 1900 years ago.

The Apostle Paul described **the general level of spirituality** of The Church (I Corinthians 3:1). He explained how The Corinthian Church was still carnal and the brethren were like “**babes**” in Christ. They had not fully repented. Neither had they grown in truth and understanding. These new Christians still had viewpoints in their minds (pneuma) like “**babes**” who were just **barely beginning** to understand various aspects of **the truth**. So, therefore, Paul explained how this *Epistle* was being written from the point of view that the readers **were still babes in Christ**.

Then Paul admonished these brethren for being so limited in their thinking because they only accepted the teachings given by their favorite minister. This created a division in the group. It led to disputes and personality conflicts within “**the church.**” All of this was identified as **carnal** activity. For a full perspective, read all of I Corinthians 3.

To counter these misconceptions, Paul explained how every one of God’s ministers are truly God’s **servants** (Verse 9). He showed how the only foundation any ministerial teacher has is what has already been laid out by Jesus Christ (Verse 11). If The Corinthians were to accept any other teaching as the foundation upon Christ, then that teaching would be tried and tested. How was this accomplished? Notice what Paul said:

¹²Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble; ¹³Every man’s work [teachings] shall be made manifest: for the day [what day?] shall declare it, because it shall be revealed [how?] by fire; and the fire shall try [not destroy] every man’s work [teachings] of what sort it is (I Corinthians 3:12-13).

What “Work” Survives?

How clear and easy this is to understand. Notice those questions in brackets within the quotation above. They were placed into the context to capture your attention at these critical points in Paul’s exposition. Many people just read over these profound statements by Paul. Yet, those questions should draw necessary attention to aspects that everyone must seriously consider. Remember, Paul said that he was speaking to “**babes**” in Christ who were newly repentant Christians. Paul explained the following:

¹⁴If any man's work [teaching or belief] abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

¹⁵If any man's work shall be burned [Lake of Fire], he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire (I Corinthians 3: 14-15).

This message is so plain. The reward and/or loss are clearly defined. But who has thought in these terms before? In other words, your false beliefs about faith will be burned – but your “pneuma” (mind) will be **saved**.

Why is this? It is because the burned “**works**” represent repentance and the death of your carnal minds and hearts (pneuma). Remember, that “**only once**” are you appointed (reserved) to die. This was explained earlier. Paul pointed out how **the babes in Christ** never died fully (in their heart). Therefore, they need the fire to test them. Only then and by this means, could they be **saved**. The fire quickly burned up the wood, hay and stubble.

These are the combustible elements of negativity that are resident in the natural person. The body and ashes become ashes under one's feet. After **the fire**, what remains is a repentant heart of gold, silver, and precious stones. The Lake of Fire doesn't destroy you but only the body (soma) and the flesh (sarx). These two items are completely destroyed and are dead. Even the carnal mind and heart dies (pneuma), so there is nothing remaining alive of the **former** person. This amounts to total destruction and death. Then, it is God who gives you **a new spirit** (pneuma) or heart. What is left from **the fire** is a new mind and heart, while the false beliefs have all disappeared in **the fire**.

At this point, God's Holy Spirit can dwell in these people (Verse 16). Remember, it is only **the carnal babes** in Christ who are

destined to be thrown into The Lake of Fire. They will be the last ones to be **saved** in Christ. So this group, which is the fifth under consideration, is the **last group to be saved**. Consequently, this group will have a baptism (purification) of fire by Christ, The Judge, who is **no longer** The Savior or Redeemer in this capacity. His role has changed for this **purpose**.

Time Of Reproduction

The time frame concerning these **babes** in Christ is judiciously located in Galatians 4:19-27. Paul states that since these immature Christians are only children or **babes** in Christ, in the rebirth, he wants them to fully mature or become adults – with Christ having been formed in them. These Galatians had received false teachings from The Jews who were saying: (1) they had to be circumcised and (2) were required to keep The Letter (legal works) of The Law. Therefore, Paul had to explain **The Two Covenants**. It was not “**the covenant**” which was **a promise** given to Abraham but rather “**the covenant**” that was given to Israel at Mount Sinai after they had sinned.

Paul said *The Old Covenant* is an allegory, type or shadow which was represented by Hagar and her child. Hagar was the handmaiden of Abraham’s wife, Sarah. This situation could be compared to The Letter of The Law, which was used as an effort to please God in the flesh. But in fact, it never pleased God in the ultimate sense (Romans 8:8). Paul explained how *The New Covenant* is from Jerusalem located in **heaven**, which is not like the earthly Jerusalem, with its fleshy worship.

Jerusalem Above

Now be prepared for a fantastic **spiritual lesson**. Galatians 4:26

states, “**But Jerusalem which is above is free** [No Letter of The Law] **which is the mother of us all.**” This Jerusalem comes down to earth in Revelations Chapters 21 and 22. It is everyone’s (the world’s) **mother**. Remember that Eve’s name meant “Mother of All Living” – not dying. Therefore, Eve was a type of “**the church**” (Genesis 3:20). The earthly mother or the physical Jerusalem produces more children than the heavenly Jerusalem (Verse 27). Ultimately, the heavenly New Jerusalem breaks forth (has many babies) with more children than the desolate – which are Satan’s children who have been created by attempts of human reason and effort.

Reproduction by any method is okay with Satan, whether by means of illegitimacy, cloning, artificial insemination or any other way but not God’s **way**. So, these babes in Christ who are thrown into The Lake of Fire – will come to **repentance** – and the carnal-minded heart will die (pneuma). They will become babes in Christ who are eventually born again (John 3). All this will take place in proper sequence.

Read God’s indictment of Eve for having followed Satan’s instructions (Genesis 3:15-16). From this point on, Eve was Adam’s property for purposes of sex and reproduction (Satan’s system). In this regard, Satan will always consider God’s natural system of reproduction as an enemy and so women will have a reminder through: (1) childbirth in pain and (2) a period of sorrow. Why is this?

Painful Birth

The outcome is The Lake of Fire or painful birth. This is because Satan’s system will exist until they **repent**. Then, they will begin to follow God’s “**will!**” Read this penalty about a painful birth

in Genesis 3:16. This **will** ultimately save the babe in childbirth which is a type of “a new incorruptible babe in Christ.”

Paul elaborates on this later in a **spiritual sense**, when he declares, “...**she** [the woman] **shall be saved in childbearing, if they continue in faith and charity and holiness with sobriety**” (I Timothy 2:15). *The Book of Hebrews* warns that God is a consuming fire which is how God punishes (Hebrews 12:29).

Paul warns Christians not to allow any **root of bitterness** to spring up in them, as they can become defiled by it. Bitterness makes your heart carnal and loveless (Verse 15). You need a loving heart to be like Christ.

Remember that your “**pneuma**” or carnal heart must die **once**. What does God do to carnal people? “**For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth** [whips] **every son whom he receiveth**” (Hebrews 12:6). The Lake of Fire is God’s whipping board. It is, also, compared to the situation where **the stripes** were laid upon Christ. He willingly accepted these stripes for you.

The prophecy by Isaiah will help to identify who God receives. When God brings forth children (birth), it always comes to completion (Isaiah 66:8-11). God never aborts. Abortion is a sin. Why is this? Isaiah 59:1-2 reveals that God can **save** everyone, and it is only sin that separates you from God and **salvation**.

Full Term Birth For Everyone?

God can and will **save** everyone. Read God’s promise. Isaiah 66:9 says, “**Shall I bring to birth** [from conception] **and not cause to bring forth? saith the Lord: shall I cause to bring**

forth, and shut the womb?..." God never aborts or miscarries His **children**. He always brings a fetus to birth.

Once God conceives (as **logos**) He brings it to pass (II Peter 3:9). Still births, abortions, crib deaths, etc, are the result of generations of sin (Exodus 20:5). When those conceptions occur through sinful acts, if that person repents, then God **promises** to bring it to birth (this action by God will be proved later).

The Hebrew word meaning "birth" (Isaiah 66:9) is "shabar," "to crush" or "destroy" which is called "abort" and/or "abortion." God will **not abort** anyone. God **created you** and it is God's **will** to **save** everyone, no matter how long it may take (II Peter 3:9).

Corruptible To Incorruptible

Many say that if God **saves** everyone then where does *The Bible* **prove a third resurrection**? That is a good question. But God has already resurrected everyone in The White Throne Resurrection (Revelation 20:11-15). All who are **not raised in The First Resurrection** (The Bride at Christ's second coming) will be resurrected in The Second Resurrection, which is also called The Last Day (John 5:27-29 and John 6:40). **There is no need for a physical, third resurrection.**

Some believe there is a 100-year period when everyone who didn't know Christ will receive their chance for **salvation**. But this isn't necessary, because in Luke 12, Christ already answered this dilemma (to be proved later). This Resurrection of The Last Day (Great White Throne) is for people who are totally restored as humans. You will have your body (soma), flesh (sarx) and "**spirit in man**." Remember, that when one dies, this "**spirit in man**" goes back to God who gave it originally (Ecclesiastes 12:7).

“**Pneuma**” is God’s life-giving **energy** that gives you rational, conscious thought. It is what makes you what you are.

The state of the dead deals with **God’s individual code for you**. You will learn more about this code or “**spirit in man**,” by which process God allows you to exist as a personal being. There is **no need for a third physical resurrection**. You have either killed your carnal heart – **or else you have not repented yet**. Christ said The Last Day or White Throne Judgment is when **all** nations are gathered together (Matthew 25:32-33). This word “**judgment**” in Greek, is “krisis” or “crisis.” Why is this? It is because it is a time of separation between **the sheep** and **the goats**.

This is according to their works and whether or not various individuals are recorded in *The Book of Life*. This is **not** a judgment of listening to all the sins you committed. Rather, it is a **crisis of separation** (the great gulf of death) between **sheep** and **goats**.

100-Year Period

There is no 100-year period for gaining a chance at **salvation**, suggested by Isaiah 65:20. The judgment is merely a **separation**. Jesus separates **the sheep** from **the goats**, period (Matthew 25:33).

The sheep (Wedding Guests) enter God’s “**kingdom**” while **the goats** are thrown into The Lake of “age-lasting” Fire (Matthew 25:41).

This explanation should be simple enough and quite clear to your understanding. But what happens to those who are thrown into The Lake of Fire? How does it convert them? I Corinthians 15 is The Resurrection Chapter. This is where you see how everyone is

saved in Christ – according to their individual order. Remember, the five categories of this **salvation** are:

- 1 **Christ**, The Firstborn.
- 2 **The Bride**, or **chosen saints** from **the church**. These are represented by The Five Wise Virgins.
- 3 **The Two Witnesses** for The Wedding Feast represent The Restored Lost Tribes of Israel and Judah, as one nation (Ezekiel 37:22). When Christ came, as a human, by The Holy Spirit The Christian Gentiles became the second witness.
- 4 **The Guests** are the **sheep** or the **five remaining unwise virgins**. They are the **saved nations in the kingdom** (Revelation 21:24).

Note #1: Remember, the five unwise virgins are literal virgins. They are undefiled and clean – and can come to The Wedding Feast. They have The Wedding “garments” (Bridesmaids) and are unspotted.

However, they were running out of God’s Holy Spirit and were **not a shining light** on a hill for a **witness** of The Groom (Christ) when He came. They lost out on being The Bride although were still virgins and undefiled. As they say, “Forever a bridesmaid, but never a bride.” You could compare this with Cinderella, The Bride and her sisters, who were also virgins.

Note #2: That is why they must bring their “**glory**” to New Jerusalem (Greek – “doxa,” “God’s goodness”) to Christ, which is **their spiritual growth**.

The waters from God's **throne** carrying the healing leaves from The Tree of Life heals them. These are the ones who are like Job, who believe they must be an observer of "The Letter of The Law." But this was their own righteousness.

They will be in God's **kingdom** as The Guests or Bridesmaids who must continue to **grow spiritually** in The Holy Spirit. It cannot be by means of their own **righteousness** (Revelation 21:24). However, the last **saved** group, the unconverted, will be there also.

- 1 **The unconverted** will receive stripes from God by **the fire**. You can **biblically prove** the process of their **salvation**, which is not a physical **third resurrection**, but rather a **spiritual third harvest**. This is The Great Fall Harvest when billions are **saved**.

The Wicked Are Saved

Those thrown into The Lake of Fire have already been defined as **the babes** in Christ. They must endure this trial or they cannot be **saved**. How does God bring them to repentance? These "**babes in Christ**" must break forth or have a painful birth as Eve was promised.

Continuing with **the order** of **salvation** in I Corinthians 15, you finally come to the end of death. In Verse 24, Paul explained how the end comes when Christ gives total control of "**the kingdom**" back to His Father (Verse 24). Paul states that until all enemies of God are defeated, Jesus must continue to reign (I Corinthians 15:25). Then, Paul beautifully reveals how the last enemy, **death** itself, must be destroyed. He says, "**The last enemy that shall**

be destroyed is death" (I Corinthians 15:26). In the light of this text, it would be foolish to say something like, "death is destroyed – except for all the dead people lying around." That would be absurd. Besides, it is a contradiction of terms. The only way that text could be true is if all of the dead people were given **life**. On this basis, **salvation is universal**.

Furthermore, according to this **scripture** if anyone is dead, then Christ cannot turn over The Kingdom of God to The Father (I Corinthians 15:24). Jesus must reign until **death** is gone! If, as some believe, this doesn't include those in The Lake of Fire who are **destroyed**, then this *Scripture* cannot be true, "...**Death is swallowed up in victory**" (Verse 54). The Greek word for "victory" is "nikos" meaning "a conquest" or "doing away with it." That is the full intent of the word "victory." The word "swallow" in the Greek, is "katapino," meaning "to drown" or "completely gulp down," or "to be gone" or "totally removed." This victory carries the complete meaning for "nothing to be left." Death can no longer exist. No one can be dead or else there is no victory over death. This is very plain.

It may be the reason why some erroneously believe that those in The Lake of Fire will burn forever. But, that thinking is not **biblically true**. These *Bible statements* mean what they say. All the dead are no longer dead. Read how all this happens in Isaiah 45:21-25. You have already seen proof of how there are three places in *The Bible* validating each and every person will bow their knees to Christ and **repent**. The prophecy reveals that even the incensed (angry toward God), and the wicked, will bow their knees and confess. Who are these individuals? It applies to every race and tongue in the whole world. Twice Paul states that all will **repent** (Romans 14:7-11 and Philippians 2:10-11). Yes, all will repent, but how?

A Spiritual Resurrection

Paul said that all people are sown or created a **natural body**; and that all are raised a **spiritual body** (I Corinthians 15:44). That seems quite clear. In other words, those **saved** were human – and they died (soma, sarx). This includes their body and fleshly desire. Their **spirit** (pneuma) went back to God at the point of death (Ecclesiastes 12:7). What dies? This text of Ecclesiastes 12:7 focuses on the dust (body and flesh) that shall die and become part of the earth (grave) once again while **the spirit** goes back to God.

But, not everyone is resurrected from the grave or hades (hell). I Corinthians 15:51 states that not everyone goes back to the grave and dies physically. Remember, there are Christians who are dead but they are only asleep. However, Paul said that everyone (Christians) will not sleep or die. Who would this be? Verse 52 explains that in a moment, at The Last Trump, the dead Christians will rise from the grave and be composed of **spirit** or no longer human. Those who are **alive** at The Last Trump will automatically have a **spiritual resurrection** without the death of the body. The body is instantly changed to “**a spirit body**.” It is completely a “**spiritual resurrection**.” When does this happen? When is The Last Trump?

Paul explained how The Last “Seventh Trump” takes place when **Jesus returns the second time to the earth** to rule with His Bride (Saints in The Church) (I Thessalonians 4:13-18). This is just before The Millennium begins. Paul gives this as a **biblical example** of a **spiritual resurrection** which doesn’t require death of the body.

Another **physical resurrection** of those in The Lake of Fire is not

necessary. No further judgment is required. They paid the last farthing or penalty for their crimes. Paul defines this **spiritual resurrection** (Harvest):

For this corruptible [body and flesh] must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality (I Corinthians 15:53).

This is an **instantaneous change** for these people. It is just like those who are alive at Christ's second coming. Paul continues with the revealed order of those who are **saved**, by stating the following:

So when this corruptible shall have put on incorruption, and this mortal shall have put on immortality... (I Corinthians 15:54, 1st part).

This is an **instant body-to-spirit process**. In the "twinkling of an eye" (Verse 52) a change to a **spiritual body** occurs. This mortal (dying) body puts on immortality (**eternal body**) at that time and death is **swallowed up in victory**:

Then shall be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory (I Corinthians 15:54 2nd part).

When is this? It is not The First Resurrection in Verse 52 but when Christ puts down the last enemy – **death**. No one is dead any longer. Now Paul's glorious summation of this entire account:

⁵⁵O death, where is thy sting? O grave, where is thy victory? ⁵⁶The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law (I Corinthians 15:55-56).

Everyone confesses and repents. When they are converted, they are **dead to The Law** (Romans 7:6). Once you are dead (**repented – death of carnal heart**), The Law has no hold on you, so therefore, you have no sin.

Third Resurrection – A Harvest

This can be called “**the third**” or **spiritual resurrection**, in The Lake of Fire. It concerns those who **repent** and become “**the babes in Christ**” in God’s “**kingdom**.” Notice, they are not allowed into New Jerusalem until they grow **spiritually** by keeping God’s **commandments in their hearts**. New Jerusalem is where **righteousness dwells** but these “**babes in Christ**” are not allowed to enter. They are the **least** in God’s “**kingdom**” because they did not believe in God’s **commandments**. Read Revelation 22:14-15. Those who remain outside the city are the wicked and unbelievers.

Everyone who has existed, including “**the angels**” (Satan and demons) will eventually be **saved**. Everyone existing now and all those who will exist in the future will, also, be included. This is because they will repent and confess their sins (Philippians 2:9-11). **Everyone confesses and repents**. These will be: (1) those in heaven (angels) (2) those things on the earth (humans who are alive) and (3) those under the earth (the dead in their graves) (Philippians 2:10-11). This means that everyone is **saved** – therefore, fulfilling the text that declares, God is **all and in all**. This final “**spiritual resurrection**” or “**harvest**” affects those confessing and those who are still in The Lake of Fire. This is a **spiritual resurrection**. When they confess before Christ and God, The Father, then they are the final group, in sequence, which is **salvation** being given to every person. But, they will also be “**the babes in Christ**” who are living in God’s “**kingdom**.” This is New Jerusa-

lem, breaking forth, as The Universal Mother, The Church, having billions of children. Christ, The Husband and His Bride, The Church, producing far more children than the desolate (Galatians 4:19-27).

CHAPTER 21

GOD, “ALL IN ALL”

When Christ puts down the last enemy called **DEATH**, which is the second death – or the end of death, itself, then, He will turn over all authority back to God, The Father, so that, “...God may be all in all” (I Corinthians 15:28 and Revelation 20:14). Everything and everyone in “heaven” and “on earth” will be of God, which means “...all in all...” This is how it was at the beginning. You now will observe how this condition describes how it will all conclude.

God created **heaven** and **earth** (Genesis 1:1). This tends to be perceived as the beginning. However, before God created these massive material systems of galaxies, there was only God – and nothing else. God truly was “**all and in all.**” Everything that was, is, or will be, was and is in God. David knew how precious God’s “**thoughts**” or “**logos**” were concerning humanity and how great was the sum of them (Psalm 139:17). David was thinking in terms of totality. In the context of comparing God’s **thoughts** with all of these created material systems, where do you think you, yourself stand? The answer is, in God’s **thoughts** you are so precious that you are right at the sum – or the top of God’s **thoughts**. This is what *The Book of Hebrews* conveys about God’s **mind** – and His perspective about you.

Ephesians 1:5 reveals that God predestinated or foreknew all the wonderful things about **the truth** of **everyone** becoming God’s

Sons. God's **thoughts** – “logos” – are so wonderful. These “**thoughts**” cannot be numbered (Psalm 40:5). God's **thoughts** come to pass by means of The Sacrifice of His Son, Jesus (Verses 6-8). What a **sacrifice** this great King of The Universe has made. No one understands how loving and good to mankind He really is.

Since God aborts no one and He clearly **saves** everyone – then all will be **saved**. Everything created, including the angels and all humanity, was actually contained within God's “**thoughts**” or “logos.” Everyone and everything comes from God by **the power** of God's Holy Spirit which is His “**glory**” or “**total goodness**.” God is “**all and in all**.” Everything comes from Him. The Alpha and The Omega, “the beginning” and “the ending,” all come from God Almighty, through His Son, Jesus.

Christ Created All Things

In the order of **the resurrection**, Jesus was **the first** to be raised from the dead. Paul said that all things were created by Christ (Ephesians 3:9). How was this? In John 1:14, the “**word**” or “**logos**” – God's “thoughts” was made flesh and dwelt on this earth (John 1:14). How?

Beholding His “**glory**” which was also God's “glory” was contained within the realm of “the only begotten” of The Father; John reveals Christ as The One who became **The Word** of God – “**logos**” by being **begotten** in God's “**glory**” (John 2 explains this in detail). Since Christ, at His physical birth, became “**the logos**” or God's “**word**” and God's “**word**” created everything – Christ, therefore, created everything. How simple.

In the Greek language, “**the word**” which was begotten of God's

“**glory**” is “monogenes.” It means the “beginning one” – or “the first one to be begotten in God’s **glory**.” Before Christ was human, He was predestined or foreknown in God’s **thoughts** – “logos” by **the power of God’s Holy Spirit**, which is God’s “**glory**.” The Greek word for “only begotten” is “monogenes” and the English word “genesis” or “the beginning” is derived from it. The scientific word for “genes” has been derived from this same root word.

Just as your genes come from your father, so were God’s genes in Jesus. The genes come from His Father by **the power** of God’s Holy Spirit. You began by coming from your father’s genes, just as Christ’s genes came from His Father. How simple is this perspective. In God’s “**glory**” which is all of God’s goodness or riches, Christ was **The Firstborn**.

From God’s **thoughts** or God’s “**glory**” The Firstborn known as The Christ, **created all things**. This was done by means of God working through Him. So, Christ was with God (in His **thoughts** and through His **power**) before God created anything else through His Son. And, since Christ at His **physical birth** became God’s “**word**” (**logos**) God’s “**word**” created everything. Jesus, therefore, created all things. Christ was the very “**word**” of God.

From the state of being in Christ, The Bride, The Two Witnesses (Israel and Judah), The Guests and then, finally, “**the babes**” in Christ (who repent in The Lake of Fire) – these are all predestined to be within God’s **kingdom**. You need to recognize that **God will definitely save all the individuals who have ever lived**. The question remaining is, “How do those who are thrown into The Lake of Fire **come to a state of repentance**?” This is absolutely essential for you to know so that Universal Salvation will take place. After all, this is what *The Scriptures* teach. Therefore,

you must ask, “How does Christ decide who goes into **the fire**?” These are questions that cause one to wonder what it is that brings these people **to repentance**. And, what happens to them in The Kingdom of God? That situation needs to be addressed in order to facilitate **a full Christian understanding** of these vital topics.

Who Goes Into Hell?

In *The Bible*, there are three types of “hell.” The three Greek words for “hell” are: “hades,” “tartaroo” and “Gehenna.” The Greek meaning for each is **different**. “Hell” in the Greek is “hades” and in the Hebrew it is “sheol.” **The first meaning** of “hell” is “the grave.” Farmers of old were accustomed to burying their potatoes in “hell” for the winter. Obviously, they mean “in the ground” and not “in a burning subterranean cavern.” But this example illustrates a fairly recent understanding of what is meant by the term “hell.” **The second meaning** for “hell” is “tartaroo” – which is a “place of restraint for Satan and his demons.” This is when these nefarious ones are placed in “tartaroo” for The Millennium. This is the time period when Satan is no longer permitted to deceive the nations. This will be after Christ **returns** to rule the earth. **The third name** for “hell” is “gehenna” which is “a burning garbage dump.” It is located just outside The City of Jerusalem in The Valley of Gehenna (called “hell”). This is where the city burned its refuse. In **biblical times**, the bodies of the worst criminals were merely thrown onto the garbage heap in Gehenna to allow decomposition. When Christ **returns**, this place is where the beast and false prophet are cast at the start of The Millennium. However, The Lake of Fire is different.

Lake Of Fire

Isaiah 30:33 prophesies that in “Tophet – The Refuse Dump” or

Gehenna, history shows Judah, also, **offered their young babies as human sacrifices**. At that time, there was the idea that God would breathe upon this site and ignite The Lake of Fire. After all, God is a **consuming fire** and the entire earth and **heaven** will eventually be consumed. So, their superstition was logical in that sense. All of these things point to the time when The Lake of Fire will be ignited as a physical place on this earth for fulfilling this **purpose**. This will be the time when God descends from **heaven** on The Last Great Day and all that is corruptible in **heaven** and **earth** will be burned (II Peter 3:7).

The Devil

Who is thrown into The Lake of Fire and tormented? First, Satan, the devil is thrown into this Lake of Fire. He will be tormented day and night unto the ages of the ages (Revelation 20:10). At the time of The White Throne Judgment, God will separate **the sheep** from **the goats**. Those who are **the sheep** will inherit God's **kingdom**. Those who are **the goats** have another destiny awaiting them. In Revelation 21:8:

But the fearful [those who wouldn't follow Christ], and unbelieving [atheists and agnostics], and the abominable, and murders, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone [Divine Fire – Isaiah 30:33]: which is the second death (Revelation 21:8).

There is one more group to be addressed. These are the ones who are considered to be unbelievers. Jesus warned in Luke 12:46-49 that those who are not **growing spiritually** until Christ **returns**, will be regarded on Judgment Day as any other unbeliever (Verse

46). So those who are not continually “FAITHFULLY GROWING SPIRITUALLY” until Jesus **returns**, will be evaluated as not believing God or His Son. They will be just as “atheists.”

What happens to these “**weak Christians?**” Christ will appoint them to the same penalty as **unbelievers** (Verse 46). How clear and simple this is. They will, also, be thrown into The Lake of Fire (Revelations 21:8). Those thrown into this Fire will be beaten with stripes, just as Christ had received. **The stripes**, in man, depict the penalty for disobedience. Consequently, Christ’s stripes heal all Christians. In short, Christ went into **the fire** for you.

Purpose For Stripes

How long will those individuals who are thrown into **the fire** remain there? First of all, there is no identifiable 100-year period for those who didn’t know Christianity at this time. Jesus said:

And that servant, which knew his lord’s will, and prepared not himself, neither did according to his will, shall be beaten with many stripes (Luke 12:47).

Those who knew better will be placed into The Lake of Fire for a very long time. Now examine the following contrasting instruction:

But he that knew not, and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes. For unto whomsoever much is given, of him shall be much required: and to whom men have committed much, of him they will ask the more (Luke 12: 48).

Babies who died at birth must now be considered, also. Take into account those who were agnostics or atheists. Do not overlook **those who never heard of God, or Christ**. All these individuals would still receive stripes – BUT ONLY A FEW.

There is no 100-year period. There are those individuals, today, who believe the notion that the 100 years of **life** prophesied in Isaiah 65 is really The Last Day of Judgment – which in reality refers to The Millennium. That is not the case. The stripes are for The Christians who **refused to grow** – and who get the same punishment as the unbelievers or the atheists, etc (Verse 46). So disregard the 100-year period as having any application in this sense. Unbelievers go into The Lake of Fire. Therefore, the stripes are **the amount of time these people remain in torment in The Lake of Fire**. So it could be said that, “**Stripes equals the amount of time served**” or “penalty paid.” What could be a better slogan for this occasion?

Then consider that Jesus plainly stated how the **stripes** were to apply to those individuals who are placed into The Lake of Fire (Luke 12:49), “**I am come to send fire on the earth; and what will I if it be already kindled?**” These are fearful words. Therefore, you should ask, “How long does one remain in The Lake of Fire?”

Agree With Your Adversary

Jesus said, “**Agree with thine adversary quickly, whiles thou art in the way with him; lest at any time the adversary deliver thee to the judge...**” (Matthew 5:25). Once you are placed on trial and set to be judged – it is, then, too late. Realize that if you are found guilty, then you will not be released from prison until you have paid the uttermost farthing. In the Greek language,

“uttermost” implies “The White Throne Judgment” or “The Last Day.”

Christ is telling each individual to **repent**. Christ wants you to “make amends now.” You must settle out of court. This is the only way to settle your debt of sins and be forgiven. Jesus claimed that if your eye offends you, then pluck it out (Matthew 5:29). It is better for you to lose your eye than for your entire body (soma) to be thrown into hell – Gehenna. Finally, Jesus warns that your hand should stop its action or else your whole body will go into hell (Matthew 5:30). This implies what you do by human effort. The sooner a person repents or puts the carnal mind or heart to death, the sooner the **torment of the fire will end**.

What Is The Torment?

The True Gospel “teachings” will be tested in **the fire**. It will not burn (I Corinthians 3). False teaching is compared to the wood, hay and stubble. Since your bodies (soma) and flesh (sarx) cause the human tendency which is weakness to sin, you, too, will burn very rapidly – just as the wood, hay or stubble. However, **your body does not burn forever** in The Lake of Fire. In fact, your body will burn up – to become ashes “under the feet” VERY QUICKLY. Notice what The Prophet Malachi said:

¹All that do wickedly, shall be stubble: and the day that cometh shall burn them up, saith the Lord of hosts....³ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the Lord of hosts (Malachi 4:1-3).

Daniel 3:24-25 is the story about Shadrach, Meshach and Abed-

nego who were thrown into the fiery furnace of Nebuchadnezzar. Yet, you have learned that nothing actually burned. Their lives were spared. Why was this? It was because they did not need to repent of any false teachings. They had complete **faith** and **trust** in God (Daniel 3:16-17). They were completely tested in **the fire** and were found to be like refined gold. So nothing burned. They had complete **faith** in their Father.

When those who are thrown into The Lake of Fire become like refined gold or (completely **repentant**) and their carnal hearts die along with their bodies and flesh – then they are changed “**in a twinkling of an eye**” at **the time of the resurrection**. They have passed “the great gulf” – death – and will be **given new spirit bodies** – just as new-born babes in Christ. What causes “the stripes” which are compared to “torment?” There are three words in the Greek language for “torment,” each has a different meaning:

- 1 **#2558 “kakoucheo.”** This word means “to suffer ill” or “to be mistreated.” This does not describe the torment in The Lake of Fire because those who are thrown into it – actually deserve it.
- 2 **#3600 “odunao.”** Implies “to cause pain” or “suffer.” This is not torment in The Lake of Fire but most believe this is what torment in The Lake of Fire or “hell” is like. Soon, you will read about the identity of the real torment in The Lake of Fire.
- 3 **#931 “basanos.”** This word defines “the torment received in The Lake of Fire” or “hell.” This word means a “touchstone” which is “**a black siliceous stone used to test or purify.**” When applied to

gold or silver, it is the color of the streak produced, by rubbing it with either metal. Hence, the word “torment” would apply here because of this strong rubbing force. In other words, the unrepentant are finally forced to tell **the truth** or **repent** or have a change of mind.

This Fire Is Not To Destroy

The torture in The Lake of Fire is not to destroy but to educate or discipline wayward individuals to the point of **repentance**. It could be compared to the parent who spansks the child – until that child who lied finally admits **the truth**. Paul clearly states **the purpose** for The Lake of Fire in Hebrews. Paul declares:

For they [your human fathers] verily for a few days chastened us after their own pleasure; but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of His holiness (Hebrews 12:10).

God determines that the wicked will be thrown into The Lake of Fire or hell for their own good. This will bring them to the point of becoming Holy – to be as God is Holy. After they repent, they will become the newborn babes in Christ in God’s “**kingdom**.” All this applies to **the third harvest**, which is a **spiritual resurrection**. This is because the body (soma) the flesh (sarx) and the carnal heart – pneuma – have died. Nothing remains except God who will be **spiritually resurrecting** them as **spiritual babes in Christ**.

Lazarus And The Rich Man

The story about Lazarus and the rich man is greatly misunder-

stood. It is found in Luke 16. Lazarus was the poor man who was in Abraham's bosom. But who is the rich man who is burning in hell? Most people misread the account because some think the word "hell" in Luke 16:23 is "The Lake of Fire" or "Gehenna" – "hell." Not so! The word "hell" in this verse is "hades" or "the grave."

In this case, the rich man is just being resurrected from the grave (**second resurrection**). But, notice, as he is looking up, he feels the burning heat from God's **return** to the earth as it burns. This account reveals the rich man's **repentance**. But he must still remain in The Lake of Fire until he pays the last farthing – and nothing is left of his carnal heart. This occurs until only **truth** or (**full repentance**) remains. The rich man will become as **refined gold**.

Once the rich man receives his "full stripes" which he deserves, he passes the "great gulf" and is **spiritually resurrected** from corruptible to **incorruptible** (I Corinthians 15:50-54). Amazingly, this is what Jesus said must happen to the rich man who kept all of God's **commandments in the letter** – but had a "wrongly motivated heart." Jesus said that a rich man can hardly enter into God's "**kingdom**." It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to get into God's **kingdom**. Read Matthew 19:23-26 carefully. Christ answered by saying, "**With men this is impossible; but with God all things are possible**" (Matthew 19:26). There it is. This is **absolute biblical proof**. This rich man who kept "**the legal works**" of The Commandments but not in his heart, is **saved** by being thrown into The Lake of Fire. This is God's way of **saving the rich man**. That is **the real biblical lesson** of Lazarus and the rich man.

There is another **biblical** account of Christians who must be

thrown into The Lake of Fire. Christ's warning to the **Christians who are not growing spiritually**, is how they receive the same penalty as the unbelievers or atheists – which is The Lake of Fire – the many stripes written in Luke 12. Jesus warns one of His Christian Churches that they need to go into The Lake of Fire in order to become zealous growing Christians. Revelation 3:15-20 relates to one of **the seven churches**, which are, indeed, of Christ, but they **were lukewarm and not really growing spiritually**.

The Laodicean Church

This section of text deals with those individuals in Christ's **body** or **church** who were in The City of Laodicea. What was their problem? **“I know thy works, that thou art neither cold nor hot...”** (Verse 15). He preferred them to be either cold or hot. If they were cold, then it is like an atheist or agnostic. They do not need to receive many stripes in “hell” or Gehenna. Or, if they were very zealous, they would not go into hell at all.

Why are they lukewarm? It is because they didn't think they needed to grow in new **truth** any longer. This is apparent because they believed they already had **the truth**. Once they believe they already possess all **the truth**, they are automatically placed in serious trouble. Paul plainly states that humans can only know **in part**. There is not one person, group or denomination who has all **the truth** – but only God and Christ have **the whole truth** (I Corinthians 13:9-10).

The Ten Talents

The parable of the ten talents in Matthew 25:14-30 is about the individual who buried his one talent. This was because he was afraid to keep growing into **new truth** as he thought he already

had all the truth he needed or was afraid to give up what he already thought. He feared God and knew he was a **hard man**. But God removed even that truth or (one talent). He became an unbeliever in hell. Therefore, he went into The Lake of Fire. Please read through this entire account. **Christians grow in degrees** – from The Letter of The Law to The Spirit of The Law and beyond. They continue to grow – up to the state to where they will have two, five and even ten talents. This is why The Laodicean Church was instructed in the following by Christ:

I counsel thee to buy of me gold tried in the fire, that thou mayest be rich; and white raiment, that thou mayest be clothed, and that the shame [fear to grow] of thy nakedness do not appear; and anoint thine eyes [see the real “truth”] with eyesalve; that thou mayest see (Revelation 3:18).

The message continues with these words, “**As many as I [Christ] love [the rich man kept The Letter of The Law], I rebuke and chasten [stripes in hell]: be zealous therefore, and repent**” (Verse 19).

Jesus, Himself, states that you will go into hell, the (fire) and in that process, you must **repent** to be **saved**. How much clearer can this be? So, **the purpose** of The Lake of Fire is to bring people to **repentance** and then to finally **save** them. In this context, you must ask, “What is it that burns the longest to become refined gold” (Verse 19)?

Fallen Spirits

In Matthew 8:28-33, read the account about Christ crossing The Sea of Galilee and He came across a man possessed with many

demons. The demons told Jesus that they knew He was The Son of God. But they, also, wanted to know why He came before their designated “time of judgment” or “their torment” – “basanos.”

These were demons operating from within Satan’s dominion. They knew that they would be thrown into The Lake of Fire and tormented. But they wanted to know why Jesus had come **so early**. It’s ironic even the demons knew and understood the time sequence while Christians – then, and now, still **do not**.

As a consequence, it is important in this context to realize that Satan and his demons are **spirits** (pneuma.) In this state, they cannot die. But their minds can be changed – just like their hearts can be changed. It will not be impossible. It’s in God’s **plan**.

Do you think that they are so strong-willed in their minds that **the stronger will** of God cannot counteract their **individual selfish will**? Carefully consider that question. In short, whose “**will**” is stronger –that of the demons or that of God? If you say God’s “**will**” is stronger, then you are virtually admitting that God’s “**will**” can bring Satan’s “will” **to heel**. So it is certain:

At the name of Jesus every knee should bow, of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth” (Philippians 2:10).

Will Satan and his demons be brought to this point of willing submission? Will they come to bow their knees (Verse 10) and confess with their tongues (Verse 11)? It certainly looks that way – if you believe these texts are an accurate report of what is going to take place on behalf of God’s “**will**” being stronger than any other “**will**” in the universe, which includes Satan. It is also important for you to recognize that the word for “torment” here is “basanos” – which

means “to refine to gold.” It could also be implied **to the process** when an individual comes to see “**the truth**” or “**repents.**”

What Burns?

What burns the longest – the body, soul or **spirit**? Paul desired for **the church** at Thessalonica to be fully preserved. Paul said:

The very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ (I Thessalonians 5:23).

It is not the body or the flesh that needs to be spared. The body is only an “outer covering” or “a garment.” Peter likened it to a “**tabernacle**” (II Peter 1:13). You need to be “clothed upon,” from “above” or from “heaven” (II Corinthians 5:2-4). These texts deal with this teaching.

First of all, the body and flesh do not make you sin. It is the mind that operates from within the body of flesh. Secondly, it is something greater that needs to be burned in the fire to be purified. Is it the soul, **spirit** or what? It is **not** the body. That is only the wrapper of something more vital – and more subject to sin. This is something that is motivated by desire. Consider the great sin of Eve in The Garden. It was her desire that led her to commit that first sin.

Now for the crux. It is your “**spirit**” or carnal heart which needs the most burning in order to remove “the dross” (Matthew 15:18-20). This represents **the fires of purification**. This is the death appointed, once, for all to die. It is **the spirit** or heart and mind that must die or change. That is why everyone must **repent** to be

saved. Many people tend to say, “Well, he was just born that way.” They may also charge that “it’s in your genes.” This may be true to a point, but with your individual “**mind**,” you can always make a choice about whether to follow the weakness of your flesh or not. That is what REPENTANCE is all about. In The Lake of Fire, the body and the flesh are as wood, hay and stubble. They will burn up quickly. The pain of the body lasts only a very short time. Then, the body becomes as ashes under someone’s feet. The body and flesh disappear quite quickly. Consider the rich man who was resurrected from hades or the grave. He quickly REPENTED and did not need to receive too many stripes.

The Very Wicked

Now, consider **the very wicked.** The extremely wicked ones will have the judgment quickly when their bodies burn. But it goes beyond that. Their individual consciousness must remain in **the fire** or torment until “**the spirit**” (pneuma) – is changed. This is somewhat comparable to **the judgment** placed upon the demons.

In other words, the extremely wicked will have already **repented** and their **minds** will be pure. All that remains will be like fine gold that lasts forever. Now, a new body “**a spiritual body**” is given to them (I Corinthians 15). This, also, means that “death” is “**SWALLOWED UP IN VICTORY.**” These extreme, wicked people must become like little children “**babes in Christ.**” Then, Christ will defeat all his enemies, along with **death**, itself. Afterward, Christ gives “**the kingdom**” over to God, so that God may be all and in all, just as God was, in the beginning before He produced His **creation.**

Since God has reproduced Himself from all that God was, is and will be, you will now see **the end result.** It will be God’s entire

creation that includes everything in **heaven**, in **earth** and even beneath the earth. All of this will be in **the new heaven** and **the new earth**. Furthermore, everything will be completely “**at rest**” (God’s Sabbath **rest**). A “sabbatismos” not a “sabbaton.” It will be **an eternal rest**, not just **one day**. In Revelation 21:4, God wipes away all tears, sorrow, pain and death. Then, The Father, The Son (Groom), The Bride (**chosen**), The Witnesses (Israel and Judah), The Guests (**saved nations**) and “**the new babes in Christ**” – are all members of The Kingdom of God. In other words, ALL HAVE BEEN SAVED. One exception remains. It concerns the babes in Christ. The following instructions are in *The Book of Revelation*:

Blessed are they that do his commandments, that they may have right to the tree of life, and may enter in through the gates [Israel] into the City (Revelation 22:14).

Only The Bride – Israel, (the **gates** – **witness**) and The Guests or (**saved nations**) can proceed into The New Jerusalem. This is where God, The Father and His Son become “**the temple**” within **the city** (Revelation 21:3, 22).

The excluded ones without the city are the wicked who were sent into The Lake of Fire. Now, these wicked ones have become “the new babes” in Christ. They are the children of Christ and His Bride, The Mother of **everyone**. Since they are teachable now, they will continue to grow in God’s “**glory**” or “**goodness**.”

The New Childbirth

The new childbirth is found in Galatians 4, where New Jerusalem, which is mankind’s Mother, breaks out into a massive childbirth.

This birthing period concerns all of those individuals who did not receive **salvation** by means of **redemption**. But, they will receive their Jubilee **release** when they pay off their debt obligation in The Lake of Fire. This will be down to “**the last farthing**.”

Remember, in Matthew 22 there are those at The Wedding Feast who will be **the few**, “**For many are called [to The Feast], but few are chosen [saved]**” (Matthew 22:14). Only those who are written in *The Lamb's Book of Life* (or *Marriage Registry*) will be allowed to enter **the city** (The Wedding Feast).

Those who are excluded and outside the city, the billions and billions of them, are **the babes in Christ** who must **spiritually** mature, so, they too, can have God's Ten Commandments written in their hearts.

All this must take place before they can enter New Jerusalem and become a part of The Wedding Feast. By the way, it is important to notice that The Wedding Feast will **never end**. Talk about one long party! **God's Kingdom of Rest will last forever**. Eternally, they will have access to The Tree of Life.

Remember, only Adam and Eve were in The Garden of Eden. Cain and Abel, their children, never were in **the garden** but only in The Land of Eden or “**pleasantness**” which is God's **kingdom**. The Tree of Life was cut off to them just as it will be for **the babes in Christ** in New Jerusalem. Now, consider what must happen to these children of Christ and His Bride before they can enter **the city** in order to partake of The Tree of Life.

Final Destiny

Revelation 22:1-2 reveals that **a great river** from God's **throne**

goes throughout **the new earth**. Furthermore, **the leaves** from The Tree of Life pour out for the healing of the nations. Remember, how **the saved ones** and these babes keep growing **spiritually**. **The river** represents God's Holy Spirit (John 7:37-39). Therefore, the babes must **spiritually** mature to the full stature of Christ and their Father, God:

“And the Spirit and the bride [Mother] say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst [babes-guests] come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely” (Revelation 22:17).

The situation is that it is not The Father or Christ who is doing the calling. But now, it is only The Bride's job (Mother) and The Holy Spirit's job to see they are **spiritually** nourished or nursing as new babes in Christ.

All will be **saved** and continue to grow in God's **kingdom** with all of your Father's riches forever. It never stops. In Verse 21, John was The Last Apostle alive to give The Words of Christ, about His **true return**. John ended his discourse with the words, **“The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ be with you all [So God, The Father can truly be “all and in all”]. A-men!”** So be it.

CHAPTER 22

SATAN SHALL BRUISE HIS HEEL

God removed Satan from his high estate in God's "kingdom" when he deceived Eve. It was Eve who convinced Adam to sin and both ate the forbidden fruit. Satan truly was God's adversary from the beginning of "the earthly plan." So, God did limit Satan's freedom. This evil genius was now condemned to become an enemy of Adam and Eve's children throughout all the future ages. Can you imagine such a thing? This is a profound beginning to the Genesis story.

How was Satan going to defeat "the promised seed" Jesus Christ? Just look at what the early portion of *The Book of Genesis* tells you:

I will put enmity between thee [the serpent] and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel (Genesis 3:15).

The wound to **the head** would be much greater than the wound to **the heel**. Jesus was symbolically wounded in the heel but "**re-stored to life**," whereas the devil/serpent was wounded in the head which is much more serious.

Paul commented on this by saying, "The serpent's poison is destroyed. He no longer deceives anyone."

The God of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly (Romans 16:20).

In essence, God made it known to Satan, “From this point on, you are a snake. You are subtle and devious. Deep within yourself, you do not have any standards of quality. You look to externals.” Picture God thinking, “You may appear as a **cherub of mine**, but in reality you are only a snake. You will be deceptive, secretive, cunning, even captivating, and what’s more, you are poisonous.” All those possibilities and more are contained within Satan’s “**grand design**.” You must realize that everything contained **within Satan’s head** is deadly. You could even say that, “He is filled with poison.” This affects everything he plans, says and does. No wonder the “bruise” is to the head. This is similar in wording to the beast where, “...**one of his heads as it were wounded to death**...” (Revelation 13:3). Of course, the devil or dragon is the power behind this nefarious creature (Revelation 13:2).

Satan is the god of the dead – just as you read, “...**him that had the power of death, that is, the devil**” (Hebrews 2:14). Satan, The Devil only causes death. He is virtually “The Lord of The Dead.” Satan is obviously the enemy of all humanity. This is readily apparent from the initial account given in Genesis 3:14-15.

Satan’s System

Since Satan is the enemy of all humanity, how could he control Adam and Eve’s progeny? If Satan could not use his power to directly kill their children (God, of course, limited **his authority**), then he only had deceptive and cunning methods to use. He did this by means of appearing as **God’s servant**. But it was all a lie.

Satan changes his appearance into a seemingly good individual. Notice:

**Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light
(II Corinthians 11:14).**

Satan appears to be something he is not. He is the greatest of all deceivers (Revelation 12:9). He is deeply involved with misrepresentation. What you see is **not** what you get. You don't want to see what you will get – with Satan. **Misrepresentation** is a most vital part of Satan's ploy to deceive mankind. Consequently, humans have traded gold for dross, as Adam and Eve did.

Where does the problem lie? It was with the one who received the bruised head. He would be the ultimate offender, who was chastised by The Most High God (Genesis 3:15). But there is another aspect. This concerns the one who received "the bruised heel" (Genesis 3:15). This symbolizes the death of Messiah.

This is the underlying basis for the prophesied battle between Christ and the anti-Christ. In short, it was Satan's plan to first pick off Adam and Eve's children as the primary casualties because they were The Promised Seed. They are the ones who would turn from righteousness to obey Satan instead of God. The entire basis was trickery.

Satan's Deception

When the first male children – Cain and Abel, were born to Adam and Eve, obviously Satan knew Cain was the firstborn. The firstborn male – as Christ – was designated as the one to make intercession on behalf of the family. Cain was the elder. So Cain was destined to become the one responsible for interceding for the

entire family. In *The Book of Hebrews*, Paul said:

For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts [Greek: “offerings”] and sacrifices for sins (Hebrews 5:1).

This is exactly what Cain and Abel did. They both made an offering (Hebrew, “gift”) to God. From other texts, you find The High Priest only could perform this rite. Satan knew God’s **plan**. So this worked well because Cain had a jealous and deceptive heart. As the firstborn, he was especially jealous of Abel, the second-born. Cain bitterly resented Abel because God accepted Abel’s **sacrifice** – knowing Abel had a right heart (Genesis 4:1-6). God knows everyone’s heart. God told Cain that he had a carnal heart with his desire to sin. God wanted Cain to master himself by repenting. Therefore, in God’s conversation with Cain, God explained that if he had **repented**, he would have been accepted.

Abel’s offering or gift was accepted. This was a type for The Promised Seed, The Messiah. Abel was to be The First High Priest of Melchizedek who would offer **gifts** for his lineage. This lineage would also bare the promised future Savior. In Hebrews 5:10, The High Priest is called or accepted by God, along with the offering made after The Order of Melchizedek. The Greek word for “order” carries the meaning of “succession.” But Melchizedek has no beginning or ending. The term Melchizedek comes from two Hebrew words “melek” refers to “king” and “tesdeq” refers “to prosperity” and “wealth.”

Office Of Melchizedek

Melchizedek is **not a person**. Melchizedek is an **office**. It de-

notes the elder person who is responsible for the lineage of “**the promised seed**” to come. This “**promised seed**” will **restore** all things. The High Priest offers **sacrificial gifts** that point to the fact that the genealogy comes through The High Priest “lineage.” Who was the first elder? It was Abel. He was accepted by God as The First Elder who originated from Adam and Eve (Hebrews 11:2, 4).

Under Moses, Aaron was **the firstborn** and High Priest who offered **gifts** and **sacrifices** for himself and Israel, only. Being three years older than Moses, he served in the capacity of “the firstborn.” This example was to become a **witness** of The Messiah – or “**the seed**” to come. After Jesus was **sacrificed** for the sins of the world, He now sits in The Order of The Office of Melchizedek. As High Priest, Christ makes intercession for all the future sins of Christians who **will repent**.

Satan stopped the seed of Cain as firstborn – when Abel was murdered. Therefore, Satan thought he had won the battle – with no seed available for the future (Genesis 4:9-10). But he was wrong. Seth was born as a replacement. Consequently, Eve said:

For God, said she, hath appointed me [reserved] another seed instead of Abel, whom Cain slew (Genesis 4:25).

As a result of these actions, “**the promised seed**” could come through Seth. This meant that Seth would become High Priest after the succession or Order of Melchizedek. In this capacity, he would make offerings and **sacrifices** that would point toward The Messiah (Genesis 4:26). Through Seth, Enos who was his firstborn son and descendant called upon The Name of God. This was the lineage of the original Church of God – or the “**called-out ones**.”

Satan Deceives Cain's Genealogy

When Cain went to the land of Nod, he wandered without God and on his own built a pagan society. This was based upon what God had told him in Eden. He thought that he, as firstborn, was to be The High Priest from whom **the promised seed** should come. God even marked him so no one would kill him (Genesis 4:15). Lamech, his great-great grandson, knew what Cain had said. So, when Lamech killed two people, he stated he should be forgiven “seventy-times sevenfold” (Genesis 4:24) – and he could still be “**the promised seed.**”

Under Cain's genealogy, the entire **pagan priesthood** was instituted. They had a reprobate mind and God could not be with them as they invented their own way of doing things. They knew “**the promised seed**” – Christ – would be **sacrificed**. So, on their own, **they instituted human sacrifice**. They had learned from Cain that they had to be repentant as little children. So, instead of repenting, they offered little children to be burned – just as in The Lake of Fire. Satan always twists **the truth**. The result was that a world of many human religious systems would spring up. These systems were replete with **kings** and **priests**. This phenomena spread throughout the entire known world. By this means only a partial knowledge of **the truth** was passed on by Cain to his future generations. That is why today's world has been discovering its heritage and history – which has many beliefs and systems for pleasing their own personal gods.

Most early studies in paleontology show how The Sumarians, Aztecs, Incas, Hindus and others – all have similar beliefs in common. This is a religious basket of confusion – otherwise known as **Babylon**. God's High Priest – Seth, made **sacrifices** for others. Following this time period, Noah, Abraham and others knew **the**

truth of God. This is because they called upon God – when they were in the capacity of God’s **church** or **called-out ones**. Both Cain’s genealogy and Seth’s progeny multiplied until the sons of God – from Seth – saw the daughters of men – from Cain – intermingled and married them. Confusion or Babylon prevailed. Finally only one man, Noah, was perfect in his generations.

**Noah was a just man and perfect in his generations,
and Noah walked with God (Genesis 6:9).**

Therefore, only through Noah could the future Savior come. It looked like Satan was winning again. Or, at least, that is what he thought. Only Noah was left as “**the comforter**” for mankind.

Noah’s Children

After the flood, Noah and his family became “the fountainhead” for all the future children on this earth. Noah had three sons: Shem, Ham and Japheth. Just before Noah died, he blessed his children and foretold their future. He said Japheth’s descendants would become the most populated. Because Ham was sexually involved with Noah when he was intoxicated, his descendants were to become **servants of servants** (Genesis 9:24-26). Shem was destined to carry on the line of “**the promised seed**.”

Furthermore, God would be Shem’s God. This was most important. Shem was blessed and was the individual, called Melchizedek, who was The King of Peace and Prosperity. Through Shem, “**the promised seed**” would come. In the overall sense, all the basic three races came from Noah’s children and their wives (Genesis 9:19-29).

In this process, Satan thought he had won the contest by having

only one person, Noah, who was perfect in his generations. However, God determined Shem's line would continue to fulfill "**the promise**" of Genesis 3:15. This was The Royal Priesthood that would carry "**the torch of truth**" throughout the world. Once again, by deception, Satan mixed **the truth** of God with human reason or paganism. This succeeded in bringing down the human race. God's **plan** was to produce **the flood** to cleanse the earth of humanity's evil thoughts and actions. Later, as the earth began to be repopulated, the inhabitants were all of one language – consequently they built The Tower of Babel as their human effort to please or appease God (Genesis 11:1-9).

Ham's great grandchild, Nimrod, was a great hunter and started his own religious system against God (Genesis 10:7-9). Then God observed the tendency of humanity wanting to intermix with "**the promised seed**." This caused religious confusion once again by dividing the nations and giving them diverse languages. God's **plan** would not be thwarted by Satan so quickly. This was just before the right time for "**the promised seed**" to be born. Babylon or **the confusion** of God's "**truth**" was delayed. History from this point continued with pagans – those who were not with God. Finally came God's "**promised covenant of the seed**." This was the time that Mary gave birth to the infant Jesus.

Return Of Noachian Days

After Christ was crucified for every person's sins, Jesus, as The High Priest of The Order of Melchizedek, sits at the right hand of God, The Father. In this capacity, Christ makes intercession for you. Before His **resurrection**, Jesus gave a prophecy concerning His **second coming** as **King of Kings**. His **human birth** and **life** fulfilled the role of "**the promised seed**" as The High Priest, Melchizedek.

Christ's Apostles asked Jesus what would be the sign of His Second Coming (Matthew 24:3). A much-overlooked prophecy by Christ was His statement that when He would come **the second time**, the world would be like it was in Noah's day. That was a world in religious confusion or Babylon (Matthew 24:38-39). Much of the world believes that everything remains the same. They think that everything remains just as it was in the past. Peter said the same thing in II Peter 3:2-6. He said that just as the earth was flooded so will it be at the end. Only this time, it would be purged by **fire**. This is not a baptism but a purging.

Satan is doing exactly what he did in pre-flood times. The world is filled with diverse ideologies of religion. Even Christianity is split into thousands of differing groups. He allowed Babylon, which is the continual confusion of **the truth** of God. Since Jesus, "**the promised seed**," won the battle over Satan by using **the truth** of God's "**word**," Satan no longer has access to God. Now is Satan's time of wrath. He is bitterly angry because he knows his time is short. Now, he deceives the nations with vengeance knowing he will lose just as Cain lost. These are truly **the last days**.

Jesus **promises** that when He **returns**, the world will be exactly as in Noah's time. Every thought will be evil – completely contrary to God's "**word**." "**The promised seed**" has come to **restore** what was lost (Matthew 18:11). Jesus is fulfilling that **promise** to return humanity to **paradise** – which is God's **rest** (I Corinthians 15).

Satan, as God's adversary, is deceiving and manipulating humanity in every possible way. When did this great deception of Satan begin? The answer is in Matthew 4:1-4. It was right after Jesus had won the battle over Satan. Satan is depicted as a devouring

lion (I Peter 5:8). What is Satan's plan? It is simply the same as when he went against Jesus – by using God's "**word**."

Satan's Plan

Satan knows all about God's **plan**. He was there in the beginning to help fulfill God's **purpose** to have a "**family kingdom**." That is why Satan employs every method for producing children who are opposed to God's system. How does Satan mislead humanity? He does it by means of **human reason**. This is the same process as in *The Book of Judges* where it states, "...**every man did that which was right in his own eyes**" (Judges 21:25). Also, compare:

There is a way which seemeth right unto a man, but the end thereof are the ways of death (Proverbs 14:12).

In this context, Satan plays right into human desires – just as he did with Eve. Satan uses *The Scriptures* against you – just as he did with Eve and then Christ. Often a person may think that Satan intervenes in **life's circumstances**. No, he plays along with those who are unaware of this tactic.

First and foremost, Satan must thwart or confuse **The Word** of God by focusing upon human reason. That is why there are so many translations of God's "**word**," especially *The New Testament*. Why is this? It is because they comprise the very "**word**" of God and Christ.

Humans generally like to think Satan did it just as Eve said. No, Satan is a deceiver. He makes **the truth** seem to be **wrong** and then he makes sense of falsehoods according to each person's de-

sire. The focus is upon **the church of your choice**. No human group, denomination, etc has all **the truth**. The best any human can know is what God has revealed – and even that is only **in part** (I Corinthians 13:12).

Christ warned that **many** are **called** to His **church** and yet they can be deceived (Matthew 24:5 and Matthew 22:14). Satan makes **the very truth** of God’s “**word**” appear to be wrong and then gives a logical human explanation to make it believable. This is distortion. When did Satan start to deceive The Church of God? It was right after Jesus defeated him. Christ, just before His crucifixion, told Peter that Satan wanted to sift Peter as wheat, but Jesus prayed for him (Luke 22:31).

It isn’t the people of the world that Satan is worried about, but those who are becoming Sons of God. Satan is at **war** with Christianity (Revelation 12:17). Satan is fighting against Eve’s “**promised seed**.” Satan fights against God’s “**word**” because Jesus said, Christians are to live “**by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God**” (Matthew 4:4).

Fighting The Evil One

How are Christians able to fight against Satan? It is living by every “**word**” of God found in *The Holy Bible*. Christians cannot trust any man. Paul said that every man’s work will be tested – including Paul’s own work. Paul said that whether it was Peter, Apollos or Paul himself, their work would be tried – whether of gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay or stubble. Every man’s “**work**” will be tested. But how? It will be by **fire** (I Corinthians 3:3-15). What is a Christian’s defense? It is to be constantly studying *The Bible* as The Bereans, “to see if these things be so” (Acts 17:11).

Satan is deceiving the entire religious nations. Satan incorporates human ideas and human systems – which God's "**word**" never approved. As Paul said, although these actions seem to be good things to do in order to please God, Paul called it "**will worship.**"

These teachers would deny themselves while believing it would please God (Colossians 2:23). Before Jesus **returns**, religion will be mixed with Satan's system of Babylon, which is nothing but confusion (I Corinthians 14:33). There are hundreds, thousands, millions and billions of people who believe God accepts their human attempts to please Him. How wrong they are.

Carefully study the following chapters in this book, *God's Work*, so you can see how Satan started deceiving mankind by means of distorting **the truth** of God. This began right from the opening celebrations on The Day of Pentecost.

This was the time for the birth of The Church of God. Satan will continue to distort **the truth** until the very **return** of Jesus, The Christ. The entire world, unknowingly, will religiously follow Satan – all the while – believing they are following Christ.

CHAPTER 23

THE GREAT FALLING AWAY

Why was it necessary for *The New Testament Books* to become part of *The Bible*? *The Old Testament* prophecies told about The Messiah and God's "purpose" for Jesus Christ. Much of The Apostles' teachings and doctrines came from *The Old Testament*, which they constantly quoted. For twenty years, *The New Testament Church* relied on *The Old Testament* as being God's Word. Why was it necessary to add *The New Testament Books* to the established *Scriptures*? You will find the truth to be astounding!

Luke wrote his *Gospel* in the early fifties A.D., just as most of the other *Gospels* were written with the exception of *The Gospel of John*. *The Book of John* was written about forty years later (about 95 A.D.). This late date can be established on good authority. Luke said he wrote his *Gospel* to Theophilus, an important person at that time, being a fellow-Christian. Luke explained to Theophilus why he was writing his account of *The Gospel* declaring the following:

That thou mightest know the certainty of those things, wherein thou hast been instructed (Luke 1:4).

Luke explained that he had perfect understanding with everything that happened during Christ's human ministry (Luke 1:4). Luke

reaffirmed what Theophilus had been taught and that it was indeed **the absolute truth**. What was the problem? Theophilus and the other Christians were being told something which was different from **the truth** which originally had been taught. Some were twisting **the truth of the teachings** of The Apostles. This was occurring as early as 50 A.D. Who were these teachers and what was this new controversial doctrine being brought into “**the church?**” The fact is, **there were many false teachings being taught about Jesus Christ, The Savior.**

The Last Days

Of all *The Epistles* written, the first contained the general instructions given to The Thessalonians. *The Two Thessalonian Epistles* were written between 51 and 52 A.D. Why were they composed? Simply because some were teaching the notion that **the resurrection was past** and/or Christ was going to **return** at any moment. False brethren were creeping in and denying the teachings of **the true** Apostles. Paul had to write these letters to clarify the cause of the problem. Paul didn't want anything or anyone, to fool or confuse them concerning The Return of Christ. He stated that some instruction had come to them “as if” this information came directly from The Apostles (II Thessalonians 2:1-2). In this context, it is important to realize that first and foremost, before The Return of Christ, there must be **a great falling away from the truth of Christianity** (II Thessalonians 2:3).

There is another event tied directly to this. It concerns **the man of sin who must be revealed**. These are two very clear instructions given by Paul about what must happen before Jesus **returns**. The trouble with most people today – they do not understand when “**this great falling away**” actually occurred. It would be quite understandable for some to think “**the falling away**” doesn't take

place until just before The Return of Christ. But that is not the subject Paul is teaching. He is explaining something else to you. In II Thessalonians 2:7, Paul states how “**the mystery of iniquity**” was **already taking effect**. What is this “**mystery of iniquity**” (Sin)? It concerns **the man of sin** who **opposes** all that is of God – and how Christians are supposed to worship God (Verse 4). In other words, all of God’s **truth** which The Apostles had been teaching, was purposely altered and changed. In this atmosphere, **the truth** of Christ would slowly disappear. This would include the ideas circulating at that time that Jesus was not human – or did not even come as a human being in the flesh. This was **one of the major teachings of the anti-Christ movement**. Significant in all of this is that Paul said these “**false teachings**” were already being taught at the very time The Letter to The Thessalonians was being written. It is vital to realize that Paul had to write this Epistle in order to protect “**True Christians**” from being duped causing them to **start** to fall away. The implications are that “**The Great Falling Away**” had already begun. Paul had to write that critical Letter to The Thessalonians so Christians, at that time and, during this very time, would not be deceived or duped.

John’s Warning

The Apostle John wrote the same important warning as Paul did to The Thessalonians. Remember, there were two primary events that had to occur before Christ’s **return**:

1 A GREAT FALLING AWAY FROM THE TRUTH

and

2 THE MAN OF SIN or ANTI-CHRIST WOULD BE REVEALED.

John wrote his *Epistle* nearly forty years after this time period in about 90-95 A.D. But “**true Christians**” had already been affected and were falling away only 40 years after Jesus ascended into heaven. Why was this? John explains all this in I John 2:18-19. In his day – 95 A.D. – John states it was already **the last time**. In the Greek language, the “last time,” is the “**end-time**” and later it is applied to “The Return of Christ.” All that was needed was for **the man of sin** or **the anti-Christ** to be revealed. Then, Christ would come shortly after that, to defeat this enemy completely under Satan’s control. Until all of this occurs, **JESUS WILL NOT RETURN**. Paul gives one more condition before Christ’s **return**. In Romans 11:25, he describes how “**the end-time**” will not happen until the **fullness** of The Gentiles occurs. The fullness of The Gentiles refers to the time when God is finished calling all The Gentiles to **the truth**.

No one but God, The Father knows that time. This applies to everyone, including Jesus, Himself (Acts 1:6-7). The decision about when Jesus is to come again is completely within **the power of God, The Father**. It is amazing that anti-Christ's were already appearing and swaying True Christians in John’s day (Verse 18). John said these days were “the last days” or “the end-time” – why? Those days and these **days** were **the beginning of the last days** because Christians were falling away from **the truth** and the anti-Christ's were **already doing their deceiving** in John’s time. **ONLY TWO MORE EVENTS MUST TAKE PLACE FOR CHRIST TO RETURN**. They are as follows:

- 1 This “Man of Sin,” the anti-Christ, must be revealed.
- 2 All Gentiles who God intends to call to “**the church**” must understand **the truth**.

How long will this take?

When Christ Returns

Jesus cannot return until this “**man of sin**” is revealed or exposed and the end of time for calling The Gentiles is completed. Christ absolutely will not return **until these two events occur first**. Paul states how this Mystery of Iniquity was taking place in 50 A.D. This “**falling away from the truth**” will continue in Christianity until God allows this “**man of sin**” to be revealed – and the number of “**all called-out**” Gentiles will be complete.

Then, Christ will come and DESTROY this “**man of sin**” which concerns The Mystery of Iniquity (II Thessalonians 2:7-9). The great deception of Satan is to make Christians think this **falling away** happens just before Christ **returns**. **This is not so!** It happened much earlier. Very few realize this vital fact. These factors show how the **falling away from the truth** already started in approximately 50 A.D. It only increased momentum after that time. John declares how the anti-Christ had already started to appear in his time.

It is a mistake for Christian people to tie these end-time conditions with current events – and then assume this phenomenon occurs rapidly – or even within the same-time period. Consider the overall time perspective. Fully two thousand years have passed since those last days started and still Jesus has not returned. Why is this? It is because **the last days** began historically near the time of “the genesis” of *The New Testament Church*. Thousands of years would transpire until the last two conditions would take place:

- 1 “The Man of Sin” is **revealed**,

2 “The Completion of all Gentiles **who are to be called**” before Christ **returns**.

Jesus will **not return** until God, The Father decides that everything He **purposed** is done or completed. Then, Christ **will return**. Many have the notion that before Christ returns there must be “**a great falling away**.” Some Christians do not understand the basis for showing how the “**falling away**” actually occurred 40 years after Christ ascended and has continued to this very day. This is one of the greatest of Satan’s major deceptions – by lying to mankind. Do not be satisfied with some counterfeit form of **the truth**; search out **true Christianity** – The Real Truth of God.

Peter Knew Christ’s Return

The Great Falling Away started around 50 A.D. All The Apostles who were with Jesus, including Paul, were getting older. Some were already dead and James died in 62 A.D. Now the remaining Apostles recognized that their time to die was getting closer. Only The Apostle John was allowed to live longer than the rest – just as Christ foretold (John 21:23). The Apostles who were still alive at that time were aware how the evil forces of **the anti-Christ** were already diligently at work in “**the church**.” The major motivation of The Apostles was to keep **true** Christians obeying **the truth** as they had been taught (I Thessalonians 4:1, II Peter 1:10-15, I John 4:1 and Jude 3).

In fact, The Apostle Peter knew that The Return of Christ could be thousands of years away. Notice what Peter said in II Peter 3:1-2. He wrote this *Epistle* to stir up the minds of **true** Christians and to bring their remembrance to the instruction given by The Holy Prophets and The Apostles of Christ’s **day** (II Peter 3:1-2). Peter discussed the last days. He had already proved how *The New*

Testament Church was “in the last days” and that scoffers would be in **the church** walking after their own lusts. **The church** was used as a career or a salaried job for them. It was a nefarious business – to generate filthy lucre. These false prophets began to ask, “Where is this Jesus?” They felt Jesus wasn’t going to return soon, because everything was the same as when their forefathers were alive (II Peter 3:4-5). After explaining the events, which were to take place at The **Return** of Jesus Christ and **the new heaven** and **the new earth** would begin (II Peter 3:6-7), Peter makes an amazing statement:

⁸But, beloved, be not ignorant of this one thing, that one day is with the Lord as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day (II Peter 3:8).

But, Peter explains how these events could be a long time in the far future. This is The 21st Century, nearly 2,000 years later from the time when Peter stated around 60-66 A.D. that Christ’s **return** could be thousands of years away. Why? Peter explains that God is extremely patient and will not have anyone perish (Verse 9). God will not allow Jesus to return until all Gentiles are called to **the truth**. God will permit no one to perish even if it involves thousands of years for His Son to **return**. Peter definitely knew that Christ’s **return** was a long way off. What was important to Peter and the remaining Apostles, was for you and all **true** Christians to understand that this “**falling away**” had already begun in **the church** back in **The Apostles’ time**. No one should be deceived – especially **the truly repentant** and **spiritually growing Christians**.

Start Of The New Testament

Continuing with this theme, Peter acknowledged the need for *The*

New Testament becoming part of *The Bible*. In II Peter 3:14-18, Peter wanted **the true** Christians to know what was happening in **the church** and the newly emerging process of the “**falling away**.” He wanted Christians to be diligent in keeping **the true faith**. He hoped that they would be found to be without spot and blameless when Jesus returned. Peter didn't want The Christians to worry about **The Return of Christ**. In the overall sense, it is God's “**will**” to **save EVERYONE** (I Timothy 2:4). Peter explains that Paul, in his *Epistles*, was reporting the same thing – even though Paul's *Letters* were “hard” to be understood. Now listen to Peter's startling statement even though, “**As also in all his [Paul's] epistles, speaking in them of these things: in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they [his letters] do also the other scriptures unto their own destruction**” (II Peter 3:16).

Peter plainly explains how Paul's *Letters* should be considered on the same level as *The Old Testament*. This is **The Genesis** of *The New Testament*, becoming part of *The Bible*. Peter, Paul and John also, finalized *The New Testament* as part of God's “word” – *The Bible*.

Paul Also Knew

Paul knew he had finished the fight and was now ready to die (II Timothy 4:3,13). He warned Timothy of all the false teachers and how the time was near when Christians would fall away. So Timothy should always continue preaching **the truth**, just as Peter admonished in his own *Epistles*. Then Paul, in closing, makes a very unusual request. Paul told Timothy to make sure he brings the “**parchments**” (Verse 13).

In Greek, the word for “parchments” is “membrana” or “sheep-

skin” (Strong’s #3200). *Letters* or *Epistles* were written on these sheepskins or parchments. Just as Peter felt he was going to die, Paul, also, believed his time was near and wanted his “**letters**” to be included with Peter’s “**letters**.” Peter said that Paul’s *Epistles* were “*Scripture*.” In I Timothy 3:16, Paul states that all *Scripture* is inspired by God. So Paul’s, Peter’s, John’s and all the other writings are *Scriptures*, which were inspired by God. *The New Testament*, by God’s Holy Spirit inspiring his ministers, completed *THE FULL BIBLE – The Old and New Testaments*.

Why did The Apostles feel it was necessary to make *The New Testament* part of God’s “**word?**” Perhaps by not realizing God’s **plan** for *The New Testament*, they felt there was overwhelming evidence that **the church** was under attack by false prophets. This was actually the beginning of **the great falling away from the truth** that had begun in 50 A.D. The Apostles, being elderly and dying, wanted to assure future generations that **the truth** of Christianity would be available to **the churches** of their own day and **the churches** throughout the ages. Since Peter believed that Christ’s **return** could be thousands of years away, The Apostles wanted to guarantee that future Christians would have a very accurate source of **truth** as this “**falling away**” would continue until the very **Return of Christ**.

In short, this was in God’s “overall” **plan**. So, “**the falling away from the truth**” or “The Man of Sin” must be revealed. Besides, God must then finish calling all Gentiles to **the truth**. Until all these events take place, Christ will not return. Therefore, it was necessary to make *The New Testament* a part of **The Complete Bible** in order to keep **true** Christians in **the faith**. Then, all future Christians could be certain that God had given them a real source of **truth** – and not the human ideas, which many of “today’s” Christians follow, which are concepts based only on human rea-

soning and ideas. True Christians have *The Old and New Testaments* to know **the truth** and keep THE FAITH.

CHAPTER 24

WHY THE BOOK OF REVELATION

The Book of Revelation is that mysterious “book!” And does anyone really understand it? As the last book in *The Bible*, many ask if it is fact or fiction. This book is in *The Bible* for a specific reason. Every part of God’s Word is inspired by God (II Timothy 3:16). Therefore, *The Book of Revelation* is, indeed, inspired. As a consequence, it has a significant Purpose. This is why The Apostle John included it as a part of the totality of God’s “word.” You may ask, “Why was *The Book of Revelation* written?”

In The Beginning

The birth of *The New Testament church* started on The Day of Pentecost after Jesus went to sit on **the right hand** of God, The Father, as The High Priest and Savior. Three thousand people were baptized on that Day of Pentecost.

Not too long afterward, **the church** had five thousand members just counting the men (Acts 4:4). At this time all these individuals were Jews. The Gentiles didn’t come into **the church** until Peter opened the door to God’s “**kingdom**” to Cornelius, who was the first Gentile – a Roman centurion soldier. Persecution of any kind concerned Jesus, The Messiah. The resistance was by The Pharisees and Sadducees. In this atmosphere, The Apostles and other Jewish Christians went into **the temple** to worship God. Christi-

anity, at this point, was considered to be a part of the Jewish **faith**. In fact, they were looked upon as a Jewish sect.

Real trouble within **the church** started when God revealed how The Gentiles were to become a part of **the church**. After that, circumcision and the keeping of The Law became a big problem. Paul wrote the entire *Epistle of Galatians* to try and keep The Gentiles from following **the works of The Law**.

The First 20 Years

There had not been much “**falling away**” from **the church** during the first twenty years. Persecution was mainly from The Pharisees who believed in Christ but insisted that Gentiles should, also, be circumcised. The reason circumcision was so important, along with The Abrahamic Covenant, was because **the temple** was still there, and no one could enter **the temple** unless he was circumcised. Without acceptance in **the temple**, a sincere person could not keep The Law of Moses, especially The Holy Days. Therefore, circumcision created a serious problem for The Gentile Christians (Acts 15:1).

Seventeen years after Paul's conversion, the problem of circumcision and the keeping of God's Law by The Gentiles became a problem for **the church**. It became so important that a conference was held in Jerusalem with The Apostles and The Jerusalem Church. In Acts 15:5, The Pharisees, who believed in Jesus, insisted The Gentiles had to be circumcised and had to keep The Law of Moses. Eventually, after much discussion, they realized The Gentiles received God's Holy Spirit WITHOUT CIRCUMCISION AND WITHOUT KEEPING GOD'S LAW (Acts 15:24).

As long as **the temple** existed and “the shekinah” (God's “**glory**”)

was still present, The Jewish Christians obeyed The Works of The Law until **the temple** was destroyed in 70 A.D. This ended *The Old Covenant* when God's **presence** ended (Hebrews 8:13). Now **only** *The New Covenant* applied to all Christians, Jew and Gentile. There was no difference between the two. Church history brings you past 50 A.D. when the anti-Christ teachings started to cause a division in **the church**.

With the fall of **the temple** in 70 A.D. under Titus, all Jews were finally expelled from Jerusalem. The Apostles Paul and Peter and most of the other Apostles were dead. In their stead many false prophets entered The Christian Churches as Paul prophesied in Acts 20:29-31. Paul pleaded for them not to cause a split in **the churches**. In fact, after 70 A.D., **the falling away from "the church"** was so bad that Jude, Christ's other half brother, had to write an entire *Epistle* about it.

Jude's Warning

The Book of Jude is the name of **the book** which appears before *The Book of Revelation*. It was written just before the fall of **the temple** in 70 A.D. The Gnostics and Antinomians were effectively penetrating The True Churches of God. The Gnostics believed in the mystic system (The Babylonian Mysteries) in attempting to get **salvation**. The Antinomians believed **grace** meant you could sin all you wanted. Between these two influences, many were lured and fell away from *The True Gospel*.

Christians were warned to earnestly contend for **the faith** which was once delivered to them (Jude 3). Jude states men crept in and started to teach Christ was not Christ (Gnostics) and grace (Antinomians) allowed lasciviousness or sin (Verse 4). These two systems of anti-Christ penetrated **the church**. They were motivated

by four sinful acts:

- 1 **Homosexuality:** This was the reason Sodom and Gomorrah was a type of “**hell-fire**.”
- 2 **Having no respect for authority:** Constantly speaking evil of good people like The True Apostles (Jude 8).
- 3 **Desire to control “the church:” Making a business out of it. This was for filthy lucre’s sake.**
- 4 They were even **willing to resort to murder: To keep controlling “the churches”** (Read all of Jude).

The reality is **true** Christianity, after 70 A.D. was in serious trouble. Wolves crept into **the churches** to pry them away from **the truth** of Christ. As the original Apostles were dying, the attacks to control The Christian Churches increased; further denying God’s Apostles — and finally, Christ, Himself. By the end of the first century, most local Christian Churches no longer held to **the faith once delivered**. By 90 A.D. only John, as an original Apostle, was still living. It was up to John to finalize and complete *The New Testament* to contend for **the faith** originally delivered to **true** Christians. It was at this point John completed his *Gospel*, as well as his *Epistles*. Finally, *The Book of Revelation* was written as a warning about **the great falling away**.

In II John 7, The Apostle warned that many (not a few) deceivers would enter **the church**. These are all a type of anti-Christ. They denied that Jesus was ever human. The Apostle repeated that no joy was greater for Him than to know His Children still

walked in **the truth** (III John 4). Diotrephes was actually forbidding **true** Christians from attending **church** (Verse 9). It was a great problem and John was the only original Apostle left **to help the remaining faithful Christians keep God's truth, His Word.** *The Book of Revelation* was written as a direct prophecy to The Apostle John as a true account concerning **The Return of Jesus Christ.** There were those who were seriously falsifying how Jesus would return to establish God's **kingdom.** Christ revealed **the truth** to John, who, in vision, remained alive until he witnessed The Return of Christ on The Isle of Palmos. The false preachings by false preachers in The Christian Churches included: (1) Jesus didn't come in the flesh and was never human, (2) some said **the resurrection** was already past and God's "**kingdom**" would be established on the earth by **the church.**

To counter, Christ revealed **the truth** of the prophecy. *The Book of Revelation* relates His real **second return.** Even **the seven churches** mentioned in *The Book of Revelation* were **the churches** Christ regarded as His, and they had already corrupted themselves with false teachings. Only The Philadelphian Church was **true** to Christ.

Read Revelation 2 and 3 and see God's "**churches**" were already infested with **pagan beliefs** or **anti-Christ teachings.** *Revelation* was written as part of *The Bible* so **true** Christians would know **the truth of Christ's return.** Real Christians would not be deceived about God's "**kingdom**" and Christ's **return** because *The Book of Revelation* tells **the truth of God's "kingdom"** and **Christ's return.**

Summary

In this context, it is important to realize that God's "**work**" has

been spelled out in these 22 Chapters of *Revelation*. It is necessary for every sincere individual to carefully consider the facts presented here – and the implications for you. The inspired *New Testament* had to be added to *The Bible* to warn Christians of **the true faith** as taught by Jesus. Too many current teachings have been corrupted with pagan and other false teachings concerning true Christianity. Each dedicated Christian should constantly study God's “**word**” and not be deceived by Satan's deceptive anti-Christ teachings.